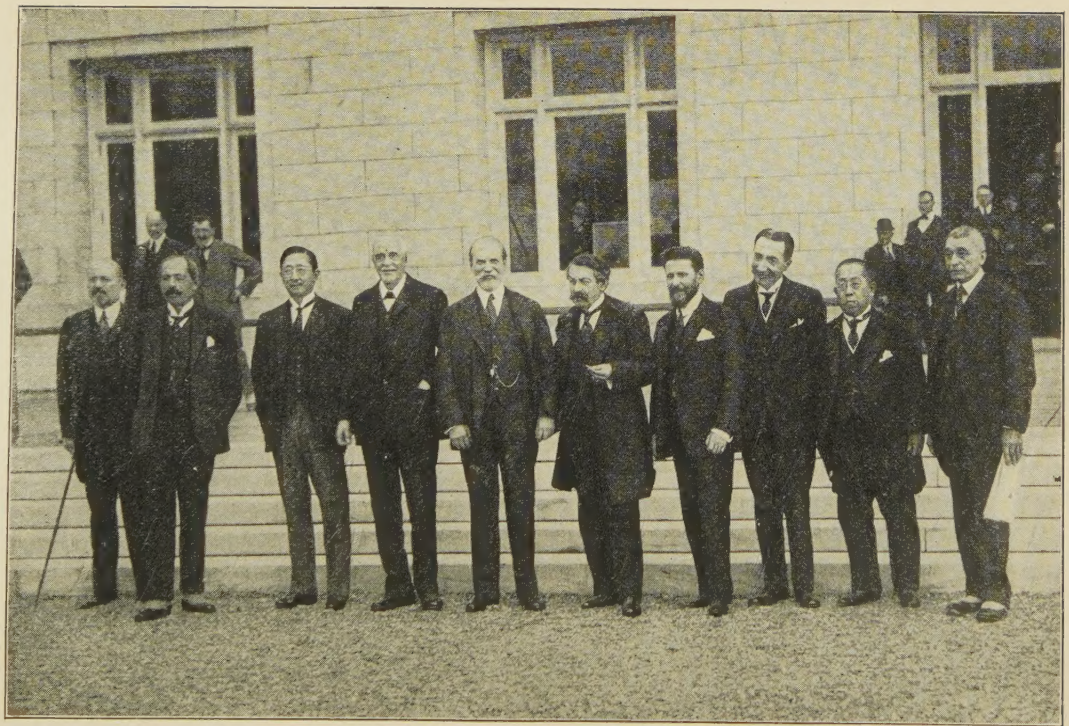
OUR OLD WORLD BACKGROUND

BEARD AND BAGLEY

OUR OLD WORLD BACKGROUND



© *Keystone View Co., Inc.*

THE HEADS OF THE DELEGATIONS FROM THE VARIOUS NATIONS AT THE WASHINGTON CONFERENCE IN 1921–22

Left to right: Garrett, Secretary of the Conference; Karnebeck, Holland; Sze, China; Balfour, Great Britain; Hughes, United States; Briand, France; Schanzer, Italy; de Cartier, Belgium; Tokugawa, Japan; d'Alt, Portugal.

OUR OLD WORLD BACKGROUND

BY

CHARLES A. BEARD

AND

WILLIAM C. BAGLEY

New York

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

1924

All rights reserved

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

COPYRIGHT, 1922,
BY THE MACMILLAN COMPANY.

Set up and electrotyped. Published June, 1922. Reprinted October, 1922; June, 1923; April, 1924.

Norwood Press
J. S. Cushing Co. — Berwick & Smith Co.
Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.

PREFACE

This volume completes a series of books for the grade schools. The companion works are *A First Book in American History* and *The History of the American People*. Although each volume is independent in itself, a unity of purpose knits them into one organic whole. We have kept always before us the problem of giving our boys and girls the best possible civic and cultural equipment, and have endeavored to contribute something to the solution of that problem. On this point we need not add anything to what we have said in the prefaces to the companion volumes.

As to this particular work, the argument for the form and subject matter is to be found in the first chapter. We have placed it there because we believe that the pupils should know why they are called upon to take up any line of historical study.

The importance of European history for the understanding of America has long been recognized by our colleges and high schools. The increase in the number of courses and books on that subject bears witness to the fact. Nevertheless, few attempts have yet been made to carry the idea into our grade schools. It is true that we have several books bearing some such title

as "A Background of American History," but all of them close European history virtually with the foundation of the American colonies.

How inadequate is such a treatment of our past! In order to appreciate this inadequacy one has only to consider the streams of immigration that have flowed into the United States from all parts of Europe since the seventeenth century, the influence of European literature, especially English, upon our thought, the thousand and one relations of the United States to Europe since the Declaration of Independence, the participation of America in every general European war since 1701, and the commanding position won by our country in Europe and the Orient during our own time. To cut off European history at the opening of the seventeenth century is to deprive the great mass of our young citizens of all formal instruction in the modern world culture. Even the most superficial survey of the situation to-day shows how serious has been our neglect of duty in this respect.

In defense, of course, there may be urged the extreme difficulty of presenting the subject of world history to grade school pupils. It is far from our thought to minimize that difficulty. It has weighed heavily upon our minds all through the preparation of this text. Impressed, however, by the urgent necessity of the occasion, we have labored hard to surmount it. As in our other books, we have sought to grasp the striking and essential ideas and movements of mankind, and

to present them in clear and simple form. We believe that no pupils can go carefully through these pages without making important additions to their stock of ideas and without enlarging the horizon of their thought. We believe that they will all have a firmer grasp upon the history of our own country and a better understanding of their coming duties as citizens of this republic.

We confess also to having more than a practical purpose in mind. The charge is often made that Americans are provincial in their outlook. We shall not reply by saying that, in our opinion, Europeans are still more provincial, or by saying that the American people know far more about world history than the mass of Europeans know about the history of the other continents. Whatever may be the merits in this old dispute, we have deliberately aimed at helping to make Americans less provincial by introducing them early to two fundamental ideas: the unity of all history, and the importance of enriching our national life by the study of the best in all the past and in all nations.

We are not attempting, therefore, to add another course of history to the grade school curriculum, or merely to enlarge one already given. We are inviting the coöperation of teachers in the pressing task of preparing the American people, in spirit and in understanding, for the imposing world destiny to which they are called by their enterprise, their wealth, and their power. Textbooks alone can do little. They are at best frail instruments. The teachers who grasp the idea and

transmute it into the living word are the masters of the field. If our book only aids them in their work of carrying American culture to new heights, our reward will be beyond measure. When they remember with Maeterlinck that "there are no dead," let them remember also that all of us shall live forever. All the future is in the hands of the present.

C. A. B.
W. C. B.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER		PAGE
I.	AMERICA AND THE WORLD: ANCIENT AND MODERN America's Mixed Inheritance. The Changing Background of American History. The Foreground of History — America to the Front. Conclusions.	1
II.	THE EARLY AGES OF MANKIND The Prehistoric Ages — from Stone to Metals. Life among Primitive Peoples. The Beginnings of Human Society.	26
III.	THE GREAT NATIONS OF ANTIQUITY The Nations of the Orient. Greece and Rome. Social Classes in the Ancient World. The Great Cities of Antiquity.	42
IV.	THE CULTURE OF THE ANCIENT NATIONS The Practical Arts. Architecture and Art. Literature and Education. Ancient Religions and Christianity.	70
V.	THE MIDDLE AGES: FEUDALISM AND THE CHURCH Feudalism. The Medieval Church.	112
VI.	THE ARTS AND TOWN LIFE IN THE MIDDLE AGES Architecture, Art, and Learning. Town Life in the Middle Ages.	137
VII.	THE RISE OF NATIONS The Rise and Growth of France. The Rise of Spain. The Making of the English Nation.	161
VIII.	THE GROWTH OF WORLD COMMERCE AND EXPLORATION The Growth of Trade from Early Times. European Attention Fixed upon the East. The Service of Science and Learning. Navigators, Explorers, and Conquerors.	186

CHAPTER PAGE

IX. The Protestant Reformation 213
The Protestant Reformation in Germany. The Protestant Reformation in England. Results of the Protestant Revolt.

X. The Great Political Revolution in England . . 238
The Old Political and Social Classes in England. A Century of Revolution. The Results of the Revolutions.

XI. The Rivalry of European Nations 261
The Commercial Triumph of England. The Conflict between England and France in India and North America. The Balance of Power in Europe.

XII. The French Revolution 270
The Old Order in France. The People Revolt. The Napoleonic Wars.

XIII. The Age of Steam and Machinery 321
Steam Power. The Invention of Machinery. The Meaning of the Industrial Revolution.

XIV. Nationalism in the Nineteenth Century . . . 354
Unification of Germany and Italy. Nationalism in Eastern Europe.

XV. The Growth of Democracy 378
Democracy in France. Democracy in England. Democracy in Germany. Democracy in Southeastern Europe. Rise of Democracy in Russia. Democracy in the Orient. Democracy and Civil Liberty.

XVI. The Imperial Rivalry of European Nations . . 407
Europe in the Orient. European Occupation of Africa. European Interest in Latin America. The World War — 1914–1918.

XVII. Europe in Our Own Time 444
The Domestic Affairs of the Nations. International Relations.

XVIII. The Culture of the Modern Age 467
Modern Knowledge. The Idea of Progress and Reform. Literature and Art. The Unity of the Modern World.

LIST OF MAPS

	PAGE
The World, to Illustrate Chapter I	24
Ancient Oriental Empires	46
Ancient Greece	48
The Roman Empire about 400 A.D.	53
Europe about 1200 A.D. (in colors)	*facing* 116
Trading Centers in the Middle Ages	152
The Empire of Charlemagne	164
France in the Fifteenth Century	167
Egbert's Kingdom	173
England under William the Conqueror	175
The Age of Discovery	203
European Settlements in America	226
Era of the Reformation	237
Chief European Rivals	263
Europeans in the Orient	271
British and French Rivals in North America	274
Western Europe in the Seventeenth Century	277
Europe about 1810	312
European Railways	347
Europe in 1815	357
Nationalities in Austria-Hungary	371
Central Europe in 1871	391
Japan and China	400
Africa	415
The Caribbean Region	418
South America	421
Europe after the World War (in colors)	*facing* 436

OUR OLD WORLD BACKGROUND

CHAPTER I

AMERICA AND THE WORLD: ANCIENT AND MODERN

THERE is no scene in all American history, there is no great name upon our roll of heroes, there is no book upon our shelves that does not awaken memories of Europe.

Is it Washington triumphant over the British army at Yorktown? Lo! we behold the French general, Lafayette, at his side. We know that the French fleet is riding in the harbor and we remember that our minister, Benjamin Franklin, has been pleading America's cause at the court of the French king.

Is it a humbler scene; for example, a May-day picnic in Central Park in New York City? There we see children of English, Irish, Italian, Jewish, German, Scandinavian, and other national origins — Americans all — playing about a high stone shaft, an

Egyptian obelisk, more than three thousand years old, brought all the way across the sea to adorn a city's playground!

Courtesy of Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York

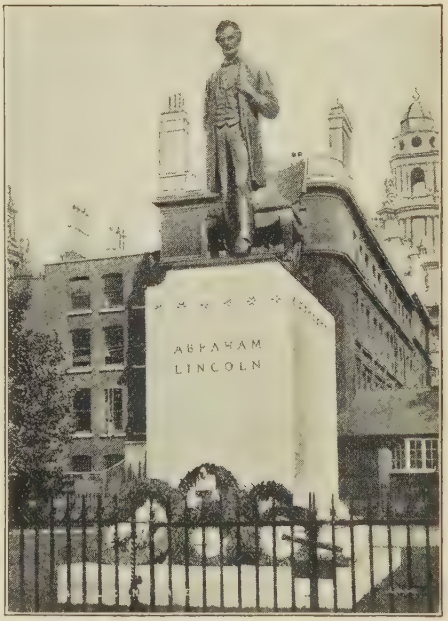
THE CENTRAL PARK OBELISK IN ITS EGYPTIAN HOME

Is it a home scene with the family gathered around the lamp in the evening? The books and magazines on the table may be in any one of a dozen languages and the news in the paper is gathered from the corners of the earth. The conversation may be about memories of the countries in the Old World from which the parents or grandparents came, or it may be about the latest events in London, Rome, Moscow, or Berlin.

Is it a mothers' meeting in a modern city school to discuss with the teacher the education of their children? Many races are certain to be represented and the customs of many lands are sure to be compared.

Search high and low, far and wide, throughout the length and breadth of America, and you will see the truth in the saying: "The history of America is the history of Europe in the New World."

Take the character of a great American, Abraham Lincoln, as another illustration. His parents were of English origin, his tongue was English, and his early religious training was that of a Christian denomination which was founded in England.



A Monument to Lincoln in London

Consider his education. As a farmer's boy, he was accustomed, on winter nights, to lie upon the floor before the hearth and pore over his books in the light of the blazing fire. In those quiet hours he was, without knowing it, preparing himself to teach and lead this nation in a time of great trouble. In the little library from which he gathered wisdom and understanding, were eight books. Three of them were by American writers.

Five of them were from other lands. First among these was the *Bible*, one of the oldest books of the world. For hundreds and hundreds of years, the Bible had been read in many languages and had in-

fluenced the lives of countless millions of people. Another one of Lincoln's books was *Aesop's Fables*, a collection of stories said to have been made by a Greek writer five hundred years before the birth of Christ. The stories themselves were still older. Some of them have even been traced back to ancient Egypt. Lincoln also had *The Arabian Nights*, "a thousand and one" marvelous tales that had come down from the earliest days of Persia, Arabia, and India. His other books were by English writers. One was *Pilgrim's Progress*, by the famous preacher, John Bunyan, who based it all upon the Bible. The other was *Robinson Crusoe*, written in 1719 by Daniel Defoe.

Lincoln was a true American; but who can say from what ancient times and distant lands came the ideas that guided him and the hopes that inspired him? America gave him opportunity; the Old World gave him an inheritance so great that the human mind can scarcely measure it. Of nearly all Americans, as of Lincoln, it may be said: "The Old World is their motherland and teacher."

America's Mixed Inheritance

The People. From the very beginning of American history, many races have played a part. With the passing years, the number of different peoples coming to our shores has increased. John Cabot, whose voyage gave the king of England a claim to North America,

was an Italian (*A First Book in American History*, pp. 26–29). One of the American colonies, New Netherland (New York), was founded by the Dutch, and another, Delaware, by the Swedes. Even in those

© Keystone View Co., Inc.

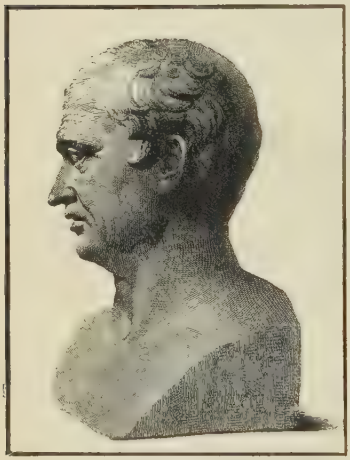
THE MAYFLOWER

colonies founded by the English, there were also to be found Welsh, Germans, Irish, Scotch, French, and Jews. Although English became the language of the land, the nation was not to be wholly English in blood.

In time, the descendants of the original English were

outnumbered by other races. Moreover, the English blood itself had become mixed with that of many nationalities. Theodore Roosevelt, certainly an American of the first rank, boasted that among his ancestors were Dutch, English, Scotch, Irish, and Germans.

Our Language. Although English is the language of the American people, it is made up of and mixed with words from many tongues, especially Greek, Latin, and French. Of Latin origin are nearly all our words about government, such as *president*, *senate*, and *constitution*. From the Greek come a great number of terms used in the schools, such as *geography* and *physiology*. Most of our scientific words are of Greek or Latin origin. To *telegraph*, for instance, means in Greek simply "to write from a distance." Some people say that it is better to use short and simple words of English origin. Doubtless this is wise wherever possible, but even by the greatest effort one can hardly avoid using words taken from other languages. Lincoln's Gettysburg Address shows how many Latin words crept into the language of a man who was accustomed to use the purest English.



From an old print

CICERO, THE ROMAN ORATOR

Our Government. We have learned much from Europe, especially England, about how to govern ourselves. When the English founded the thirteen colonies in America, they provided that each one should have a legislature to make the laws, a governor to enforce them, and judges to explain and apply them. When the colonies became independent states, they kept these three branches of government. This is the origin of our state government of to-day. Changes have been made, of course, but the important parts remain. The idea of government by elected officers, instead of kings alone, came to America from England.

Our federal government, or union of the states, however, was created by the Americans themselves. It was planned by a convention of citizens who met at Philadelphia in 1787 (*First Book*, pp. 149–154). Among them were George Washington, James Madison, and Alexander Hamilton.

In drawing up the plan of the federal government, these men thought a great deal about governments of other countries and other times. James Madison, for example, studied carefully the history of the ancient world, as well as of England, before he even went to the convention. His notebooks have been kept and can be read to-day. Other delegates were familiar with the history of Greece, Rome, and England. Again and again they spoke of the governments of these countries and tried to profit from the lessons of olden times.

For example, one member of the convention said that at the head of the American government there should be three officials, instead of one President. At once another member replied: "One man will be more responsible than three. Three will contend among themselves until one becomes the master." He pointed out how this very thing had happened in ancient Rome when that country was governed by three men called a *triumvirate*. On other important points the lessons of Greece were cited. As the members of the convention were nearly all of English descent, they naturally spoke often of things to be learned from the history of England.

Our Civilization. ***Religion.*** The Christian religion, which is the faith of most of the American people, arose in Palestine on the distant shores of the Mediterranean Sea two thousand years ago. Of the many branches of the Christian Church in the United States, all except a few were founded in the Old World. The Jewish religion also came from Palestine.

Books. Of the books studied in our schools or read in our homes, very many are of foreign origin. The English poet, Shakespeare, and the English novelist, Dickens, are in most private libraries. In our high schools, pupils study the Latin language and learn to read the writings of the Romans, Caesar and Cicero. American writers often follow foreign models. Daniel Webster (*First Book*, pp. 284–288), perhaps our greatest orator, constantly studied the speeches of Greek and

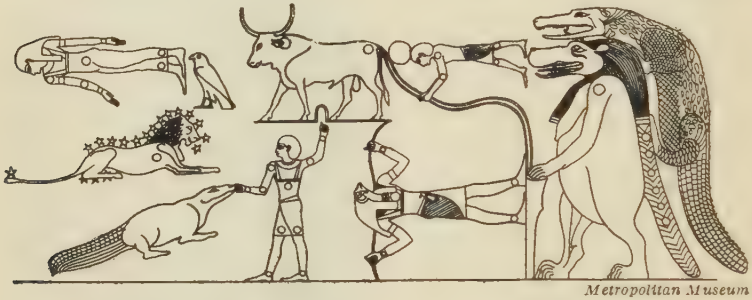
Roman orators. Our first poets and novelists imitated European examples. They wrote of knights and ladies, kings and princes, as if there were nothing in America to write about. Very slowly did American writers venture to choose American people and scenes for their novels, poems, and dramas.

A Monument to Shakespeare in New York

Schools. American schools and colleges, at first, were like those in Europe. The first teachers came from the Old World. The first textbooks were written and printed in Europe. It was a long time before school children had geographies, spellers, and histories printed in America. Thomas Jefferson, founder of the University of Virginia, got many of his ideas of education from France.

Science and Invention. Although Americans have themselves invented many wonderful machines, a great deal of our knowledge about such matters came from across the sea. Spinning and weaving are even older than the oldest nation on the earth.

The Egyptians mapped the heavens and began the science of astronomy. The compass was invented long before the day of Christopher Columbus. The first printing press was built almost two hundred years before the English landed at Jamestown. The steam



Metropolitan Museum

An Ancient Egyptian Map of the Stars

engine, as a working machine, came from England. Electricity was known to the Greeks. In fact, it was by using knowledge from the past that Americans were able to make astonishing progress and to give to the world the reaper, the telegraph, and the telephone. If you will read the lives of our inventors you will find that they began where other inventors left off.

The Changing Background of American History

The Expansion of Europe. In speaking of our inheritance from the Old World, we must remember that, through all the years of our history, Europe itself has been changing too. When Columbus set

out upon his daring voyage, Europeans knew nothing of the Western Hemisphere and little of Asia. They had no colonies. Their trade was mainly among themselves.

During the four centuries that have passed since then, Europeans have spread to all parts of the earth. In some instances, they have swept away the natives and founded new states, as in the case of Canada and Australia. In other instances, they have mingled with the natives and mixed Old World ideas with theirs. This is what the Spanish did in Mexico, Central and South America, and many islands of the seas. In still other places, the Europeans made themselves rulers over natives. In this way, the British built up their vast empire in Asia and in Africa. So, too, the French, the Germans, the Belgians, and the Italians formed their empires in Africa, bringing millions of the natives under their flags. Thus it happened that, between 1492 and our day, all of North America and South America, nearly all of Africa, all of Australia, and huge portions of Asia fell under the sway of Europeans.

The Awakening of the Orient. Where the Europeans have not conquered, they have shaken other races out of their old ways of living. They have forced them or induced them by example to adopt European ideas of government, trade, and war. This is what happened in the case of China and Japan. These countries are older in civilization by thousands of

years than either England or France, but it was under the influence of Europeans and Americans that they adopted gunpowder, the steam engine, the railway, the factory, and many ideas of democratic government.

Under European influence, the Japanese created a parliament elected by voters and established daily newspapers. It was not until about 1855 that Japan opened her doors to the world, but within fifty years she had rapid-fire guns, railways, factories, and vast industrial cities of her own. Within fifty years she defied one of the most powerful nations of Europe, Russia, and defeated her on the field of battle. Having all the inventions of the West, from steam engines to battleships, she is now the first power in the Far East.

During the same period, the Chinese cut off their queues and put on trousers. They threw off the rule of their ancient imperial family and tried to found a republic. So the slumbering giants of the East have been stirred from their long sleep, and stand alert and ready for coming events. They are Europeanized.

The Trade of Europe. While conquering by the sword and arousing natives by their enterprise, the Europeans have spread their trade everywhere. There is not a nook or cranny of this old earth that they have not visited with their wares. They trade and bargain with the dusky Eskimo of the frozen North, the swarthy African of the tropics, the wandering Arab of the desert, as well as with the civilized people of every clime.

Whether it is the port of Hongkong in distant China, La Paz twelve thousand feet high in the mountains of Bolivia, or Libreville under the blazing sky of Africa, the Europeans are there with their goods to sell. The Turks dozing away in Anatolia, the nomad tribesmen of Persia lolling in their tents, are aroused by the call of the European merchant who cries abroad his wares and offers to buy in exchange. The ships that dock at Liverpool, Boulogne, and Hamburg come from every country that borders on the sea and every climate under the shining sun.

In addition to trading with the peoples of every land and race, the Europeans lend them money to build railways, factories, and telegraph lines. England alone has lent five billion dollars to Asiatics and Africans. French bankers have lent billions to Egyptians, Turks, Brazilians, Africans, Chinese, and in fact all the other peoples of the earth.

Wherever we go on the broad surface of the globe, we meet Europeans and see the signs of their work. The geography of Europe remains the same. The same seas wash the coasts of France and Spain as in the days of Columbus. But the civilization of Europe has spread all over the world. There is no ocean that is not plowed by European merchant vessels and battleships. There is no port that they have not visited. There is no people that they have not stirred to new thought and action. The European background of American history has become a world background.

The Foreground of History — America to the Front

American Influence on Europe. Great is the debt of Americans to the old yet ever changing Europe; but we must not forget that there is another side to the story. From the day that Captain John Smith set foot on the shores of Virginia to the day that General John Pershing set foot on the shores of France, there was not an hour in which European statesmen did not have to reckon with America.

American Government. The American example of a people governing themselves without kings and nobles was always before the people of Europe. French soldiers, like Lafayette, who came over to aid Washington in the American Revolution (*First Book*, pp. 141–142), carried back with them American ideas about government. A few years later they helped to overthrow the French king in the great French Revolution which broke out in 1789. The state constitutions which the Americans drew up for themselves after 1776 were translated into French. They were spread broadcast and read in every European country.

Books about America. Able men and women from Europe visited America and studied our ways of living, working, and governing. They wrote books about the things they saw, and European people read these accounts. In 1744 Peter Kalm, a German, published the story of his travels in America for the

© Keystone View Co., Inc.

A Boatload of Immigrants

benefit of the German people. In 1786 a French nobleman published for his countrymen an interesting book about the new American republic. Years afterwards, in 1835, a still abler Frenchman, Alexis de Tocqueville, issued a work, entitled *Democracy in America*, which set all Europe thinking. A little later a thoughtful Englishwoman, Harriet Martineau, printed a volume on America for her fellow citizens to read. If we should give here a list of important European books about America it would fill ten or fifteen pages of this little volume.

Influence of Immigrants. It was not only the writers who carried back to the Old World American ideas. Thousands of immigrants from all parts of Europe, after living here for a while, returned home to visit or to stay. They told their neighbors how people lived and worked in America. The millions who did not go back to their native lands wrote letters to their families and friends across the sea. In this way they put American ideas into European heads. There are no scales in which to weigh the influence of all these things on European life; but we know that Europe became a different Europe on account of America.

American Trade with the World. Since the early days of American history the well-being and prosperity of millions in Europe have depended upon the produce drawn from American fields and plantations. Owing to wheat and corn from America, Europeans had

more bread to eat. The vast cotton spinning and weaving industry of England, employing millions of people, was for a long time almost entirely supplied with raw cotton from our Southern states. Whenever a war stopped the flow of raw materials to Europe, the people of Europe suffered, as well as American farmers and planters.

Within recent times, Americans have been sending large quantities of manufactured goods abroad. There are few distant countries that do not use our reapers, sewing machines, and typewriters. Our merchants are to be found in all the great cities of the world advertising and selling manufactured goods. European business men find them shrewd and energetic in the search for customers.

The Growth of American Territory. In addition to spreading their trade far and wide throughout the world, Americans have also carried their flag to distant lands. Alaska came under our control in 1867. The United States now holds Porto Rico and the Virgin Islands in the West Indies. It owns the canal strip, or *zone*, across the Isthmus of Panama. Cuba, Haiti, Santo Domingo, and Nicaragua are under American protection.

The American flag has been planted in the Pacific. It waves over the Hawaiian Islands, over a part of the Samoan group, over Guam, and over several other small islands. Since 1898 it has floated over the Philippine Islands near China and Japan. So the

United States has territory in the same regions as the English, French, and Dutch. Anything important that happens in Asia becomes a matter of interest to America. The United States has indeed become a " world power."

America in the Wars of the Old World. Europe has had many wars in which nearly all the great nations have taken part. During the past two hundred years there has not been one of these " general " wars in which America has not joined in one way or another.

In colonial times, when England and France were struggling for the mastery in North America (*First Book*, pp. 83–101), the American colonies were drawn into the quarrel.

Even after winning their independence, Americans could not keep out of European conflicts. The long war from 1793 to 1815, in which France and England took the lead, interfered with American trade. American citizens took sides and thus the quarrel in Europe stirred up a quarrel here (*First Book*, pp. 154–160). French and English warships captured our goods and ships at sea. The English stopped and searched our vessels for English-born sailors. If they found any, they took them off. For a long time our government did not know what to do. Finally, in 1812, it declared war upon England (*First Book*, pp. 181–194).

A hundred years later, when Europe was at war again, the United States was deeply stirred by the contest. At length, it threw its sword into the scale, helping to put an end to the German empire (*First*

Book, pp. 439–449). In other parts of the world the power of American armies had already been felt. Even an uprising in distant China, in 1900, led our government to join with the governments of Europe in putting down a native rebellion (*First Book*, pp. 380–384). So American ideas, American trade, and American arms are powerful factors in the affairs of the world.

American Relations with European Countries. In all the troublous times of our history, Americans have looked to Europe for counsel and aid. Within two years after the Declaration of Independence, the United States made an alliance with France (*First Book*, pp. 136–143). It even drew Holland and Spain, as well, into the contest against King George III.

When the Civil War burst upon our country, President Lincoln and President Davis both turned at once to the countries of Europe to see which side they would favor. The South even hoped that England and France would aid it against the North. Long afterward, in 1899 and 1907, the Czar of Russia, hoping to put an end to all war, called conferences at The Hague. The United States sent able delegates who played a leading part in those debates. In our time, after the defeat of Germany in 1918, President Wilson went to Paris to speak for our government in the conference that sought to settle the disputes between nations.

The Climax in American Power. From the World War, America emerged the richest and most powerful

nation on the earth. Once it borrowed money and bought its manufactured goods in Europe. Now England, France, Russia, and Italy owe the United States billions of dollars. Belgium, Sweden, Switzerland, and even European cities borrow American money to pay their bills.

American business and industrial concerns have established branches in every leading European and Asiatic city. In one of the public squares of Paris, where stands a great monument to the warrior, Napoleon, are to be found the offices of two of America's richest banking houses. Kingsbridge, a famous street in London, is almost lined with the displays of American merchandise. A former Chicago boy owns the largest department store in the capital of King George.

Once America depended mainly upon English ships to carry her goods over the seas. Now America has a splendid merchant marine of her own and American captains steam into the ports of Egypt for cargoes of cotton destined for the spinning mills of England. The sun that follows the British empire around the world finds everywhere signs of American energy and American power.

The grand climax came in 1921 when, on the call of President Harding, the leading naval and military powers of the world sent delegates to a conference in Washington to consider ways of peace. What a sweep is this from the tiny colonies of Jamestown and Plymouth to the mighty nation that has now become

the center of the world! What a heritage we have! What grave duties the possession of such power lays upon the people of this nation!

Conclusions

1. The background of American history is not the history of the Indians who inhabited this continent before the Europeans came.

2. It is not merely the history of Europe down to the founding of the English colonies in America.

3. The background of American history is in very truth the history of the world down to the landing of the last boatload of immigrants on our shores and the sailing of the last ship from an American port for some distant land.

4. The important events of every day in all parts of the world are matters of concern for American citizens. Busy in their fields, shops, and homes, they may not think so, but it is true. The United States has ties binding it to every section of the globe in peace and war. American trade is carried on in all markets. American business men vie with those of Europe in hunting for new oil lands, coal fields, and iron mines in far-off countries. There is always danger that war in Europe may summon American boys from farm and shop to fight and die on land or sea. In fact, the graves of American soldiers and seamen are already scattered among the battlefields of many lands.

5. That nation is greatest which gathers the best from all times and all countries, improves upon its heritage, and makes the noblest use of its powers and talents at home and abroad.

It is not enough, therefore, for American citizens to study the history of our country alone. It is not enough to know about American ideals and achievements. To understand how our nation came to be what it is, and to serve it wisely, we must study the history of the wide world of which it is a part. We must even learn about our earliest ancestors and their long and toilsome way upward from barbarism to civilization, from ignorance to knowledge.

Questions and Exercises

I. 1. How many Old World countries are represented among the pupils of your schoolroom? Let each pupil find out from what country or countries his family originally came. Make a list of these countries and locate them on the map. 2. Read the newspapers to learn from what Old World countries news is reported. Let two or three pupils read different papers each day if possible, and make reports. At the end of a week make a list of the countries from which news is most frequently reported. Locate these countries on the map, and think of reasons why news from them is of interest to Americans. 3. Which of the books named on p. 4 have you read in whole or in part?

II. 1. What is meant by the statement that Japan and China have been "Europeanized"? Tell what you know about the way in which the Japanese and Chinese have lived in the past. How did their way of living differ from the way in which Europeans

and Americans have been living? 2. American merchants who sell goods in South America, in Africa, or in Asia must compete with European merchants; what does "compete" mean? Why is it well to know something of the history of the peoples with whom we compete in trade? 3. In your geographies you will find pictures of cities in Asia, Africa, and South America; study these pictures to find out what European influences they show. For example, in what ways do the buildings, the streets, and the dress of the people show that "the civilization of Europe has spread all over the world"? What things do you notice in these pictures that seem not to have been affected by European civilization?

III. 1. What are the chief differences between a republican form of government and a monarchy? The United States was the first great modern republic. What European country first followed the example of the United States in becoming a republic? What European countries have lately changed from monarchies to republics? 2. How did troubles in Europe affect America in the French and Indian War? In the War of 1812? Why have great European wars had so great an influence on our country? Why would it probably be even more difficult in the future for our country not to become involved in any great war that might break out in the Old World? What steps has our government taken to prevent future wars in the Old World? 3. What is meant by the "territorial expansion" of our country? Name and locate the important possessions of the United States outside of North America. 4. Make a list of the most important ways in which our country has influenced the Old World in the past. 5. Study the newspapers to learn in what ways the United States is now influencing the Old World.

IV. 1. Tell why the history of the Indians who lived in America before the time of Columbus, even if they had left a history, would not be the history of the American people. 2. Give as many reasons as you can to show why every American citizen should know something of Old World history.

180° 150° 120° 90° 60° 30° 0° 30° 60° 90° 120° 150°
75° 60° 30° 0° 30° 60°
NORTH AMERICA
SCANDINAVIAN PENINSULA
ENGLAND
IRELAND
Liverpool
London
Hamburg
Berlin
Boulogne
EUROPE
FR.
SP.
Rome
Moscow
RUSSIA
ASIA
ANATOLIA TURKEY
PALESTINE
EGYPT
JAPAN
CHINA
Hongkong
PHILIPPINE IS.
GUAM
New York
(New Netherland)
Jamestown
HAWAIIAN IS.
CUBA
HAITI
DOMINICAN REPUBLIC
VIRGIN IS.
ATLANTIC
OCEAN
AFRICA
Libreville
N. CAROLINA
Isthmus of Panama
PANAMA CANAL ZONE
PACIFIC
OCEAN
SAMOAN IS.
SOUTH AMERICA
La Paz
BOL.
BRAZIL
AUSTRALIA
GENERAL DRAFTING CO. INC., N.Y.

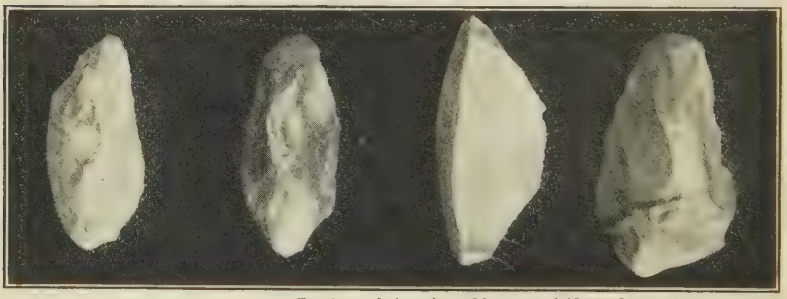
Geographical Studies

Study carefully the map on the opposite page. Most of the countries that we shall study about in this book are in Europe. Compare Europe with Asia and Africa as to size. Note how broken or irregular the coast line of Europe is as compared with the coast line of Asia or Africa. Name the principal seas, gulfs, and bays of Europe. In what ways have these been of advantage to the European peoples? A number of cities and countries are mentioned in this chapter; locate all of these on the map.

CHAPTER II

THE EARLY AGES OF MANKIND

MANY an American farmer boy, while strolling along a river bottom or plowing a field, has picked up stone arrowheads or stone hatchets that were made long ago by American Indians. Such weapons have been found in nearly all parts of the United States. They



Courtesy of American Museum of Natural History, New York

RUDE STONE IMPLEMENTS

tell us of human beings who lived in a crude and savage condition, without a knowledge of metals, without strong, well-lighted houses, without the comforts and the tools that make it so much easier for people to live and work to-day.

Now it is an interesting fact that such stone weapons have been found also in other parts of the world;

indeed, in nearly every country. In Europe and Asia, however, they are not usually found near the surface of the ground. There they have been buried deep by drifting sand and by the ruins and rubbish left by many generations of people who had learned to use metals and had quit making stone weapons. By studying these stone weapons and the bones and various things found with them in rubbish heaps, scholars have learned much about the way people lived long ago before the invention of writing made written records possible. The long period before the invention of writing is known as the *prehistoric ages*, "pre" being the Latin word for "before."

The Prehistoric Ages — from Stone to Metals

The Old Stone Age. For many long centuries, all mankind lived in the primitive manner of the North American Indians before white men came to this continent. In France and elsewhere in Europe, there have been discovered deep caves which had been closed for thousands of years. In these caverns, the bones of human beings have been found and, along with them, the bones of animals, like the woolly rhinoceros and the mammoth, that do not exist to-day. In these caverns, as well as in sand banks, there have been unearthed many rude implements made of stone. Owing to the fact that the implements found at the very bottom of these caves and sand banks were

scarcely more than rude flakes and chunks of stone, historians speak of the earliest part of the prehistoric period as the *Old Stone Age*. How long it lasted we do not know.

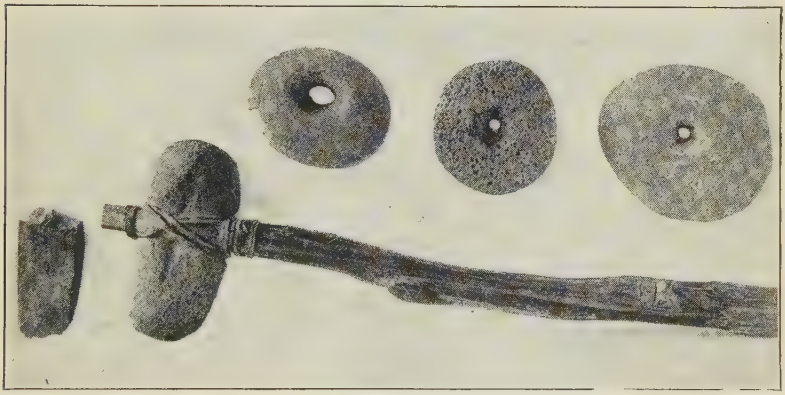
The New Stone Age. In the upper layers of the rubbish in caves and in river drift were found better and better tools in ever greater variety; hence the term, *New Stone Age*. Progress among primitive people was slow, very slow; but there was some advancement. The crude way of chipping stone was improved. Axes, spearheads, and arrowheads came to be made of stone that could be highly polished and brought to a sharper edge or finer point. In addition to weapons, there were bone needles, fragments of pots, scrapers, flint knives, and other things used in making clothing and preparing food.

Natural History Museum

A Polished Flint

The Bronze Age. The New Stone Age gradually merged into what is called the *Bronze Age*. As primitive people became more and more expert in making stone implements, they began to take note of the differences among stones of various kinds. Whenever they discovered a new kind of stone, they doubtless tried to see what they could do with it.

Now it happens that one of the few metals that is found in a state which permits immediate use is copper. In their hunts for useful stones, primitive people found chunks of copper and learned that it was malleable; that is, it could be pounded into various shapes. They found also that they could polish it by rubbing



Natural History Museum

EARLY STONE HAMMERS

it hard. As they loved to adorn themselves, they made ornaments of this shining metal. Since it was not very hard, however, it was not a good substance for axes and spears. The edge of copper would not keep its sharpness.

In their search among the stones, primitive people also found another metal, tin. After a long time, they discovered that by melting tin and mixing it with copper they could make a hard *alloy*, called bronze. Then they had a metal that could be hardened

and polished and given a keen and lasting edge. It could be used for making tools, weapons, sheets of metal, pots, kettles, and many other useful things. This marked a wonderful advance in manufacture.

Natural History Museum

An American Indian Iron Forge

The Iron Age. Late in the prehistoric period, primitive people discovered the most wonderful metal of all, iron. This was still harder than bronze and could be worked up almost as easily into weapons, tools, and utensils. When mankind reached this stage

— the *Iron Age*, — it was well on its way toward settled and civilized life.

The Ages Overlap. In trying to picture to ourselves these long stages through which mankind passed in prehistoric times, we must keep some things firmly in mind. First, the ages overlapped even among the same races; that is, they did not pass suddenly from one to the other. Secondly, different races passed through these ages at different times. Thirdly, some races skipped one or more of them. For example, the North American Indians were in the Stone Age when Columbus discovered the New World. They did not pass slowly upward through the Bronze and Iron Ages. They got tools, weapons, and cooking utensils from the white man, and leaped all at once, so to speak, into the age of iron and steel. So it has been with many other primitive peoples. Even in modern times, however, there have been discovered some races that have advanced no farther in civilization than the cave dwellers of Europe who lived more than five thousand years ago.

Life among Primitive Peoples

The Sad Plight of the Earliest People. One of the most interesting stories of all past ages is that which tells of primitive peoples beginning their long and toilsome struggle upward from savagery. Born into a world which they did not understand, they were

face to face with terrible foes — cold, hunger, thirst, tempest, and wild beasts. They had to find for themselves food, clothing, and shelter; yet for this task they were far worse off than Robinson Crusoe when he was thrown upon a lonely island. Crusoe had saved many

Natural History Museum

An Early Lake Dwelling

tools from the wrecked ship, and he had a knowledge of many other things which he did not actually possess. This knowledge enabled him to make clothing, build a suitable shelter, tame goats, plant grains, and cultivate fields.

The first peoples, on the other hand, had no tools, no knowledge of grains, no domestic animals, no iron

forges. But they had to live; so they began to use their brains in two ways. First, they protected themselves against the elements — heat, cold, and storm. Secondly, they tried to understand the resources of nature and to provide themselves with food. Fortunately they had a friend, as well as a foe, in nature. They found shelter in caves and food in the forests and streams. As they made discoveries, they added to their knowledge. They began to build shelter and to grow food. Each step they took carried them farther along the way.

Natural History Museum

RUDE DRAWINGS ON THE WALL OF A CAVE

Men, the Hunters and Warriors. In this upward struggle, there was a division of labor between the men and the women. Men became the hunters of animals for food and skins and the protectors against enemies. They killed game in the forests and streams. They fought wild beasts and their own savage kind. Thus they became skillful in the arts of the chase and warfare. They made weapons of all kinds. In their

leisure hours, they polished and decorated their spear handles and bows. Sometimes they drew, on the walls of their caves, pictures of the animals they had hunted. They became artists after a fashion. Their eyes and ears were sharpened in the search for prey. Their limbs became lithe and supple as they chased the deer. They tamed the dog to help them on the hunt and they learned the mysterious ways of wild animals.

Women and the Arts of Peace. On the other hand, primitive women started the arts of peace -- industries of all kinds, agriculture, and homemaking. While the men were on the hunt, women studied grains, plants, and fruits. One writer has said : " One cannot, without profound thought, look upon the picture of a long train of Ute women (North American Indians) coming home with their drying baskets full of seeds upon their backs, supported by bands across their foreheads, holding also in one hand a gathering wand and in the other a winnowing and roasting tray. For these women are indeed the forerunners of all farmers and harvesters and threshers and common carriers and millers and cooks. The National Museum at Washington possesses a collection of food plants used by savage women, and in the Royal Kew Gardens in London may be seen an exhibit arranged on the basis of plants. Unwittingly both these museums have erected monuments to the manual labor and skill of savage women."

Primitive women learned a great deal about cooking. They cut up and cured the meat killed by the hunters. They discovered how to parch and roast in pits filled with hot stones. They learned how to grind grain, to bake, and to boil. As this work fell to them, it was doubtless they who invented the first utensils — baskets to carry grain in and pots to cook in. They found out how to store provisions and they tamed the wild cat to protect their stocks from vermin. In their endless wanderings, they learned the qualities of plants. They found that some were good, some were poisonous, and others useful in sickness. They were therefore doctors and chemists, as they collected drugs and ground them for medicine. In our National Museum, there are hundreds of specimens of drugs that savage women used.

Natural History Museum

A Piece of Primitive Pottery

Primitive women were also the first clothiers. They cut and sewed the skins of the animals caught in the hunt and made garments from them. They learned how to make threads from wool and from certain vegetables. They were the first spinners and weavers. As time passed, they became ever more skillful and artistic. They made dyes from the juices of the plants

they knew, and they made beads from bright-colored bits of stone. Thus domestic arts began. To primitive women we owe the beginnings of gardening, home music, pottery, sculpture, weaving, and embroidery.

Natural History Museum

NAVAJO WOMAN WEAVING

Finally there was the care of the baby. It was woman's great task to feed and care for the children. While the warrior destroyed life in battle, she protected life. While his spirit fed on hatred of his enemies, her spirit was nourished by the love of her little ones. She not only cared for their physical needs. She taught them out of her store of knowledge how to guard against things dangerous to life. The girls she trained in her domestic arts. The boys, as they grew up, were trained by the father in hunting, fishing, and fighting.

The Beginnings of Human Society

The Savage Society. In the earliest days of mankind people lived together in small groups. Their only ties were those of the family. Such a group is called a *savage* society. Its members were few. They had for a long time no domestic animal. They had no fixed homes but lived in forests and caves. They wandered about from place to place in small bands hunting for food and shelter. Human beings living in this early stage of society, known as *Bushmen*, were found in Australia when white men first went there.

Natural History Museum

Fine Art in Savage Society

Domestic Animals and Tribal Society. Humanity took an immense stride forward when it discovered how to tame the goat, the cow, and the sheep. This knowledge made it possible to have milk, meat, and cloth without the uncertain and exhausting labor of the hunt. We do not know when this remarkable discovery was made; but we do know that it was long before people learned to write any story of their

doings. It is thought that the dog or the cat was the first animal to be tamed. That may have been a step toward the taming of goats and other animals caught on the chase and kept alive for food.

After the domestication of animals, life for mankind became more certain and secure than when everything depended upon hunting and fishing. Property began to accumulate. Some men grew rich and powerful as their flocks increased. Great tribes of people gathered around the possessors of huge herds of cattle. There was much work to be done watching and taking care of the animals. Slavery was introduced because the labor of captives became valuable to the captors. So some men were turned from hunting and fishing to join the women in peaceful pursuits. Stores of meat, cheese, skins, and wool were laid up against times of dearth. In short, mankind was lifted one stage above the perilous and uncertain life of the savage.

At the same time, warfare became a regular thing, as tribesmen fought each other over cattle or grazing lands. If you will take your Old Testament and read the Book of Numbers, you will see how the Israelites attacked the Midianites and took from them their flocks and herds. Indeed, in many of the early books of the Bible there are accounts of tribes waging war on their neighbors and seizing their cattle.

The Art of Planting and Reaping. Later in primitive times, long before the art of writing was discovered, there came a second wonderful discovery; namely,

that seeds planted in the ground will take root and produce new supplies of grain. With some ancient peoples that discovery may have preceded the taming of animals, but generally it was much later. When and where the art of agriculture began, we know not. One ingenious student of primitive life explains it in the following way. Grain grew wild in the forests. Primitive women gathered it and made bread of it by mixing it with water and baking it on hot rocks. In a time of abundance some of the grain was hidden in the ground, and, lo and behold! it was called to life a hundred fold by the spring rains. Once discovered, the process was easy to repeat. So the secret of the seeds was found out. This is, of course, sheer guesswork; yet it may be a correct answer to the riddle. At all events, we know that thousands of years before there were any written records of history the art of planting and reaping was learned.

The Beginnings of Settled Life. This art was destined to make another important change in the affairs of mankind, one even greater than that made by the domestication of animals. While people depended upon hunting and cattle raising for a livelihood, they had to be constantly on the move from one hunting ground or pasture to another. This migratory, or *nomadic*, life was, in time, completely changed by the discovery of agriculture. When people learned the value of the soil, they began to settle down to till it. Houses took the place of tents. The land was claimed

as the property of the tribe or family that settled on it. More and more slaves were captured to till the fields. Scattered bands of savage hunters thus developed into farmers. The nomadic shepherds were driven farther and farther into the hills as the farms spread out in every direction. Nations were founded. A mighty struggle for possession of the earth began.

Questions and Exercises

I. 1. Why is it so difficult to learn how man lived during the long ages that preceded the historic period? 2. To make and use fire is recognized as one of the great inventions of primitive man; by what means could primitive man have discovered how to make fire? In what ways did the control of fire help primitive man? 3. Imagine yourself left, like Robinson Crusoe, on a desert island, but without the tools that he obtained from the wreck. What would you do to enable yourself to live? Even if you did not have tools, are there any ways in which you would be better off than a primitive man in the same position? 4. Why are metal tools better than stone tools? How did it happen that copper was used before iron? For what purposes is copper used to-day? 5. Bronze is an alloy of copper and tin; what is meant by an "alloy"? Modern coins are usually alloys; find out of what metals the one-cent piece, the five-cent piece, and the twenty-five-cent piece are alloys. Why is bronze not used much for tools and weapons to-day? 6. Many of the inventions and discoveries of primitive peoples were undoubtedly made by women; what modern inventions and discoveries have been made by women? 7. Make a list of the important inventions and discoveries that were made before the time of recorded history.

II. 1. What animals were probably first tamed by primi-

tive peoples? What animals do you know of that have been tamed or domesticated since recorded history began? 2. What is meant by a "nomadic society"? In what ways is a nomadic society, living on its herds of domesticated animals, an advance over a savage society, living chiefly by hunting wild beasts? 3. How does a farming people differ from a nomadic people? In what ways is this difference an advance toward civilization?

Geographical Studies

1. Remains of people that lived in Europe in the Old Stone Age have been found chiefly in Spain and France; locate these countries on the map facing p. 436. 2. Some scholars believe that these primitive peoples originally entered Europe from northern Africa; study the outline of the Mediterranean Sea (p. 436) and note the places at which these peoples may have found it easiest to cross from Africa to Europe. It is believed by some that in very early times there was a land connection between Europe and Africa at two points. Gibraltar was one of these; where might the other "land bridge" have been?

Suggestions for Reading

for pupils

Clodd, Edward — *The Childhood of the World;* Macmillan.
The Story of Primitive Man; Appleton.
Van Loon, Hendrik W. — *The Story of Mankind* (*School edition*), i–iv; Macmillan.
Wells, Margaret E. — *How the Present Came from the Past*, Book I, i–vi; Macmillan.

for teachers

Osborn, N. F. — *Men of the Old Stone Age;* Scribner.
Tyler, J. M. — *The New Stone Age in Northern Europe;* Scribner.
Wells, H. G. — *The Outline of History*, I, viii–x; Macmillan.

CHAPTER III

THE GREAT NATIONS OF ANTIQUITY

After mankind learned to tame animals and till the soil, the number of people on the earth increased. Rich grazing lands were made use of for flocks and herds. Fertile river valleys were laid out into fields for cultivation. Men who had once thought only of hunting and fishing settled down with the women to the arts of peace. Wealth in cattle and grain accumulated.

Then those who had riches became a target for the tribes which kept their old fighting habits. Warriors found it easier to conquer and rob than to watch flocks or till the soil themselves. Warfare on a large scale came to plague the earth's multitudes. Out of warfare sprang powerful military leaders who conquered vast territories inhabited by herdsmen and tillers of the soil. So began the making of kingdoms and empires, wide-reaching and long-enduring.

The Nations of the Orient

Oriental Despotisms. The oldest nations of which we have written records rose in the fertile valleys of

the Nile and Euphrates rivers, in the regions generally known as Egypt and Babylonia. There many a kingdom was set up, flourished, and vanished thousands of years before Christ. Indeed, the history of the earliest centuries about which we know anything is little more than a story of one mighty king after another.

First, it seems, warriors from the regions of Babylonia conquered the lands east to the mountains and west to the Mediterranean. They ruled millions of subjects and were, in turn, themselves overthrown.

Then the emperors, or *Pharaohs*, of Egypt extended their dominion by force of arms from the Sahara to the banks of the Euphrates. They governed their subjects with pomp and ceremony. Then they, too, were beaten in battles. After them came the Persian emperors, who overran all Asia Minor and Egypt and boasted of an empire greater than any the world had yet seen. They also had their day and left behind nothing but a few relics to tell of their riches and power.

Metropolitan Museum

A Statue of an Egyptian Pharaoh

One modern scholar fixes the date of the first Egyptian king at more than 5000 years before Christ; another places it at 3400 B.C. The earliest mention of Babylon is at least 3800 B.C. We know that about 2300 B.C. the borders

of the kingdom of Babylon reached the shores of the Mediterranean. We know that before the earliest kings of whom we have written records there were hundreds of minor rulers who built up great states and disappeared before new conquerors.

The striking thing about these ancient kings is that

From an old print

The Ruins at Thebes (Egypt)

they were all *despots*, or absolute rulers. That the common people, who tilled the fields, wove the cloth, or guarded the herds, should have a voice in their own government was not thought of. The king stood above all. Everything was made to glorify his name. The mighty pyramids of Egypt were the tombs of kings.

The ruins of temples that still stand tell of their majesty. The pictures on the crumbling walls, the huge statues that once adorned imperial cities, the songs and ballads that have survived the wreck of ages, all

From an old print

TWO GIANT GUARDIANS OF A VANISHED EMPIRE

bear witness to the prowess and grandeur of the despot. Artists, architects, and writers vied with one another in praising the names and deeds of their royal masters.

Some kings ruled more wisely than others, but practically all of them ruled without regard to the desires of their peoples. They levied taxes at will;

they imprisoned or put to death any who incurred their displeasure; they waged war, whenever they liked, to gain territory or to add to their glory. Their strength lay in the ignorance and fear of their subjects; their weakness lay in the fact that their subjects and slaves did not care much whether their rulers were overthrown in battle or not.

Ancient Oriental Empires

Under such a system, the people had no freedom of spirit. They had to flatter the king to secure his favor. They cringed before him to escape his ill-will. They said and wrote things to please him. As despotism was the chief mark of the government, so cowardice

and cringing were the chief marks of the subjects. Fraud and deceit became common; for by deceit the king's taxes and penalties could be avoided.

Greece and Rome

The City-States of Greece. In strange contrast to the despotic empires of Egypt and Asia Minor were the governments of Greece. The Greeks were a marvelous shepherd people who in very ancient times moved down in search of pasture into the rugged peninsula that bears their name. They conquered the people who already dwelt there and at the same time learned much from their subjects. Their new homeland was broken into many small regions by the mountains and the sea. It had no great river like the Nile and no vast plains like those of Babylonia.

Though the Greeks lived close together and worshiped the same gods, they could not be permanently united. Many alliances and leagues were formed among them, it is true, but none of these lasted for long. It is true also that the Greeks of Macedonia, under Alexander the Great, built up a huge empire extending from the Danube River to the borders of India; but it did not survive his death in 323 B.C. The peoples of Greece were too independent to bow their necks to a single ruler. They were happiest when divided into tiny states or commonwealths, each managing its own affairs. In desperate battles they beat off Persian kings who tried to subdue them, and

not until many centuries had passed did they fall under the sword of the Romans.

In the eighth century before Christ, there were in the Greek peninsula scores of these little countries known as *city-states*. Among them may be mentioned Corinth, Thebes, Miletus, and Argos. Most famous and important of all were Athens and Sparta.

Ancient Greece

The Greek state was usually no larger than a county in Ohio or Iowa. It had a sort of capital city with shops, temples, dwellings, and market places. The country around it was laid out into small villages and farms. Each community formed one great family. The mem-

From an old print

THE PARTHENON — THE FAMOUS TEMPLE AT ATHENS

bers of it believed that they were the descendants of the same god and were thus related. The citizens of each little state were intensely patriotic. They were also enterprising, for they founded colonies all around the shores of the Mediterranean Sea.

Within their city-states the Greeks made many kinds of experiments in governing themselves. There were, however, three forms of government that were most common: the *monarchy*, or rule of one man; the *aristocracy*, which meant in practice the rule of the few; and the *democracy*, or rule of the many. Our very word "democracy" comes from the Greek and means "rule of the people."

A Greek democracy, however, differed very much from our modern notions. In Athens, for example, when the people ruled, the voters did not choose representatives to go to the capital and make laws. On the contrary, the voters all assembled in the open air. They approved or rejected laws proposed to them, and they chose the magistrates or officials of the little state.

A Greek Temple at Paestum in Italy

In another respect also the Greek city democracy differed from ours. In Athens, for instance, even in the democratic period, there were about as many slaves as there were Athenians. There were five or six slaves for every citizen who had a right to vote in the assembly. At its best, therefore, democracy in Greece was limited to a very small ruling class. The masses did not rule. They were slaves — men and women, usually white, taken captive in war or bought somewhere in a slave market.

Rome: Kingdom, Republic, Empire. Of all the ancient states, Rome became in time the most mighty. Yet it began most modestly. Sometime in the dim past there began to flourish on the banks of the Tiber a tiny kingdom inhabited by farmers. For more than two hundred years (753–509 B.C.) its kings slowly extended their power over the surrounding country.

Metropolitan Museum

A War Chariot of the Etruscans, an Italian People Conquered by Rome

While Rome was expanding, her last king was overthrown and a republic was founded. Following the example of the Egyptians, the Babylonians, and the Persians, the Romans tried to conquer the known world. They defeated in wars all the other little

states in the Italian peninsula and made them subject to the republic. Then they began to fight beyond the borders of Italy. They conquered Carthage, Greece, Gaul, much of Britain, all of the eastern Mediterranean country, and Egypt. Their armies, led by generals like Julius Caesar, were invincible. The proudest princes, beaten by them in wars, were dragged to Rome to march as captives in triumphal parades. Cleopatra, the beautiful queen of Egypt, escaped them only by committing suicide. Owing to their victorious armies, the dominions of the Roman republic finally stretched from Britain to Arabia.

While Rome was growing, its government remained very much the same. The vast republic was ruled by the city of Rome. It was, in fact, a city-state. The people of Greece, or Gaul, or Spain were given no voice in public affairs. They were governed with a stern hand by officers sent out from the capital. In the city itself, the government consisted of a senate, composed of nobles and rich men, two assemblies of citizens, and magistrates elected by the assemblies. Every male Roman citizen who was in the city of Rome at the time of the meetings could vote in the assembly.

Was this not an amazing situation? A few thousand men assembled in open meetings in Rome could determine the fate of vast and distant dominions and millions of subjects.

Untold wealth poured into Rome from the provinces. The little nation of farmers became a nation of reck-

THE ROMAN EMPIRE ABOUT 400 A.D.

less rich men and a city rabble. The rich grew richer; the poor voters grew more and more corrupt and sold their votes to the highest bidder.

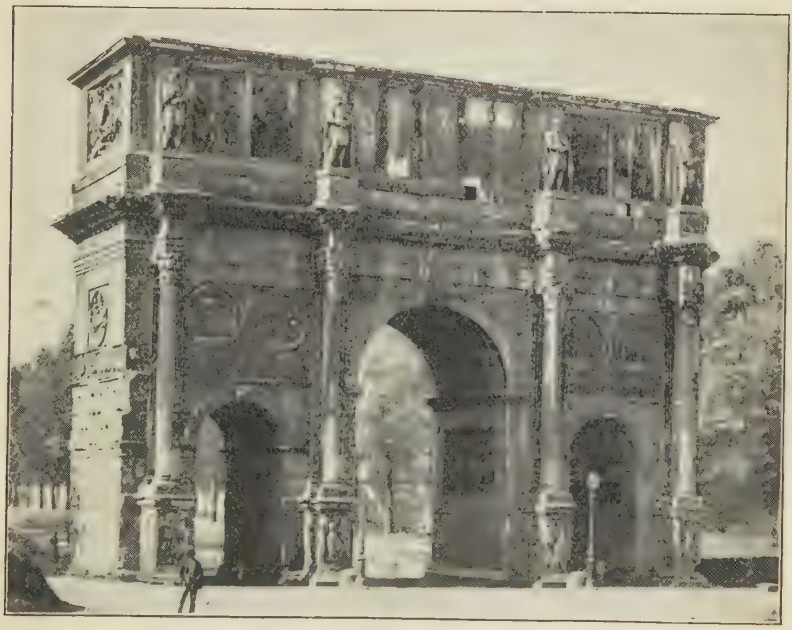
Slowly the Roman republic was changed into an empire under the rule of one man. No exact date can be fixed for this change. It was brought about by victorious generals like Julius Caesar (100–44 B.C.) who came back from the frontiers at the head of their armies and seized upon power at the city of Rome itself. Sometimes these generals waged wars among themselves. At last in 31 B.C. one of them, Octavianus, became the master of the so-called Roman republic. Four years later the Roman senate made the conqueror commander-in-chief of the army and head of the Roman religion, and gave him the title *Augustus*, which had hitherto been given only to their gods. In other words, they made him *emperor*. The old forms of government were not changed. The senate still met and the assemblies of citizens still gathered; but the republic was dead in fact, if not in name.

From an old print

JULIUS CAESAR

In the course of time, the august emperor became the absolute master. The republic was changed into an empire ruled by one man whose word was law from Spain to Pontus. The emperors, as they followed

one another in a long train, brought huge stores of treasures to the city of Rome. They built magnificent public buildings, massive triumphal arches, great highways, marvelous public baths, and vast amphitheaters for the entertainment of the people



The Arch of Constantine

of the city. They tried hard to keep the citizens at Rome contented. They gave bread to the masses and they amused them with shows in the amphitheater, where men called *gladiators* engaged in mortal combat or fought with lions and tigers — "every form

of man or beast the broad empire of Rome could furnish." Never had the world beheld such splendid buildings, such wealth, such display of riches, such pomp and pride.

For about four hundred years the empire of Rome lasted, but in the course of time it began to grow steadily weaker. Finally it was broken up like the older empires of the East (see p. 43). The citizens of Rome sank into luxury and sloth. A Roman writer lamented: "That majestic people which once controlled armies, high offices, and everything else, now limits its desires and its eager longings to two things only — bread and circus games!" When the army failed, the empire fell. Rome could no longer rule the civilized world. Where august emperors once reigned in all their glory, we now behold the broken ruins of amphitheaters, fallen arches, and heaps of brick and stone. The struggle for the possession of the earth passed from the Romans to other races. We shall see later how they, in turn, played their part.

Social Classes in the Ancient World

The Antiquity of Classes. Humanity had not gone very far on the path from savagery before it was divided into many classes. Tribes, kingdoms, empires, city-states, and republics all had classes. First of all were the priests, who had charge of the religious ceremonies. Next were the nobles, who united with

pride of birth the ownership of cattle and land in large amounts. Then there were the merchants, who traded far and wide, carrying goods from one section of a country to another and even from nation to nation. Below the merchants were the small farmers and the skilled artisans — the metal workers, stone cutters, and other wielders of tools. At the bottom of the scale were the serfs and slaves, bound fast to the soil they tilled or to the master who owned them.

Sometimes these classes were united in defense

Metropolitan Museum

A Model of an Egyptian Palace

against a foreign invader. Sometimes they engaged in struggles among themselves over the division of land and cattle. Many a time did the slaves rise in terrible rebellion against their masters, only to meet, usually, with equally terrible punishment.

The Nobles. Whether we turn to ancient Egypt, Greece, or Rome we find a class of wealthy and powerful landowners — men who held great estates tilled by slaves or bondmen of some kind. The fields of

the Nile Valley were laid out into immense farms, each owned by a noble. To-day, historians dig up the ruins of their fine houses, visit their tombs, and read such of their books as have escaped the ravages of time.

From the earliest days there existed in Athens and in Rome a class in most respects similar to the nobles of Egypt. In Rome, for instance, the most influential men were the nobles, owners of estates and members of distinguished families. The nobles were proud of their rank and looked upon themselves and their ancestors as superior beings. They were entitled to wear the purple stripe on their garments to mark them off from the common people and slaves. In the later days of the republic, when Rome had become rich, the nobles by birth found themselves rudely elbowed by men who had made great fortunes in trade and politics—men who "broke into" the nobility by one method or another.

All Italy was dotted with the fine houses and estates of Roman nobles. The house of one of them, we are told, had more "rooms than many cities embrace within their walls." These palaces were decorated with beautiful marbles and statues brought from Greece, Asia, and Egypt. The families that dwelt in them were waited on by slaves and their lands were tilled by slaves. They themselves scorned trading and all kinds of manual labor, and would do nothing except hold a government office or a command in the

army. Eager to enlarge their holdings, the nobles bought up or seized the lands of the small farmers. In the later days of the empire all Italy was a collection of huge estates worked by slave labor.

The Farmers. In several of the Greek states and in early Rome there were many farmers who owned small farms and tilled them with their own hands. The *plebeians*, as these commoners were called at Rome, were citizens, but at first their rights were limited. They could vote in the assembly, but they could not hold high office. Though the king might transform a plebeian into a noble, marriage between the nobles and the plebeians was forbidden.

Many and long were the conflicts between these two classes in Rome, until in the later days the distinctions between the two were nearly all abolished. Plebeians were permitted to marry nobles, and most of the offices were opened to them.

For a long time, the Roman farmers were able to hold their own. It was believed that the stalwart farmer, who left the plow to fight the battles of Rome, was the best kind of citizen. "Farmers furnish the bravest men and ablest soldiers," wrote the Roman Cato "No other calling is so honorable, safe, and pleasant as this is." Efforts were sometimes made to multiply the number of farmers by breaking up great estates into small plots. Especially was it a common practice to grant farms to returning soldiers — a kind of reward or bonus. As in the early days of the United States,

it was said that Rome was rich enough to give every man a farm.

In the course of time, however, the number of free farmers became smaller and smaller. Their lands were often bought or seized by the nobles and changed into estates tilled by slaves. Many of them perished in battle. Thousands, unable to compete with slaves, drifted to the city of Rome or sank into the position of bondmen on the vast estates. As the republic gained new territories, it became the practice to grant the lands in huge plots to generals and politicians. A Roman writer tells us, for example, that six Romans owned half the province of Carthage and that the peasants of Africa were a wretched lot. He adds that he saw an ass and a woman harnessed together to drag a peasant's plow.

The Artisans or Skilled Workmen. In Athens and in Rome, as indeed in all the cities of the ancient world, there were hosts of skilled workmen who were free in the sense that the small farmers were free. Along with them were found also numerous day laborers. When the city of Rome became the center of a great empire, there were perhaps 500,000 people within its gates, of whom probably one half were free. They usually lived in huge apartment houses, each family having a few dark rooms in a great building.

As the number of slaves who could do skilled work increased, the free artisan found it difficult to make a living. Often he sank to the level of a beggar, haunting

the streets of the city. In both Athens and Rome, the free workman was regarded with contempt by the upper classes. Aristotle, the Greek philosopher, declared that "no man can practise virtue who is living the life of a mechanic or laborer." Cicero, the Roman orator, looked upon workmen as belonging to an inferior order, saying with scorn, "A workshop can have nothing respectable about it."

Merchants and Professional Classes. Athens and Rome, like Egypt and Phoenicia before them, developed trading to a high pitch. Their ships plowed all the waters of the Mediterranean and in their markets were found traders from every clime. In addition to commerce, there were other ways of making money. Tax-gathering was a very profitable business, for the *publicani*, or tax-gatherers, were permitted by law to gather about all they could wring from the people. Money-lending was also profitable. So was office-holding in Rome and in her provinces. Though merchants and bankers grew rich, the aristocracy continued to look upon them with scorn. Cicero thought all retail merchants contemptible "because they can make no profit except by a certain amount of falsehood." Aristotle exclaimed that in the life of a merchant "there is no room for moral excellence." Nevertheless, impoverished noblemen were often glad to marry their daughters to the sons of rich traders or money-lenders.

Somewhat above the trading classes in the eyes of

the Roman aristocracy were the professional classes; but they too were of every degree. First among them, in the heyday of the Roman empire, were the architects and engineers, the men who planned and built

From an old print

A Roman Bridge near Nîmes (France)

the amphitheaters, palaces, and bridges. Musicians were in great demand for entertainments, public and private. Doctors, owing to the number of fraudulent fellows, or "quacks," had a hard time to win the esteem of the people. Some of them, however, rose to eminence. Such, for example, was Galen, who lived at the end of the second century after Christ. He was so famous that people from the ends of the empire

wrote him for advice and he told them by letter what medicine to take. Poets, historians, and teachers were frequently honored for their talents.

In many cases, however, in the later days of Rome, the teacher was a slave in the house of the rich aristocrat. Roman noblemen took pride in importing from Greece educated slaves as tutors for their children, or as reciters to amuse their guests. Some of the distinguished writers of Rome were of this servile origin.

The Slaves. The masses of people among all the great nations of antiquity were slaves. Slaves built the pyramids of Egypt, rowed the warships of Athens, and tilled the fields of Italy. The history of labor in antiquity is largely a history of bondage. As Rome grew, slavery multiplied. When the Romans conquered Italy, Greece, Africa, Gaul, Spain, Britain, and parts of Germany, they brought the captives into Rome by the thousands as slaves. It is estimated that Caesar in his conquest of Gaul took a million prisoners who were sold into bondage. In the slave markets of Rome could be found white-skinned Greeks and Germans penned up with swarthy Africans.

Those who were sold as domestic servants usually had a fairly easy life; but most of them passed into a servitude on the great estates that was truly horrible. They were worked in the fields in chain gangs and thrown into dungeons at night. The owner had the power of life and death over his slaves. Those who resisted their masters or ran away were frequently

crucified along the highways as terrible examples to their fellows. Toward the latter days of the empire, Italy was crowded with slaves and the descendants of slaves. Thousands of them had been freed by their masters. Some of them rose to positions of wealth and influence. Others swarmed into the cities, where they helped to swell the mobs so famous in Roman history.

The Great Cities of Antiquity

All the nations of antiquity had their great cities: Thebes and Memphis in Egypt, Nineveh on the Tigris, Babylon on the Euphrates, Jerusalem in Palestine, Tyre and Sidon in Phoenicia, Athens in Greece, Rome in Italy, and Carthage and Utica in northern Africa. In the Bible we can read graphic accounts of the mighty cities of the East. The populations of these ancient places we can only guess, for there was no regular census such as we have to-day. Rome in its prime, as we have seen (p. 60), had about 500,000 people within its borders. Perhaps Babylon was even larger.

The splendor of some of the cities dazzled all visitors. Babylon had its palace of terraces, rising one above another, and its "hanging gardens." It was reckoned by the Greeks as one of "the seven wonders of the world." In all the cities, temples, palaces, baths, wonderful official buildings, stores, and the luxurious homes of the rich testified to their wealth and magnificence.

Some of these cities have utterly vanished. Of Babylon nothing can be seen to-day except a few fragments of ancient walls and heaps of bricks crumbling into dust. Others have had continuous life. Athens is the capital of modern Greece, and many a stately ruin remains to tell of ancient days. Rome is the

The Ruins of the Colosseum, the Great Amphitheater at Rome

capital of modern Italy. The palaces of the emperors are no more, but some noble buildings remain intact to this very hour.

The Romans were indeed the master builders of antiquity. Their capital city was the wonder of mankind. Around the Forum, or ancient market place, they erected public buildings, imperial palaces, beautiful temples, and splendid monuments. All over their

broad empire the Romans built magnificent cities. At Arles and Orange, in southern France, are to be found to-day splendid ruins that are visited annually by hundreds of Americans, curious to see the signs of Rome's world power. London stands on the site of an old Roman city, and here and there may be found a bit of wall or pavement that has escaped destruction. So, too, in Paris the traveler may see fragments of walls and arches and baths that have come down from the day when France was Gaul, a province of the Roman empire.

It is in the cities of antiquity that we find much that resembles modern times. There were immense public buildings, monuments erected in honor of victorious generals, banking houses in which business was carried on with the most distant countries, and huge theaters for public amusements. There great throngs gathered in the streets to cheer returning soldiers or to hear the news of some momentous event in a far-off country. There were the tenements of the poor and the mansions of the rich, the artisan working at the flaming forge, the women buying at the market, and the politician stirring the masses by an impassioned oration on some burning question of the day.

Questions and Exercises

I. 1. Why can more people live in a country where farming is practiced than in one where hunting and fishing must be de-

pended upon for obtaining food? 2. So far as we know, the first great nations grew up in the fertile valleys of the Nile and the Euphrates rivers, though the lands adjoining these valleys are very largely arid; are there any reasons why such conditions should have been favorable to the development of these regions as the homes of people engaged in farming? There are no great forests in these river valleys; how did this help the farmers? 3. The Nile River overflows its banks each year and the water spreads over its valley; in what ways would this be an advantage to farming? Why were people living under such conditions likely to be united under strong and powerful leaders? 4. What is meant by a "despot"? 5. Why do we know more about the wars and conquests of the ancient kings than we do about the millions of people whom they ruled? 6. The text mentions the "Pharaohs" as the rulers of ancient Egypt; what other terms have been used by different countries for their rulers?

II. 1. How did the ancient Greeks differ from the people of the Nile and Euphrates valleys in their manner of living? In government? 2. How did the democratic government of Athens differ from our democratic government? 3. Do the people of your town or city meet together to decide directly any questions of government? How many years elapsed between the supposed date of the first Egyptian kings (5000 B.C.) and the death of Alexander the Great (323 B.C.)? How many years between the death of Alexander and the present time? 4. What was the form of government in Rome in the early days of its history? What changes took place later? 5. How many years elapsed between the death of Alexander the Great and the death of Julius Caesar? 6. What changes took place in the way in which the Romans lived as they passed from the rule of kings to the rule of the people and then to the rule of emperors? 7. Give as many reasons as you can to explain why the great Roman empire failed to endure. 8. The close of the Roman empire is usually placed at 476 A.D.; how long was this after

the first date that we associate with Rome (753 B.C.)? How does this compare with the number of years that our present government has been in existence?

III. 1. We have in our country to-day priests or clergymen, large landowners, merchants, farmers, skilled workmen, and unskilled laborers; why are these groups not "classes" in the sense in which this word is used in the text? 2. We do not have in our country "nobles," "serfs," or "slaves"; name those countries in which there is still a class of "nobles." What is the difference between a "serf" and a "slave"? 3. What occupations that are highly respected to-day were looked down upon as ignoble or dishonorable by the ancients? 4. In what ways are the great masses of people better off to-day than were the masses of the people in ancient times? 5. While some of the ancient cities were large, probably none was so large as are such modern cities as London, New York, Chicago, or Paris; can you think of any reason explaining why such very large cities were probably impossible in the ancient world? (Consider the problem of feeding so many people and the ways unknown to the ancients that we now have of producing foodstuffs, and especially of transporting foodstuffs quickly over long distances.)

Geographical Studies

I. 1. Study carefully the maps showing the location of the Nile and Euphrates valleys. Note how the Nile Valley is protected. Where does the Nile River rise? Trace the courses of the Tigris and Euphrates. When history began, these two rivers flowed into the Persian Gulf separately. Eridu (p. 46) was then a seaport. 2. Study the map of Greece (p. 48), and point out some important differences between this region and the regions of the Nile and the Tigris and Euphrates. What advantages would the Greeks have in a country such as theirs? Why was the country favorable to the development of small city-states rather than to the development of a united kingdom or empire? Locate Athens,

Sparta, Corinth, Thebes, Miletus. 3. Point out the extent of the Greek empire that was formed by Alexander the Great and endured only while he lived. 4. Locate Rome. Why was Rome admirably situated to be the center of a great empire? (Note the ease with which the various parts of the Mediterranean basin could be reached by boats.) 5. Locate the regions that the Romans gradually conquered: Carthage, Greece, Gaul (France), Spain, Britain (England), Egypt, Asia Minor. 6. Locate the great cities of antiquity mentioned on p. 64. Find out which of these exist under their old names. Which of them occupy the sites under new names? Which of them no longer exist except as ruins?

Suggestions for Reading

for pupils

Arnold, Emma J. — *Stories of Ancient Peoples;* American Book.
Ashley, R. L. — *Early European Civilization*, i–iii; Macmillan.
Best, S. M. — *Egypt and Her Neighbors;* Macmillan.
Brooksbank, F. H. — *Stories of Egyptian Gods and Heroes;* Crowell.
Gosse, A. B. — *The Civilization of the Ancient Egyptians;* Stokes.
Van Loon, Hendrik W. — *Ancient Man;* Boni and Liveright.
The Story of Mankind (*School edition*), v–xxvi.
Wells, M. E. — *How the Present Came from the Past*, Book I.

for teachers

See bibliographies at close of Chapters ii and iii in Botsford's *A Brief History of the World;* Macmillan.

CHAPTER IV

THE CULTURE OF THE ANCIENT NATIONS

The peoples of the ancient world did more than found great cities, states, and empires. They carried forward the work of civilization begun by primitive men and women. They improved the old ways of tilling the soil. They raised a greater variety of fruits, grains, and vegetables. They raised better sheep and cattle. They built solid and handsome houses. They made beautiful drawings, paintings, and sculptures. They erected wonderful temples and public buildings. They brought many of the domestic arts to a high state of perfection. They learned how to prepare and cook excellent food and to make fine linens, embroideries, laces, and brocades. For sheer beauty their work has never been surpassed, and seldom equaled. They studied the heavens and made the beginnings of the science of astronomy. They studied the ways of nature and thought deeply about right conduct. They wrote poems, books, and plays. They worshiped gods and had religious rites. Finally, they came to the idea of one God, all-powerful and all-wise; and one of the peoples of antiquity, the Jews, also gave to mankind Christianity.

In the practical arts, such as domestic science and agriculture, the peoples of the ancient world made definite strides in advance of primitive life. In the fine arts, like architecture and sculpture, they produced examples which the best artists of all later ages in the Western civilization admired and studied closely. In poetry, drama, oratory, and philosophy, they worked out such perfect models that all the world still marvels at them. Although our progress has been wonderful in material things, although we have the railway and the airplane, in all things of the mind we still have much to learn from the ancients. The English poet, Shelley, said of Greece:

> Her citizens, imperial spirits,
> Rule the present from the past;
> On all this world of men inherits
> Their seal is set.

Those writers are nearer the truth, however, who tell us that the Jews gave to the world religion, the Greeks art and literature, and the Romans law and order. Even there we must not draw sharp dividing lines between the ancient nations, because they borrowed so much from one another. For a long time after Rome fell, the people of western Europe knew no ancient language but that of the Romans, Latin. So they read mainly about what the Romans had done. Hence it was easy to give too much weight to the work of the Romans. About the day of Columbus, scholars began to study Greek with great earnestness; then

they declared that the Greeks had done everything. Long centuries afterward, indeed almost within our own time, scholars learned to read the queer sign writing used by the still older Egyptians and Babylonians. Then they found out how deep was the debt of both Greece and Rome to nations thousands of years older than either of them. The life and thought of America are really linked in an unbroken chain with the life and thought of people whose homes and palaces were dust for ten centuries before Rome rose to greatness on the banks of the Tiber.

The Practical Arts

Agriculture. In tilling the soil, as we have said, the ancients made remarkable advances over the

Metropolitan Museum

An Egyptian Picture Showing Plowing and Sowing

methods followed by primitive people. They learned to irrigate dry lands. Perhaps they got the idea from the annual flooding of the Nile River. At all events, in both the Nile Valley and the Euphrates Valley, there were great irrigation works. The ancients also discovered the secret of fertilizers to enrich the soil. This enabled them to cultivate one spot for centuries.

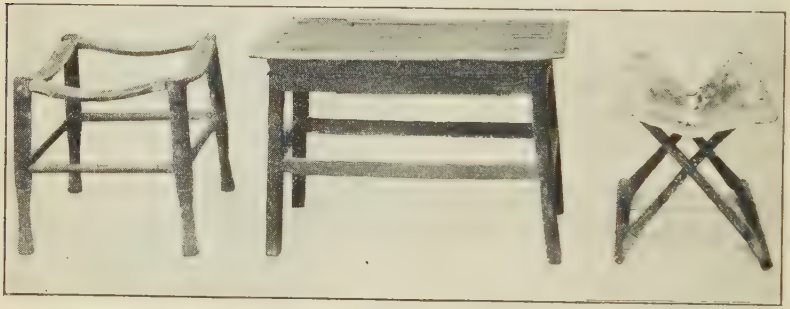
Thus they could give up wandering in search of new lands, and could support large populations in a relatively small area. They also discovered the secret of plowing and harrowing the ground so as to break it into fine powder. This, too, increased the production per acre.

The ancients discovered many aids to agriculture. They tamed the ox, the horse, and the ass. They invented plows, harrows, and carts that were dragged by their beasts of burden. They built granaries in which to store their crops. They made knives or sickles to cut the grain. They used the ox to tread out the grain and they winnowed it, or separated the chaff from the grain, by tossing it into the air. For grinding the grain they made heavy stone mills, which were turned by slaves or oxen.

The ancients increased their food supply in many ways. They domesticated more animals, such as swine, sheep, ducks, geese, and cows. They learned to handle the wild bee and secure vast quantities of honey. They grew peas and beans as well as rye and wheat. The plains of Italy and the fertile valleys of the Nile and the Euphrates were the great grain-growing areas of the ancient world. In the rougher and more mountainous regions of Italy, Greece, and Palestine, vineyards and olive orchards flourished.

The Domestic Arts. In all the home comforts, the ancients made great gains over primitive peoples who lived in caves or tents, or in brush and timber

huts. They learned how to build stone houses. The nobles and rich men had wonderful palaces with baths and hot-air furnaces. The homes of the masses were very much like some to be seen to-day in Italy or Greece. They were of stone and plaster, with flat roofs. There were no glass windows, but there were doors and wooden shutters. The floors were of stone



Metropolitan Museum

SOME PLAIN EGYPTIAN FURNITURE

or dirt. But they had one great advantage — they were cool in summer.

The art of cooking — bread-making, roasting, baking, and stewing — was so improved over primitive times that delicacies could be made for those who could afford them. Bread was the staff of life. Wine and olive oil came next in the diet of the masses. Fruit, fish, meats, and honey appeared on the best tables. But as the ancients ate with their fingers, they did not have sauces and desserts like ours. Indeed, it has been said that sauces mark the great difference between modern and ancient cookery.

In cloth-making, the ancients have never been surpassed. In the Metropolitan Museum of New York City, there are linen sheets, taken from ancient Egyptian tombs, which have lasted all through these centuries. The Egyptians pictured their goddess, Isis, with a

Metropolitan Museum

An Inlaid Roman Seat of the First Century after Christ

shuttle in her hand; and the Romans pictured their goddess, Minerva, with a distaff for spinning, showing how greatly they prized the work of their women. On the walls of Babylon and Nineveh, as well as of other ancient cities, there were pictures illustrating the

cloth-making process all the way from the raising of sheep and the growth of flax to spinning and weaving. The ancients did more than make fine cloth. They made beautiful designs, wonderful tapestries, and embroideries. Especially in the lands of the eastern Mediterranean did the love of gorgeous decorations flourish.

Owing to the mildness of their climate, the ancients spent much of their time out of doors. They got up early and went to bed early, as they had no brilliant lights for the house. Since they were an out-of-door people, they did not make as many kinds of furniture as we do to-day. They had chairs, couches, beds, and tables, though they were by no means as comfortable as ours. For what they lacked in comfort and variety, they made up in decoration. The Egyptians, Assyrians, and Jews made wooden furniture, using much cedar and ebony and probably rosewood, walnut, and teak. They

Metropolitan Museum

EGYPTIAN JEWELRY

decorated their tables and chairs by inlaying the wood with gold, silver, ivory, and precious stones. The Greeks employed bronze in making furniture, adding decorations of gold and silver. All these things the Romans had also; but they were especially fond of beautiful marbles.

Most of our ornaments of to-day originated among the ancients. They had necklaces, rings, bracelets, brooches, earrings, diadems, mirrors, combs, and jewel boxes. Their work in precious stones and metals was so good that modern workers find it hard to equal it and cannot surpass it. Ancient artists could carve, solder, inlay, cast, and chisel with a subtle skill and a fine taste that make us marvel as we look upon their work.

Architecture and Art

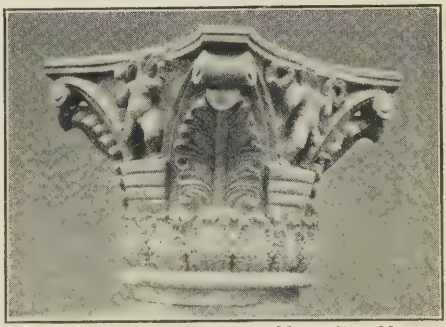
Egyptian and Babylonian Architecture. We do not know what people it was that first came out of caves and huts and learned to build houses of stone and brick. We do know, however, that very early in their history the Egyptians learned how to plan and erect great buildings. The pyramids, the towering tombs of their kings, and their temples have stood through thousands of years to bear witness to their skill. Moreover, they learned to decorate their buildings and to carve at the gates gigantic figures in stone.

Of the buildings erected by the ancient peoples to the east of the Mediterranean, we know less, because

A Model of the Temple of Karnak (Egypt)

Metropolitan Museum

they used so much wood and unburnt brick which did not survive the wear and tear of centuries. Of their work we can only read in the books that have come down to us. Accounts of Babylon, for instance, tell us of buildings huge in size and gorgeous in design, such as the Temple of Baal, greater even than the pyramids. They tell of "wonderful walls around the city, and the hanging gardens of Semiramis." In the Old Testament, we can read of the beautiful tombs and temples of the Jews. In the third chapter of the second book of the Chronicles, there is an account of the temple, or "House of God," built by Solomon at Jerusalem. It was ceiled with fir, overlaid with gold, "garnished with precious stones for beauty," and decorated with carvings and ornaments. Of this temple not a stone or sign remains. So we can only behold its beauty in the mind's eye as we read of it in the Bible.



Metropolitan Museum

THE TOP OF AN EGYPTIAN COLUMN

Greek Architecture. We know a great deal more about the architecture of the Greeks. Examples of their work and many splendid ruins are scattered far and wide in Mediterranean lands. The most beautiful as well as the most enduring work of the Greek archi-

tects was the temple. It was small in size, simple in form, straight in line, and designed to house the statues of one or more gods. Only a few could worship at a time within the gloomy shadows of its narrow chamber. That, however, suited the Greek kind of religion, as we shall see.

Several of these temples still stand, preserving to this day their delicate columns and graceful lines. The most perfect temple is at Athens. There is another fine structure at Paestum, near Naples in Italy, erected there by an ancient Greek colony. The Greeks also built tombs and theaters; but on none of these structures did they lavish such care and affection as on the temples.

Roman Architecture. The Romans copied directly from the Greeks. They early adopted the Greek temple, along with the Greek gods, but they added to both. The majestic Pantheon of Rome, erected to all their chief gods, combines a Greek porch and columns with a huge structure surmounted by a mighty dome. This building has stood about 1800 years almost intact.

In other ways, too, the Romans added to the designs of the Greeks. Their special creations were vast amphitheaters, circuses, triumphal arches, palaces, aqueducts, baths, and civic buildings. They learned somewhere how to make strong mortar and to build arches. With the arch they were able to erect buildings of great height and size. When men can only pile blocks of stone and wood upon one another, their designs are

limited; when they can use the arch and mortar, even the very stones become almost as clay in their hands. With lavish profusion the Romans erected huge buildings throughout the length and breadth of their empire. The gigantic amphitheater, or Colosseum, opened 80 A.D., had, when completed, seats for more than 40,000 people. It was about 600 feet long and 500 feet wide. Its outer rim stood more than 150 feet above the ground. So solid was its masonry that most of its walls and arches have survived the ravages of earthquakes and time.

Size, mass, and strength marked the work of the Romans; but they sought for beauty also. They robbed Greece of her marbles and statuary; they brought monuments from ancient Egypt; and they collected artists and sculptors from the ends of the empire. As they became rich, they employed Greeks for delicate work and drew upon the Orientals for gorgeous colors.

Metropolitan Museum

AN EXAMPLE OF THE BEST EGYPTIAN SCULPTURE

Art under the Oriental Despots. The Egyptians, from the earliest day of which we have record, drew, painted, and carved. The themes and forms of their art remained

much the same for thousands of years, almost as fixed as the character of the Nile Valley in which they lived. Art was not free. That is, artists did not draw and paint and carve whatever pleased their fancy. The greatest artists were employed by the ruler, or despot, to glorify him, to picture his life and his deeds. They showed him in war, on the hunt, at the court, and in public ceremonies. Instead of art for its own sake, art was used to portray the spirit of servility to despots. Moreover, Egyptian artists were very limited in their imagination. To express wisdom, cunning, courage, and other traits, they often placed on the statues of their rulers and gods the heads of animals supposed to have those qualities. Much of their work was unnatural and confined to straight lines; but in later days they learned to carve in stone marvelous, lifelike portraits. In their art, the Persians, Assyrians, Hebrews, and Babylonians were in many respects like the Egyptians.

Greek Art. It was the Greeks who first worshiped beauty and gave living and natural form to painting and sculpture. While the Greeks learned, too, from the art of their neighbors, especially from the Egyptians, they were themselves creative. That is, they did not merely imitate. They had imagination and expressed their ideas in the spirit of their own freer society. Their matchless work, of which we have many examples, has been the model and envy of artists everywhere. Their chief subjects were gods rather than kings. As

Metropolitan Museum

THE DISCUS THROWER

the gods were supposed to be like men and women, the artists drew them in human form. Moreover, the Greeks made their own bodies beautiful by taking athletic exercise, and these served as the models for artists. Instead of carving rigid images like the Egyptians, the Greeks gave movement and grace to their statues. The Discus Thrower beautifully represents this living art. Lovers of art tell us that Phidias, a Greek born about 500 years before Christ, was the greatest of all the Greek sculptors, and that in beauty his work has never been surpassed.

Roman Art. In the field of art the Romans were copyists rather than creators. They saw about them in the old Greek colonies of Italy many examples of the finest Greek work. They welcomed Greek artists who came to Italy to seek their fortunes or were exiled from home. They brought Greeks from Athens to teach them, and they sent their sons to study in Greece. For fine and delicate things they relied mainly upon Greek skill. As the Romans grew rich, the senators, emperors, and noble ladies took pride in having themselves portrayed in marble. Some of the best examples of art that have been preserved from the Roman period are the busts of eminent citizens. The Romans not only copied; they also collected and preserved some of the best work of the ancient Greeks.

Modern Studies of Ancient Architecture and Art. Modern admiration for Greek and Roman work is so great that the leading nations now have schools

at Athens and at Rome for the study of art and architecture, as well as other antiquities. Some of these schools are supported by governments and others by private societies. The English, French, Germans, and Americans have been eager seekers after the beauties of the ancient world. Their museums are filled with statues — originals or models — and other art objects. In the eighteenth century the Europeans began to write serious and important books on ancient art and buildings. To-day there are whole libraries on the subject in many tongues. No one who desires to become a master builder or painter or sculptor can neglect the study of the ancients.

Courtesy of Bankers' Trust Co.

GREECE AND EGYPT IN NEW YORK

Architects to-day use in our buildings the Greek columns and the Roman arches, as well as the spires of the later ages. In America's own creation, the "sky-scraper," there appear many devices of the ancients. If an ancient Greek could come to life, like Rip Van Winkle, and stroll down the streets of New York City, he would be astounded to see the pillars of a Greek

temple perched hundreds of feet above the earth near the dizzy summit of a great office building. If an ancient Pharaoh could step out of his mummy case and accompany the Greek, he would be amazed to see the columns of the Greek temple surmounted by a huge pyramid towering high toward the clouds. Verily we may again say of the ancients:

> On all this world of men inherits
> Their seal is set.

Literature and Education

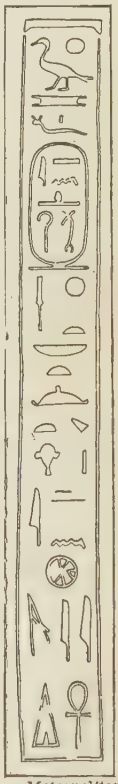
The Origin of Writing. Literature and education, like art, were matters of slow growth. They did not spring up overnight. Indeed, for countless ages mankind got along without knowing how to write; that is, how to express ideas by means of marks.

The art of writing began with picture making. One may write "There is a house" merely by drawing a picture of a house. On the other hand, one may use a picture to convey an idea very different from the drawing itself. For example, a picture of an eye may mean not only an "eye," but "I."

Picture writing easily grew into sign writing. It became possible to express even the most difficult ideas by means of symbols. All early writing in Egypt and Babylonia was based on pictures, and it took hundreds of different pictures or symbols to tell a long story. To this day, the written language of China and Japan has the form of pictures. It is made

up of thousands of signs or separate characters. Even for the Chinese and Japanese it is difficult to learn.

Out of picture writing grew the art of writing by marks, each of which stood for a sound. Finally, there were invented twenty or more marks or letters which included all the sounds of a spoken language. Three thousand years before Christ, the Egyptians had stumbled upon this device and had invented an alphabet of twenty-four letters. Long afterward the Phoenicians made the alphabet from which ours came.



Metropolitan Museum

EGYPTIAN PICTURE WRITING

Thus *phonetic* spelling, or spelling by sound, took the place of picture writing. This was one of the most wonderful steps in the growth of human knowledge, because in this way thoughts could easily be recorded and so passed on from one age to the next. It made possible widespread learning — the democracy of knowledge, so to speak. Knowledge could no longer be limited to the few when anyone with a little leisure could learn to read the books of the wisest thinkers. China at this time is taking this step in language development by introducing phonetic spelling among her people.

The Subject Matter of Early Literature. Long before picture writing or phonetic spelling was invented, ancient peoples had stored up in their minds a great

deal of knowledge. It was in the form of ballads, songs, tales, fables, and laws. It was handed down from father to son by word of mouth. In each nation or tribe there were a few " wise " men whose business it was to memorize this store of learning. They also taught it to the young, who were in turn to pass it on. When the art of writing was invented, the first things set down were the old songs, ballads, stories, and laws. Thus *literature* began. The word itself is from the Latin *litera*, meaning merely a letter of the alphabet or symbol.

The earliest of the Greek poets whose works have come down to us was Homer, who collected the song-stories that had long been sung in Greece. So among the English-speaking people, the earliest literature is the songs and legends of the Anglo-Saxon peoples brought together in the poem of *Beowulf*. In somewhat the same way, our own poet Longfellow took the American Indian legends, wove them into *Hiawatha*, and gave us a picture of old Indian religion, life, and culture.

Oriental Literature. The Egyptians, Jews, and other ancient peoples had many books long, long before the birth of Christ. They had war songs, stories of the great deeds of kings, medical books, and writings on moral conduct. The Egyptians had great libraries of books written on *papyrus*, that is, rolls of paper made out of reeds. At Nineveh there was a huge library of clay tablets. The Jews likewise had a vast

literature. Many of their writings, which were deemed sacred, were collected in that part of the Bible known as the *Old Testament*. In it we find stories of creation and of many wars; there we can read the history of the Jews and other peoples of southwestern Asia, besides the famous laws written in the Ten Commandments and poems, such as the Psalms.

Greek Literature. Greek literature, as we have seen, opens with the poems of Homer. In his *Iliad* and *Odyssey*, he recounted many a myth and tale of ancient gods and men. When Homer lived — indeed, whether he lived at all — is uncertain; but several hundred years before Christ, the stories that bear his name were known among the Greeks.

As Greece grew older, there appeared many poets, orators, philosophers, and play writers. The great poetess Sappho was placed by the learned Greek, Aristotle, in the same rank with Homer. The historian Herodotus wrote fully about an important period of Greek history, and is regarded to-day as "the father of historical writing." The Greeks also wrote plays — tragedies and comedies — which were given in the large open-air theaters. Aeschylus, Sophocles, and Euripides won immortality as playwrights. When Athenian citizens met to elect officers and decide public questions, they were addressed by orators who discussed the issues of the day. The most famous orator of all, Demosthenes, warned the Athenians in a famous oration that they were in danger of being

conquered by Philip, king of Macedon. In addition to poets, historians, playwrights, and orators, the Greeks had many philosophers. These men inquired into the meaning of life, the nature of the gods, and human conduct. First among these were Socrates, Plato, and Aristotle, whose ideas, after the lapse of more than two thousand years, are still studied by seekers after wisdom.

In each of these fields of literature, the Greeks created a fine method, or *technique*, which serves as a guide for our own writers. They searched for the best style; that is, for clearness, force, and accuracy. In the play, or *drama*, they learned how to make thrilling plots, to work audiences up to the climax, and to make a telling ending. Their orators studied deeply the art of persuasion and drew up certain important rules for making a convincing speech.

Roman Literature. The Romans conquered the Greeks by arms, but it may truly be said that the Greeks conquered the Romans by their art and literature. The greatest Greek books were translated into Latin, often by Greek scholars. They were taught to Roman youths and imitated by Roman poets, historians, orators, and philosophers.

The Romans were more than imitators in literature. Their poet Vergil will ever live beside Homer. Their Horace, who wrote about everyday Roman life, will compare in fame with the best poets of Greece. The Roman orator Cicero, even more than Demos-

thenes, perhaps, was the model of all later orators who sought to speak in the grand style. The philosopher Seneca, though he did not rival Aristotle in his wisdom and understanding, was counted among the great thinkers of the ancients. As playwrights, however, the Romans could not excel, or even equal, the Greeks. The people preferred the crudest kind of comedies. Roman playwrights and actors could not think up anything as exciting as the gladiatorial combats in the Colosseum or the gorgeous parades arranged by the emperors.

In writings on law and history, however, the Romans were path-breakers. They compiled their laws in great collections or *codes*. Many of these have come down to us and are carefully read by students of law. Indeed, Roman law, changed, of course, is still used in France, Germany, Japan, Italy, and many other countries.

Rome also produced some historians of lasting fame. One of the finest models of historical writing is Caesar's *Commentaries on the Gallic War*. For simplicity, dignity, and accuracy, it is admirable. It is justly chosen as the first serious Latin book to be read in American high schools to-day. In the historical writings of Tacitus we have more than stories of battles and rulers; we have wonderful pictures of life and customs. Tacitus did not seek merely to glorify his country. He tried to understand it and to find ways of protecting and saving it.

The Influence of the Greek and Latin Languages. After Greece declined and the Roman empire fell to pieces, the books of the Greeks and Romans, like their art, remained to influence all future generations. There is only one Roman Forum, and one must go to Rome to see it; but Caesar's *Commentaries* can be multiplied into millions of copies. The elegant Latin that Cicero spoke was no longer in daily use; the Latin of the people slowly grew into modern Italian, French, and Spanish.

While this change was taking place, educated people kept on studying and writing Latin. It became, as we shall see, the official language of the entire Christian Church for many centuries. The official documents of the Catholic Church are still published in it. So much wisdom was locked up in the writings of the Greeks and Romans that teachers once required all college and high school students to learn one or both of these ancient tongues. It is only within recent years that college students have been allowed to choose modern instead of ancient languages.

Education in Ancient Times. As in our time, so in ancient Greece and Rome there were schools. Sometimes they were supported by the government, but usually they were conducted by private persons. As in our day, also, the rich Greeks and Romans often had private tutors to teach their children at home. In Rome, it was common for wealthy men to employ learned Greek slaves to teach their boys and girls.

Sparta affords us the best example of government control of education among the Greeks. In that state every son of a freeman was trained by officials to serve the government, especially in the art of warfare. The education of the Athenian boy usually consisted of reading, writing, music, and gymnastics.

To reading and writing, the Romans frequently added the study of the Greek language. This was because they relied upon Greek books for much of their wisdom. It appears that all the larger cities of Italy and most of the small towns also had schools, at least for elementary education. In the days of the great Roman empire, the government encouraged citizens to found schools in the provinces in order to spread the language and the culture of Rome. Roman nobles and rich men often had great libraries on their country estates; and occasionally one of them gave money for a public library instead of giving a gladiatorial show.

In addition to the lower schools there were universities at Athens, Rome, and many other ancient cities. These were established by groups of teachers who gathered around some scholar and taught his ideas. Athens was the great university center of antiquity. To that city flocked students from Rome, Egypt, and all parts of the known world. There some of the wisest thinkers of all time, men like Socrates, Plato, and Aristotle, won their fame as teachers.

There was little learning outside of the schools.

There were no printed books, magazines, or newspapers. The masses of the people were slaves and received no education at all. Workmen and merchants were regarded as persons of a lower order, unworthy of education. The modern idea that every boy and girl should go to school was utterly unknown. Since labor was looked down upon, training for work with tools was treated as something beneath the dignity of the educated classes.

Still the Greeks thought of themselves as masters of all things. Thus wrote the poet Sophocles, when Athens was in her glory: "Of all strong things, none is more wonderfully strong than man. He can cross the wintry sea and year by year compels with his plow the unwearied strength of the Earth, the oldest of the immortal gods. He seizes for his prey the aëry birds and teeming fishes, and with his wit has tamed the mountain-ranging beasts, the long-maned horses, and the tireless bull. Language is his, and wind-swift thought and city-founding mind; and he has learned to shelter himself from cold and piercing rain; and has every device to meet every ill, save Death alone."

Ancient Ideas about Government. In their schools, the ancients discussed the whole subject of government. They also thought a great deal about the best form of government. Socrates and Plato gave much attention to planning an ideal scheme. They decided that all land and property ought to be owned by people in common and that all people should work solely for

the common good. Aristotle, on the contrary, replied that this was impossible. He said that property should be, as a general rule, private; he thought that men would work harder if each one looked after his own business and reaped the results of his own labor. He taught that the best form of government was a kind of modified democracy. He said that farmers busy in their fields made the best citizens, and that an ideal government was one in which each family had a small amount of property. He feared the government of the few or the rich. He likewise feared the government of the many or the poor. In his scheme, women were to obey their husbands and keep silent, and slaves were to do most of the work. Aristotle believed that slavery was both natural and right.

Some of the writings of these three philosophers have been kept all through the centuries, and have been translated into English. The founders of the American republic were familiar with them. Jefferson, for example, agreed with Aristotle in many things, especially that a nation of farmers was the best kind of nation (*First Book*, p. 157).

Ancient Religions and Christianity

Religion. All peoples in all times have believed in powers and forces outside of themselves, called gods or goddesses. With this belief has been coupled a feeling of duty toward the gods, which all must fulfill.

All early races believed in many gods. "Our

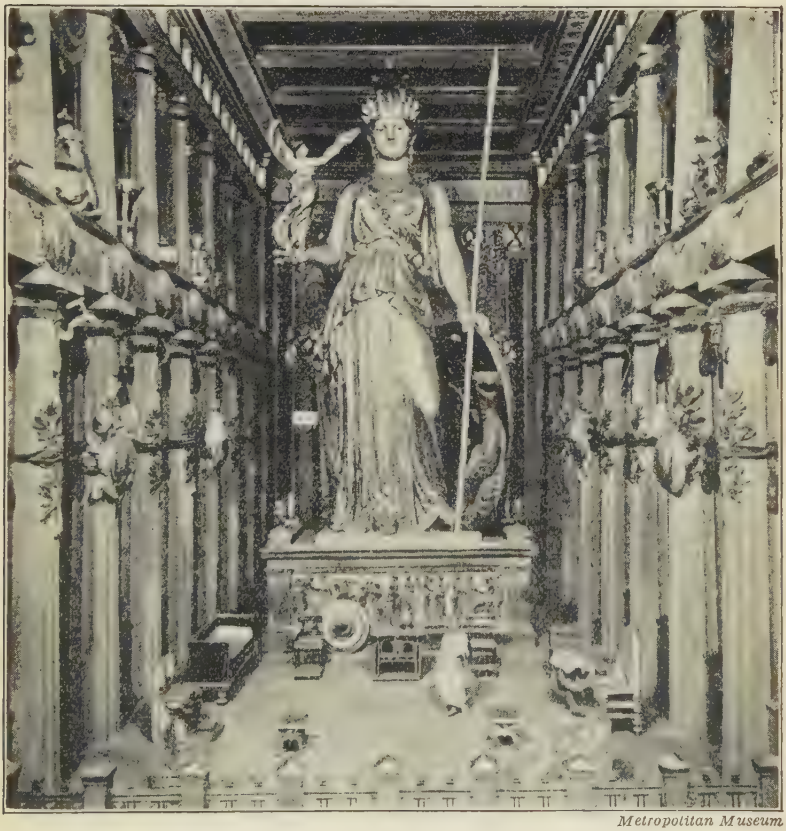
country is so peopled with divinities," exclaimed a Roman writer, "that you can find a god more easily than a man!" The gods were to the ancients the spirit of mystery that lay in all the works of nature. They thought of them as in trees, vegetation, seeds, growth, the seasons, and death. Some gods were great and powerful and towered above all the rest. Others were minor and local.

Metropolitan Museum
AN EGYPTIAN GODDESS

In Greece, each family and each community had its local deities. Then there were gods and goddesses common to all Greeks. Chief among the latter were Zeus, the father of gods and men, ruler and lawgiver of the universe; Athena, the goddess of wisdom and handiwork; Apollo, the god of light and beauty; Demeter, the goddess of the earth, fruits, and vegetation; Aphrodite, the goddess of love; and Ares, the god of battles.

The Romans likewise worshiped many gods. Jupiter, like Zeus in Greece, was the greatest of them all, while Mars, like Ares, was the mighty god of battles. The goddess Vesta ruled over household affairs, and Venus was adored as the goddess of love. Besides these, the Romans had hundreds of minor gods for places and things. Silvanus, for example,

was the god of the woods, and Terminus, the guardian of the boundaries of land.



Metropolitan Museum

A Restoration of the Interior of the Parthenon Showing the Goddess Athena

Among both the Greeks and the Romans there was set aside a special class of persons, known as *priests*

or *priestesses*. It was their duty to take charge of the worship of the gods. They were to keep the gods pleased, to avert their anger, and to find out what they wanted men to do. In Rome, for instance, it was the duty of six maidens, known as the *Vestal virgins*, to guard the sacred fire that burned always in the temple erected to Vesta, the household goddess. There were in later days *pontiffs*, who had charge of all religious affairs. They performed the ceremonies at marriages and funerals and on other occasions.

The chief pontiff was called "the judge of all things divine and human." In the days of the empire, the emperor himself was supreme pontiff. Indeed, he was worshiped by the people as one of the gods themselves.

Ideas of Right Conduct. Very early in their history, both the Greeks and the Romans began to think about morals. They wrote books on the duties which people owe to one another, and some of their writings on this subject have come down to us. One of them, Aristotle (p. 95), taught that all persons should seek the best life and that the best life is a life of virtue.

Among the Romans, none rose to nobler heights than Marcus Aurelius, who was the emperor from 161 to 180 A.D. In a book called *Meditations*, which can be had in many English translations, he wrote lofty rules for right conduct. He taught kindness, simple living, modesty, honest labor, generosity, and the spirit of forgiveness. "Respect that which is best in the universe," he said, "and in a like manner also

respect that which is best in thyself. . . . I seek the truth by which no man was ever injured. He is injured who persists in his error and ignorance." All good things, he said, he learned from his mother and his teacher, and in the midst of his trying duties as emperor he remembered them and sought to practice them in daily life. Often he was impatient with mankind. "The things which are much valued in life," he once exclaimed, "are empty and rotten and trifling, and people are like little dogs biting one another and little children quarreling, crying, and then straightway laughing." The wars and evil deeds of men filled him with grief. But he concluded: "Still it is no right way to be offended with men; it is thy duty to care for them and bear with them gently." Nevertheless, he found it hard to live up to the rules he chose for himself. Strange as it may seem, this very man was cruel to the Christians, the followers of One who also taught of mercy and love.

The Idea of One God. The wisest among the ancients believed that there was only one God, not many gods. The Hebrew prophets were among the first to take this view, and to proclaim Jehovah as their sole God. The masses of the Hebrews, however, had a hard struggle in trying to keep the one true faith. Continually they fell into idolatry and the worship of other gods. Whenever they did this, they were fiercely denounced by the prophets and called back to the worship of Jehovah.

The Greeks in time began to exalt one of their gods, Zeus. The deepest of their thinkers were working toward the idea of one God, the wise and just ruler of the universe. Socrates was put to death for questioning the belief in the old gods and teaching that there was but one God.

The Romans in later days exalted Jupiter above all their other deities. Many of them, like the Hebrew and Greek teachers, learned to believe in one God, but Roman statesmen said that the people must honor all the gods. After the Romans came to rule over many lands and nations, they permitted every kind of belief that did not make trouble for their officers. By doing this, they grew more and more doubtful about their own gods. It is said that many a Roman priest laughed up his sleeve as he offered sacrifices to his many gods. A Roman in the days of the Emperor Nero flatly declared that "nowadays nobody believes in Heaven and nobody cares a straw for Jupiter; everybody shuts his eyes and just keeps thinking about his own affairs." Through this decay of Roman religion, the way was prepared for a new faith, Christianity.

The Origin of Christianity. In the reign of Augustus, Rome's first great emperor, there was born in Palestine, a distant part of his realm, Jesus Christ, the founder of the new religion. His life, his labors, his teachings, and his tragic end are all recorded in the first four books of the New Testament, the Gospels of Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John. In them we read

how he went about teaching in the highways and the byways, how he rebuked the Pharisees for their pride and haughtiness, how he performed miracles, how he delivered the Sermon on the Mount, how he preached the fatherhood of God and the brotherhood of man, how he taught that the humblest who believed in him should have eternal life, and how he gathered his disciples around him to spread the gospel.

Near the end of the story we are told that he was brought before the Roman governor, Pontius Pilate, and accused of trying to make himself king of the Jews, in defiance of the Roman emperor. Pilate was much puzzled by the conduct and words of Jesus, and at length turned him over to the mob to be crucified. Then comes the story of his resurrection, the Last Supper with his followers, and his ascension into heaven. Among the very last words of Jesus recorded by Mark was the command: "Go ye into all the world and preach the gospel to every creature."

The Mission of the Apostles. The command was carried out by the followers whom Jesus left behind. In the Acts of the Apostles and in the letters of Paul to the Romans, the Corinthians, and his other brethren, we read of the labors of the disciples and missionaries. In the second chapter of the Acts it is written that the faithful apostles, who assembled at Jerusalem, were "gifted with tongues" so that they might preach the gospel to the peoples of the earth in all languages. There we learn about the formation

of the first church of the faithful at Jerusalem. There we read of the ceaseless journeys of the missionaries of Christ as they spread the gospel in many parts of the Roman empire and formed new churches of the faithful. There we read of Paul, converted suddenly on the road to Damascus and preaching the gospel far and wide, in Athens, Corinth, and Rome. In his many letters to the new congregations of Christians, Paul encourages them, chides them, advises them, explains the gospel, and exhorts them to holy living and good works.

The Reasons for the Spread of the New Faith. With wonderful swiftness, the Christian faith spread among the masses everywhere in the Roman empire. There were many reasons for this. For one thing, it was a universal faith; that is, it offered salvation and immortal life not only to Jews, but also to Greeks, Romans, and all the earth's multitudes. Again, it taught the equality of all men before God, that the soul of the most wretched Roman slave was as precious as the soul of the proudest emperor. Moreover, it offered the kingdom of heaven to all persons worn out by the labors, trials, and perils of this world. None was so humble that he was unwelcome in the new church. Had not Jesus himself said: "Blessed are the meek for they shall inherit the earth"? The working people, scorned and despised by the ruling class of Rome, found a home in the Christian congregations. Jesus had been a carpenter and his apostles

had been humble folk. On the Roman slave whipped to his dungeon at night, Christ's words of mercy fell like the dews of heaven. The lowly everywhere turned from the stern gods of war and hatred to the God of love and sweet charity.

Persecution of the Christians. The Roman government at first tolerated Christianity as it tolerated all other religious beliefs. In a little while, however, Roman mobs began to stone the missionaries and preachers. In time of such disorders, minor Roman officers were called upon to punish Christians for disturbing the peace and preaching against the Roman religion. After a while the emperor himself began to take notice of the new sect and to look upon it as dangerous. The Christians refused to worship him as divine, as all Roman subjects were required to do. They would not preach toleration of the Roman religion because they believed it to be utterly false. Moreover, they held many public and private meetings and formed brotherhoods among the faithful.

The Roman emperor was in mortal terror of secret societies and "seditious" meetings. He began to fear that the Christians would try to overthrow him, especially as they grew more and more numerous. So at length he forbade Christian worship. He punished with imprisonment or death thousands of Christians who refused to obey. Some were burned at the stake; others were thrown to wild beasts in the Colosseum. Their churches were torn down; copies of the

Scriptures were destroyed by fire; and their ceremonies were forbidden by law.

Some emperors were worse than others, but by the end of the third century the persecution of Christians became widespread and terrible. In Rome they were forced to take refuge in caves and underground passages, known as *catacombs*. In several places in Rome and other cities, they dug vast tunnels and rooms deep underground. There, huddled together in the darkness, they held their religious services and buried their dead. To-day the traveler, by the dim light of candles, may journey through hundreds of miles of the gloomy catacombs of Rome. He may read on the gravestones and on the walls of the low-vaulted chapels the solemn story of cruel days when Christianity was driven underground by the terrorism of the Roman government.

The Triumph of Christianity. Yet persecution could not kill Christianity. On the contrary, it flourished in spite of prisons, executions, and mob violence. All over the Roman empire Christian churches sprang up; and, in time, some rich and powerful people were drawn to the new faith. Finally, even the emperor was compelled to compromise with the Christians. In 311 A.D. he publicly gave them permission to worship as they desired. Before many more years passed the Emperor Constantine declared Christianity to be the one lawful religion of his empire.

The third stage in the triumph of Christianity came

when the Roman emperors ordered every one to accept the Christian faith. Those people who refused were called *heretics*, and it was their turn to be severely punished.

Thus, about three hundred years after the death of Christ, the Christian faith became the law of a vast empire. Rome, the old capital of the empire, had become the seat of the pope, the head of the Catholic Church, "Catholic" meaning *universal*. According to Catholic belief, the first pope was the Apostle Peter, to whom Christ had said: "Thou art Peter and upon this rock I will build my church. . . . And I will give unto thee the keys to the kingdom of heaven." This, we are told, was the beginning of the Catholic Church. Under the leadership of the popes, the work of the Church was carried on even while the Roman empire was crumbling into ruins. Under their guidance earnest missionaries were carrying the gospel of Christ far and wide to the peoples of Europe, Asia, and Africa.

In time the head of the once persecuted Church dared to write to the emperor himself: "There are two powers, august Emperor, by which the world is chiefly ruled, namely the sacred authority of the priests and the royal power. Of these, that of the priests is the more weighty because they have to render an account even for the kings of men in the divine judgment."

Surely in all the history of mankind there is no story more amazing than this. From the shores of

Galilee there came a religious faith that was to conquer a vast empire, to live on after that empire had perished, and to spread to every land, even to new worlds yet undreamed of. Under the banner of Jesus, Columbus was sent forth by Queen Isabella in quest of new peoples to be brought to Christianity. "We are knit together as a body in a most sacred covenant of the Lord," exclaimed the leader of the Pilgrims, who, many years after Columbus, made the beginnings of New England on the coast of North America.

Questions and Exercises

I. 1. Study the first paragraph of this chapter carefully and then try to tell what is meant by the word "culture" as used in the title of the chapter. 2. In the second paragraph, a distinction is made between "practical arts" and "fine arts"; name as many practical arts as you can think of; as many fine arts. What would you say are the chief differences between the two? 3. Irrigation of land is one of the important practical arts that have come down to us from very ancient times; what is meant by irrigating land? In what parts of our country are farmers compelled to depend upon irrigation? Find pictures of irrigating ditches in your geographies. 4. Why are fertilizers so important in farming? What usually happens to farm lands that are used year after year for the same crops without the aid of fertilizers? 5. Why is it important to break up the soil as finely as possible if crops are to be raised most profitably? How does the modern farmer break up the soil? 6. What animals are used by the farmers in your region as "draught animals" — that is, to pull loads? What modern machinery is used also for this purpose? For how long a time has such machinery been in general use? 7. Certain farm animals are important as suppliers of food rather

than to draw loads; name the most important of these. Are any animals used on farms to-day that were not known to the ancients? 8. What are the most important changes that modern civilization has brought about in the domestic arts? (In Chapter xiii you will be told some of the changes that have been brought about in the making of cloth.) How does the preparation of food in these days differ from that of ancient times? What differences are there in "table manners"? What are the chief differences in furniture?

II. 1. Study the picture of the Greek temple on p. 97. In what ways did this building differ from a modern church? 2. Find out whether there are any buildings in your neighborhood that represent in any way the Greek architecture. (Wherever columns are used for porticoes or porches, the "capitals" or tops of the columns are often copied after the old Greek models.) 3. Compare the seating capacity of the Colosseum at Rome with that of the largest hall or auditorium with which you are familiar. 4. The ancients had no buildings like the great "sky-scrapers" of modern American cities; find out how it is possible to build these high buildings, and what materials modern builders use that were not known to the ancients. 5. Primitive artists living in the Old Stone Age drew much more lifelike pictures of men and animals (see p. 37) than did the Egyptian artists (see p. 82); why are the Egyptian pictures so "stiff" and formal? Why were the Greeks better artists than the Egyptians? 6. What kinds of pictures do we have to-day that were unknown to the ancients?

III. 1. Can you explain why the development of the art of writing was one of the greatest of all advances in civilization? 2. Why was phonetic writing so great an advance over picture writing? Experiment by trying to tell, entirely by pictures, of an experience that you have had and then by making a written account of the same experience. 3. How was knowledge passed on from person to person and from generation to generation before the invention of writing? Why would this process make the pres-

ervation of *accurate* knowledge difficult? What is meant by a myth? What myths have you read? 4. Why is so much of the early literature in the form of poetry? (Which is the easier for you to memorize, prose or poetry?) 5. What are some of the important differences between the work of a poet and that of a playwright? Between the work of a philosopher and that of an historian? 6. What great invention of modern times has made possible a true "democracy of knowledge" (p. 87) that was impossible even among the ancient peoples who had developed the art of writing? 7. Make a list of the ways in which education in ancient times differed from education as carried on to-day. 8. What great question of government did the Greek philosophers study and write about? Which of the two views presented on pp. 94–95 seems to be the more generally favored to-day?

IV. 1. What sentence in the second paragraph under the heading "Ancient Religions and Christianity" explains why the belief in many gods was so widespread among the ancients? 2. What are the most important differences between the religions of the ancients and the religions of civilized people of to-day? 3. In what country did the Hebrews originally live? How did their religion differ from that of most other ancient peoples? 4. Under what government were the Hebrews at the time of the birth of Christ? 5. Why did the teachings of Christ spread so rapidly? 6. What is meant by "persecution," and why were the early Christians persecuted? Do you know of any peoples in recent history that have been persecuted because of their religion? 7. Explain why the oldest and largest of the Christian denominations is known to-day as the Roman Catholic Church.

Geographical Studies

1. Make a list of all the names of places that occur in this chapter. Look them up on the maps on pp. 46, 48, and 53. Try to decide in advance which of these three maps you should consult

before looking up each name. 2. Then consult the maps in your textbook in geography and see which places on the list are still known by the same names. For example, Nineveh occurs on the map on p. 46, but there is no modern city of that name; Rome, on the other hand, occurs both on ancient and on modern maps of Italy.

Suggestions for Review of Chapters I–IV

1. Have a line seven feet in length drawn on the blackboard. Let this line represent the period of recorded history. Place at the left end 5000 B.C. as the date that scholars assign to the first Egyptian kings. Place at the right end of the line the date of the present year. The date of the birth of Christ will be placed five feet from the left end of the line, indicating the point that divides the "B.C." and "A.D." periods. Place at the proper points on the line the following dates, indicating what each stands for: 2300 B.C. (Babylon); 753 B.C. (beginnings of Rome); 323 B.C. (death of Alexander); 44 B.C (death of Caesar); 313 A.D. (the Roman empire officially accepts Christianity); 476 A.D. (fall of the Roman empire); 1492 A.D.; 1776 A.D. If the blackboard is long enough, it would be interesting to continue a *dotted* line to the left eighteen feet farther. The end of this dotted line would represent the date 23,000 B.C., which most scholars believe to be within the period of the Old Stone Age in Europe. It should be remembered, however, that the dotted line represents the *prehistoric* period, about which our actual knowledge is very slight.

2. The pupils who have studied carefully the four preceding chapters have now what might be called a "speaking acquaintance" with some very interesting and important persons. If they wish to become better acquainted with these persons, the class may well be divided into "reception committees," each of which will be responsible for bringing one of these historic characters to the class by finding and reporting the interesting facts about his life,

and especially the reasons which explain why his fame has lived for so long a time. The following are suggested: Homer; Socrates; Plato; Aristotle; Alexander the Great; Phidias; Julius Caesar; Paul the Apostle; Galen; Constantine the Great.

Suggestions for Reading

for pupils

Myths and Legends

Baker, Emilie Kip — *Stories of Greece and Rome;* Macmillan.
Best, S. M. — *Glorious Greece and Imperial Rome;* Macmillan.
Bulfinch — *The Golden Age;* Stokes.
Church, A. J. — *The Aeneid for Boys and Girls;* Macmillan.
The Story of the Iliad; Macmillan.
The Story of the Odyssey; Macmillan.
Colum, Padraic — *The Golden Fleece;* Macmillan.
The Children's Homer; Macmillan.
Gayley, C. M. — *Classic Myths in English Literature;* Ginn.
Harding, C. H. and S. B. — *Stories of Greek Gods, Heroes, and Men;* Scott Foresman.
Hawthorne, Nathaniel — *The Wonder Book;* Macmillan.
Kingsley, Charles — *The Heroes;* Macmillan.
Kupfer, Grace H. — *Stories of Long Ago;* Heath.

Greece

Ashley, R. L. — *Early European Civilization*, iv, viii.
Hall, Jennie — *Men of Old Greece;* Little Brown.
Macgregor, Mary — *The Story of Greece;* Stokes.
O'Neill, Elizabeth — *The Story of the World*, iii–ix; Putnam.
Tappan, Eva M. — *The Story of the Greek People;* Houghton Mifflin.
Van Loon — *The Story of Mankind* (*School edition*), xiv–xvii.

Rome

Ashley — *Early European Civilization*, ix, xii, xiii.
Harding, C. H. and S. B. — *The City of the Seven Hills;* Scott Foresman.
Lovell, Isabel — *Stories in Stone from the Roman Forum;* Macmillan.
Macgregor, Mary — *The Story of Rome;* Stokes.
O'Neill — *The Story of the World*, ix–xvii; Putnam.
Tappan, Eva M. — *The Story of the Roman People;* Houghton Mifflin.
Van Loon — *The Story of Mankind* (*School edition*), xxii–xxvi.

Christianity

Hodges, George — *When the King Came;* Houghton Mifflin.
Smith, N. A. — *Old, Old Tales from the Old, Old Book;* Doubleday Page.
Tappan, Eva M. — *The Old, Old Story Book;* Houghton Mifflin.
The Christ Story; Houghton Mifflin.

Education and School Life

Smith, D. E. — *Number Stories of Long Ago;* Ginn.

FOR TEACHERS

Botsford — *A Brief History of the World*, iii–x.
Breasted, J. H. — *Ancient Times;* Ginn.

CHAPTER V

THE MIDDLE AGES: FEUDALISM AND THE CHURCH

While Christianity was spreading throughout Europe and the power of the pope at Rome was growing, the great Roman empire was falling to pieces. If you will look at the map showing Europe and western Asia in about the year 400 A.D. (p. 53), you will find that empire stretching all the way from Scotland through France, Italy, Greece, Palestine, and Arabia to the Persian Gulf. It embraced all Europe west of the Rhine and south of the Danube. Most of the region east and north of these rivers was inhabited by numerous tribes of whom little was known except that they were warlike and barbaric.

If you will then contrast this map with the other one of the same territory, showing the state of things about 800 years later, namely 1200 A.D. (facing p. 116), you will be struck by the changes. The solid unit of the Roman empire has disappeared. The map of Europe looks instead like a piece of patchwork. Within the borders of the old Roman empire and to the northeast, there have come hundreds of independent states and principalities. Some of them are so small

that they can be shown only on a large wall map. At the head of each one is a prince bearing some such title as king, duke, count, or margrave.

The period between the fall of Rome and the rise of modern nations is called the *middle ages* or the *medieval* period. No exact date can be fixed for its beginning or its end. It is hard to say just when the Roman empire disappeared because it went to pieces so gradually. Neither is it easy to say when the modern period began. Roughly speaking, however, the period between 410 A.D. and the discovery of America may be called here the middle ages.

Feudalism

The Decline of Rome. What had happened in the intervening years to bring about such astounding changes as these shown on our maps? First of all had been the decline and fall of the empire itself. The great line of Roman emperors died out and left no one powerful enough to carry on the task of governing the civilized world. The old Roman families that had once been leaders both in times of war and in times of peace had fewer and fewer children to follow in their steps. Finally they almost disappeared as a class, and no other leaders arose to take their places. The Roman farmers, who had once been the mainstay of the country, declined in numbers. Those that remained generally lost their lands and became bondmen or went into the cities to swell the ranks of the

poor. The army, formerly composed of free Roman citizens who loved their country, became a band of paid soldiers. Many of them had come from foreign lands and sold their services to the highest bidder. They sometimes even sold the office of emperor itself, for they finally became the masters of Rome.

Moreover, the Roman people lost their old, simple ways of living and joined in a mad scramble for wealth and luxury. Sons and daughters of men who had once defended Rome or had faithfully served the government, came to think only of rich food, expensive clothes, exciting games, and idleness. At the very time the Romans were learning to prefer easy living, the supply of slaves to do the hard work fell off. As the army no longer conquered new peoples, the stream of bond servants which had flowed into the Roman slave market dried up. The Romans had become too spoiled by slavery to do the work that the slaves had done.

Finally, the distant provinces began to revolt. They had been systematically robbed by their Roman governors and had grown to hate these masters. The army, which ceased to be able to defend Rome itself, was less able to defend Roman rule in far-off lands.

When the provinces dropped off one by one, the merchants and bankers of Rome lost their business. Their magnificent buildings slowly decayed. No new public monuments and palaces were erected. Those that had once been the grandeur of the Eternal City

sank down to earth in hopeless wreckage. Rome ceased to produce poets, orators, historians, and great writers of every kind. The splendor of Rome was gone, leaving behind nothing but the magic of her great name.

The Germanic Invasions. As the strength of Rome's armies fell off, her enemies grew in number. The Germanic tribes beyond the Rhine and the Danube had long beaten against Rome's borders. Finally they broke into the empire in hordes.

The barbarian invasion, however, did not occur all at once or in the same way. Thousands of Germans went into the Roman empire very much as immigrants come into the United States to-day, singly and in bands. They were attracted by the opportunities of Rome. Others went because they preferred the peace of the empire to the endless and cruel wars of their native lands.

Thousands of Germans, organized as tribes — Goths, Franks, Angles, and Saxons, — invaded Roman territory under powerful and daring chieftains. One of these bands, the West Goths, commanded by Alaric, even captured and looted the city of Rome itself in 410 A.D. Thus the very spot from which Roman armies had once gone forth to subdue the earth was itself in the hands of conquerors. "Nations innumerable and savage beyond measure," exclaimed the Christian monk, St. Jerome, "have invaded all Gaul. The whole region between the Alps and the Pyrenees,

the ocean and the Rhine has been devastated. . . . O wretched empire!"

Feudal Princes. There was now no Roman empire stretching from Scotland to Arabia. It is true that emperors long ruled with much pomp at the new capital, Constantinople, but they had little influence on affairs in Europe. In the place of the western empire there were hundreds of little kingdoms and principalities. There were hundreds of petty princes installed in stone castles and ruling tiny domains by the sword. The peace of the Roman empire had gone and with it Roman citizenship, once a thing of pride and power. The little states built amid the ruins of the empire were always at war with one another. The inhabitants of each were forced to obey the local prince, or *feudal lord.*

The system of princely rule, born of warfare, arose in different ways. In some cases, a German warrior surrounded himself with fighting men. They conquered a piece of Roman territory. The chief took a large part of the land for himself and divided the rest among his followers. Each of his men swore fealty and promised to help the overlord in defending their common domains.

In other cases, the feudal chieftain was a former Roman citizen who, in the general smash of his country, rose to the top as a fighting man and leader of fighting men. Roman citizens, frightened at the general disorder, flocked to him and placed themselves and their

ATLANTIC OCEAN
NORTH SEA
ENGLAND
Richmond
York
Lincoln
Chester
Norwich
Dublin
Clontarf
Ireland
Leinster
Limerick
Munster
Wexford
Connaught
Cardiff
Reading
LONDON
Dover
Wareham
Hastings
Exeter
Antwerp
Flanders
Ypres
Liege
GUERNSEY
JERSEY
Rouen
Dieppe
Amiens
Normandy
Rheims
PARIS
Chartres
Evreux
Brittany
Quimper
Mans
Orleans
Vezelay
Nantes
Angers
Tours
Chinon
Poitiers
La Rochelle
Km. of FRANCE
Aquitaine
Perigueux
Bordeaux
Gascony
Bayonne
Auch
Toulouse
Narbonne
Santiago de Compostella
Km. of Leon
Burgos
Carrion
Valladolid
Km. of Navarre
Huesca
Km. of Aragon
Barcelona
Guimaraens
Oporto
Portugal
Salamanca
Km. of Toledo
Coimbra
Madrid
Castile
Lisbon
Santarem
Zafaca
Badajos
Km. of Serpa
Ourique
Cordova
Seville
Granada
Malaga
Almeria
Cadiz
Gibraltar
Toledo
Guadiana
Valencia
Calatrava
Navas de Tolosa
MOHADES
Orihuela
Cartagena
BALEARIC ISLES
(under the Almogavides)
MAJORCA
IVICA
FORMENTERA
MEDITERR
10
West
5
0
5
50
45
40

EURO

EUROPE
about 1200
SCALE OF MILES
0 50 100 200 300 400
Km. of DENMARK
Holstein
Lubeck
Hamburg
Bremen
Minden
Brunswick
Goslar
Cologne
Thuringia
Merseburg
Hohenburg
Fladenheim
Meirichstadt
Dy. of Franconia
Worms
Spires
Weinsburg
Regensburg
Strasburg
Ulm
Dy. of Swabia
Basle
Constance
Como
Milan
Lodi
Lombardy
Turin
Parma
Genoa
Pisa
Florence
Tuscany
Leghorn
Ajaccio
CORSICA
ELBA
St. Bonifacio
(to Genoa)
SARDINIA
Oristano
Cagliari
Trassineto
Ancona
Spoleto
Civitella
Dy. of ROME
St. Peter
Naples
Amalfi
Salerno
Bari
Taranto
Brindisi
Otranto
Durazzo
Achrida
Thessalonica
Aegean Sea
Arta
Corinth
Athens
Scodra
Ragusa
Belgrade
Servia
Bosnia
Nicopolis
Kingdom of Bulgaria
Croatia
Slavonia
Dalmatia
Carniola
Carinthia
Trent
Aquileia
Treviso
Verona
Padua
Venice
Ravenna
Bologna
Brixen
Dy. of Austria
Vienna
Dy. of Salzburg
Bavaria
Dy. of Styria
Gratz
Buda
Pest
Danube
Theiss
Tokay
Dobeka
HUNGARY
Presburg
Brunn
Prague
Bohemia
Cracow
Sandomirz
Vladimir
POLAND
Breslau
Silesia
Lusatia
Wolfesholz
Meissen
Oder
Elbe
Saxony
Brandenburg
Stettin
Colberg
Coslin
Pomerania
Prussia
Culmsee
Nakel
Thorn
Plotska
Vistula
Castrin
Mediterranean Sea
Sicily
Palermo
Messina
Catania
Syracuse
Gergenti
Cosenza
Gulf of the Two Sicilies
Adriatic Sea
Riviera
Greek
Km. of
Bulgaria
Aulon
Otranto
Gulf of Venice
Gulf of Genoa
Gulf of Lyons
Gulf of Taranto
Gulf of Arta
Gulf of Corinth
Gulf of Aegina
Gulf of Salerno
Gulf of Naples
Gulf of Gaeta
Gulf of Spezia
Gulf of Leghorn
Gulf of Trieste
Gulf of Fiume
Gulf of Quarnero
Gulf of Zara
Gulf of Cattaro
Gulf of Durazzo
Gulf of Valona
Gulf of Patras
Gulf of Lepanto
Gulf of Salonica
Gulf of Cassandra
Gulf of Contessa
Gulf of Volo
Gulf of Zeitun
Gulf of Athens
Gulf of Nauplia
Gulf of Koron
Gulf of Kalamata
Gulf of Messenia
Gulf of Laconia
Gulf of Argos

lands under his protection. He promised to defend them and they, in turn, pledged themselves to aid him with men and money. Sometimes one man with his followers swore fealty to another, and the latter with all his underlings would subject himself to a still more powerful man. Thus it happened that B would hold land from A; C from B; D from C; and so on, making a long line of lords under a single great leader.

An old print

FEUDAL LORDS FIGHTING

The chief business of the feudal lord was fighting to get land and to keep it. Valor in battle and loyalty to his superior, if he had one, were his striking virtues. By warfare he added to his wealth and increased his renown. Therefore feudal princes were engaged in endless conflicts among themselves. For a thousand years and more Europe was given over to

fighting and pillaging. Princely families rose, seized huge territories, and in turn were either conquered by stronger families or completely destroyed.

Since it was chiefly the strong who were victorious, there slowly came to power a few masterful men. They made themselves the ruling monarchs of whole nations, like the English, the French, and the Spanish. Of these kings and their part in history, we shall say more later.

The Serf and the Manor. The domain of a feudal lord, in any part of Europe during the middle ages, was a single village or collection of villages. It was inhabited by peasants who tilled the soil. Every village, moreover, belonged to a lord. The villagers were serfs. Each man and his family were bound to the village. They could not leave it and take up their abode elsewhere without the consent of the lord. No one could marry without his approval. Each family had a certain amount of land, in addition to a cottage or hut and garden. For the use of this land the serf family had to pay the lord in crops and in labor on the land which he reserved for himself. The serf's payment in labor was usually very heavy. Often it amounted to five days a week in harvest time. Thus little time was left for tilling his own soil. He could not sell any cattle without his lord's permission. If he committed an offense, he was likely to be tried and punished in a court held by the lord's *bailiff* or agent.

In exchange for these heavy duties, the serf's family

had certain advantages. The lord was bound to protect it against invaders. At all events, the serf and his sons did not have to render military services. The

Metropolitan Museum

THE ARMOR OF A FEUDAL WARRIOR

family was, furthermore, sure of its cottage and plot of ground and a bare living if it could be had from the land. The old people were not turned out to starve or

carted off to the poorhouse. Certain holidays ordered by the Church broke the dull monotony of heavy labor and gave opportunities for rest and festivities,

> When toil remitting lent its turn to play
> And all the village train from labor free
> Led up their sports beneath the spreading tree.

Still, at best, it was a crude and toilsome life. The cottage was merely four bare walls with a thatched roof. No books or papers enlivened the routine of life. Seldom, in fact, could a serf read or write. Little did he know about the great world beyond his horizon. Little did he know about the chemistry of the soil at his feet or improving the breed of his cattle. He was not a citizen; merely a subject. He was not expected to take any interest in public affairs or to hope for any improvement in his lot. An old English couplet about the "squire" or landlord described his fate in simple words:

> God bless the squire and his relations
> And keep us all in our proper stations.

The Village. There are many parts of Europe to-day where one may see a village practically as it was in the middle ages, with a feudal castle standing in its midst. From what we can observe and from books and pictures that have been saved, we can see through the mind's eye the medieval villages.

Let us make an imaginary journey to one of them in France. It is on a plain at the foot of a high hill.

The cottages are all alike. They are small and built of stone or of wood and plaster. The roofs are made of thatched straw. They have no glass windows, only small openings in the walls fitted with heavy

In an Old French Village To-day

wooden shutters. The houses are all huddled together along a narrow unpaved lane. The barns are attached to the houses and the people live close neighbors to the cows, horses, pigs, and goats. In rainy weather the lane is a quagmire, and in summer the odors of the village are sickening.

The rooms of each cottage are low and dark. On

the ground floor there is a kitchen, dining room, and bedroom combined. In the smoky fireplace hangs an iron pot in which most of the family cooking is done. In a loft up under the thatch is a room in which the children sleep. When it rains, water leaks in upon them. At best, it is dark and airless. The food of

European Women Still Washing in the Medieval Way

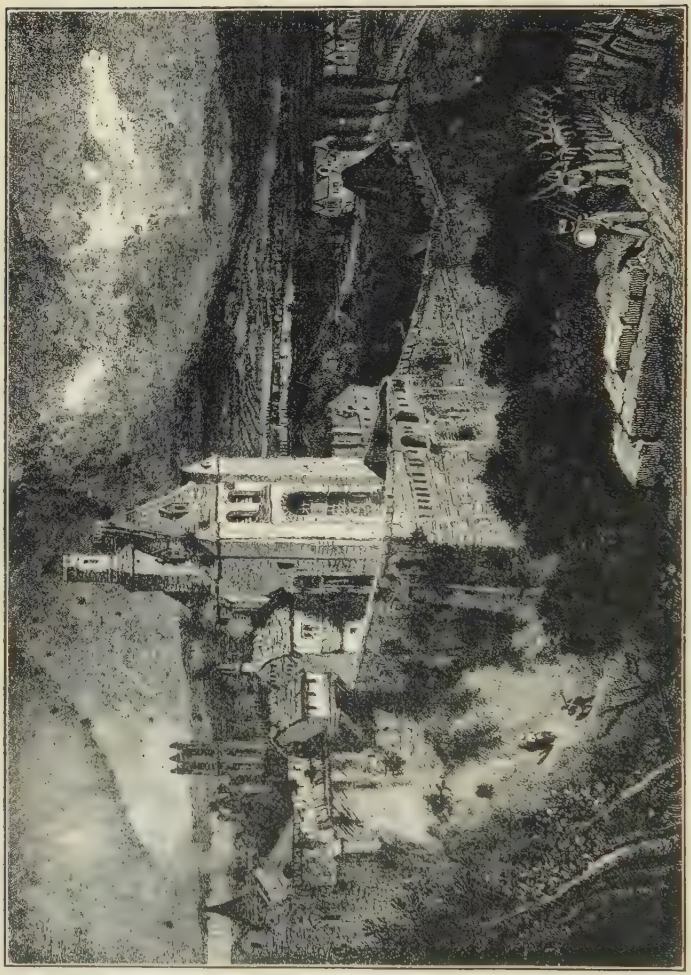
the family is simple and coarse — porridge, soup, bread, and wine. Often all the family eat out of the same pot.

The housewife performs her labors in the very hardest way. She carries water from a distant well or stream. She has few pots and pans and dishes. She has to "break her back" washing clothes in a near-by stream, and is grateful if it is not dirtier than her weekly bundle.

To her household duties, she adds digging, sowing, and reaping with the men in the fields. All through the long ages woman has carried this double burden. She was carrying it when Caesar's legions marched through her village to conquer Britain. She carried it all through the middle ages. She carries it to-day as the American tourist, wrapped in a cloud of dust, rolls past in his automobile.

Outside the village are the fields stretching away in small plots. There are also a meadow for the village cattle and a forest which supplies wood for winter time. From the hillside merrily tumbles a little stream of water, which renders the village a fourfold service. At the entrance of the village, some of it is drawn off to a wooden trough from which the household needs of the people are supplied. After crossing the narrow road under a stone bridge, it turns the landlord's mill at which the grain is ground. Then it spreads out over a pebbly bottom where the peasants' clothes are washed. Finally it winds through the meadow where graze the village flocks and herds.

Near by is the village church standing in the yard where sleep the dead of many a century. On a moss-covered stone, perhaps, one may find a striking epitaph written in memory of some beloved one whose bones were dust long before America was discovered. In the early morning, the church bell announces the matin service. In the evening, it "tolls the knell of parting day." On Sundays, it summons all the village folk to service.



From an old print

A Castle

The Castle. High on the rocks above the village looms the castle in which dwell the lord of the village, his family, and his warriors. On every side massive

walls rise straight from the steep rocks. At each of the corners is a high tower where sentinels watch for approaching enemies. At the entrance is a heavy drawbridge which is let down over a deep ditch, or *moat*, filled with water. Within the fortress is the castle itself. It is built around a courtyard. Its walls are eight or ten feet thick, pierced here and there by narrow slits which let in the only daylight the residents enjoy. In one corner of the castle is a great dining hall heated in winter by an immense fireplace. On one side is a chapel in which the lord's private chaplain performs religious services for the family. In another corner are the sleeping quarters of the lord and his family and followers, or *retainers*. Near the dining hall are the kitchen and the rooms of the army of servants.

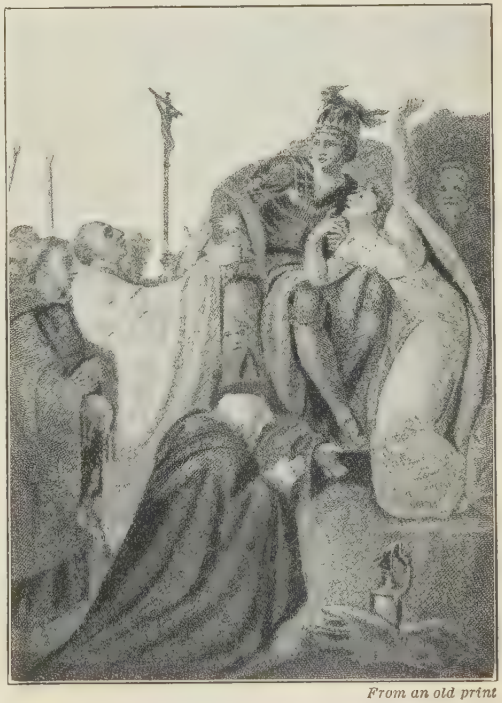
Life in this gloomy pile is by no means as happy as it often appears in fairy stories. Except in the warmest summer weather, the rooms are cold, damp, and cheerless. Aching limbs are more common than joyful hearts. The only light at night is from candles that flicker and sputter in the ceaseless drafts of chilling air. Musicians may enliven the evening meals with merry strains, and a dance of the knights and ladies may follow the repast. On the whole, however, life is deadly dull. The fighting men are overjoyed when they are summoned to the walls to defend the castle against an advancing enemy, or are ordered in martial array to storm the stronghold of a neighboring lord, or to go on a long crusade to Jerusalem.

The Medieval Church

The Conversion of the Barbarians. While the feudal lords were building up their power, the Church was slowly uniting them in certain ways. As we have seen, the Christian religion was adopted by the Roman emperors and made the only lawful religion of the whole empire. The early apostles and teachers had succeeded beyond their dreams; but they left to those who came after them the task of converting the rest of the known world. This work was carried on by missionaries. For more than two hundred years they kept heroically at it, suffering, for their great cause, hardships that beggar description. They went into the dark forests of Germany. They pressed northward till they reached the ice-locked lands of the Arctic circle. They journeyed westward, carrying the cross of Christ to the uttermost parts of Britain, Ireland, and the neighboring islands.

Though the missionaries preached to the people in the highways and byways, they made a special effort to reach the hearts of the barbarian war leaders. Whenever a prince was converted, he ordered his subjects baptized in his faith. Thus, for instance, did Clovis, the king of the Franks, who invaded ancient Gaul. One day, in 496, while he was in a desperate battle, things were going badly for him. As his wife had been converted to Christianity by some missionaries, it occurred to him that her God might help him

in his trials. Thereupon he appealed to Jesus for aid and declared that, if victorious in battle, he would accept the Christian faith. He flung himself with renewed energy into the fray, and defeated his enemies. Then, according to his pledge, he and his warriors, numbering, it is said, three thousand, were at once baptized. So it happened that the missionaries subdued the barbarians and united them with Rome after the Roman armies had failed.



From an old print

ETHELBERT LISTENING TO CHRISTIAN MISSIONARIES

About a hundred years later, a band of missionaries under a famous monk, Augustine, landed on the shores of Britain. That island, though once Roman, had now been conquered by the Angles and Saxons from the German forests. The monks were received by Ethelbert, king of Kent. who listened patiently to

their sermons. When they asked him to forsake his old gods, he hesitated, saying: "Your words are fair, but they are of new and doubtful meaning." A year passed before he accepted the new religion. When he did decide at last in favor of Christianity, thousands of his subjects flocked to the monks to be baptized. Thus the conversion of the English was begun. By the year 1000 the work of the missionaries in western Europe was completed. Rome was again its ruler — the ruler of its mind and spirit.

The Pope. At the head of all Western Christendom was the pope at Rome. His powers were immense. He could make laws which all Christians had to obey. He was a high judge to whom Christians could appeal in matters of religion. As the representative of God on earth, he claimed an authority far superior to that of mere earthly kings. Indeed, he could free a king's subjects from their oaths of allegiance and outlaw a king before the world. As head of the Church, he owned a vast amount of property and drew huge revenue from faithful Christians. He had territories and an army and waged war on kings and emperors in defense of his rights and powers.

The Clergy. The affairs of the Church were managed according to carefully laid plans. All Christendom was laid out into large districts, known as *archbishoprics*, each presided over by an *archbishop*. This great domain was in turn subdivided into *bishoprics*, at the head of each of which was a *bishop*. The bishopric

was, in turn, composed of villages, each with its church and parish priest. All those who labored officially in the Church, from the humblest village priest to the pope at Rome, were known as the *clergy* and formed a distinct class. No one could enter it without a special training and without having the approval of church authorities.

From an old print

THE SUPREMACY OF THE POPE: A KING AT HIS FEET (A MEDIEVAL CUSTOM)

The powers of the clergy were numerous and important. They baptized, married, and buried all Christians. They could impose certain penalties upon church members for disobedience. According to the theory of the Church, they could, in effect, close the gates of heaven to the unfaithful and condemn wrong-doers to everlasting punishment. They alone could perform the religious services upon which the salvation of the people depended. The range of this vast power was

set forth in a celebrated document published by the pope in 1302: "That there is one holy Catholic and apostolic Church we are impelled by our faith to believe and hold . . . and outside of this there is neither salvation nor remission of sins. . . . We, moreover, proclaim, declare, and pronounce that it is altogether necessary to salvation for every human being to be subject to the Roman pontiff."

In every country the clergy owned a great deal of property — lands and houses given to the Church by pious donors. They collected tithes from the people for the support of the Church. They charged certain fees for marriages, burials, and other services. Taken together, their wealth rivaled that of kings and nobles. They held courts in which many matters, such as disputes over property left by dead men, were settled. They were the teachers in schools and they wrote nearly all the books. In whole communities they were the only people who knew how to read or write; who knew anything outside the bare routine of living. They were the only class dedicated to the work of helping suffering mankind, and to them the poor and afflicted turned for aid and consolation. Because of their wealth, because of their control over the minds and hearts of people, and because of their services, the clergy were very powerful during the middle ages.

The Monks and Nuns. In the early days of Christianity many men grew weary of the troubles of the world and withdrew to solitary places to live

simply and think only of religious matters. Such persons were known as *monks* — a term derived from a Greek word meaning "solitary." Often a number of them would join in a brotherhood and build for themselves a house or *monastery* in some secluded spot.

From time to time there arose new leaders who preached a new gospel of Christian duty and collected followers about them. Among such leaders was St. Benedict, who founded the order of Benedictine monks in Italy about 529. Another was St. Francis of Assisi, who established the Franciscan order in 1210. A third was Ignatius Loyola, a Spanish soldier and priest, who planned in 1534 the Society of Jesus, the members of which are known as Jesuits.

Somewhat in the same way, women often dedicated themselves to a religious life as *nuns*. They founded convents where they lived and worked. They too had many different orders as new teachers appeared from time to time.

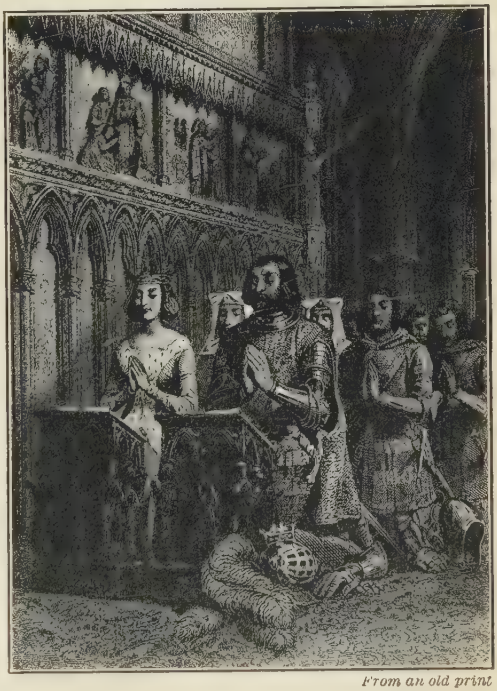
It is impossible to describe in a paragraph the work of the monks and nuns, for their labors varied according to their several purposes. All took vows of poverty and devoted themselves to helping the unfortunate. Some were missionaries to the heathen. Others spent their time laboring on their lands, copying or writing books, or making beautiful tapestries and laces. To their care we owe the preservation of most of the books that have come down to us from Greek and Roman times.

Only within the walls of the monastery or convent could those who were heartily sick of the endless feudal wars find peace. Only there could they have freedom to live lives of scholarship and helpfulness. In time, every country in Europe was dotted with monasteries and convents. The various orders grew rich with gifts made to them by pious persons.

The Laymen. All the people outside the clerical class were known as *laymen*. They were all subject to the rules and laws of the Church. All were church members, for no one was allowed to choose his own faith or to say that he would have none at all. All had to attend church and to give money to its support. No one could dispute or even question the authority of the clergy. Any one who was bold enough to deny the Catholic faith was summoned before a court and tried as a *heretic*. If he confessed that he was in error, he was received back into the Church but forced to do a heavy penance. If he refused to confess that he was wrong, he was handed over to the government to be punished.

In religion, therefore, as in other matters, the common people of the middle ages were subject to higher authorities. They did not elect the lord of the village who governed them. Neither did they elect the village priest who had the care of their souls in his charge. Great teachers of the Church, like St. Thomas Aquinas, held that the people would begin to quarrel unless bound together by some one of superior rank. They

taught that "the rule of one is more beneficial than the rule of many." At the same time, they also said that it was the duty of the ruler to consider the good of his subjects.



From an old print

ONE LAW FOR ALL CHRISTIANS

The Unity of Christendom. Perhaps the most remarkable feature of the medieval Church was its unity. All nations, all races, all sorts and conditions of people in western Europe were brought together by this one religious bond. There was one head of the Church. There was one faith. There was one language, both for the services of the Church and the learning of the clergy. That was Latin. Those who could speak Latin were equally at home with the priests of London, Paris, or Rome. There was one law of the Church for all Christians. There was one Christian ideal set before mankind. In

this respect, therefore, the Roman Catholic Church kept alive one idea of the Roman empire — a world united under one great authority.

The Church as a Check on the Government. Though the medieval clergy were friendly to kings and feudal princes, still they strongly held to their own rights and property. In this, Christianity differed from all the religions of antiquity. In Rome and Greece, the priests were servants of the government. They took orders; they did not give orders. No Roman priest in pagan days ever thought of telling the emperor his duty. The popes and clergy of the middle ages, on the contrary, often assumed the right to criticize the conduct of kings and their officers and to call them to account for their misdeeds. In this way the Church became a sort of restraint on the government, a critic of the civil officers. This was a great departure from the state of things that had lasted for centuries among the nations of antiquity. In time, as we shall see, the clergy and some of the kings had a great quarrel on this point. This quarrel ended in breaking Western Christendom apart.

Questions and Exercises

I. 1. Suppose that you had been a Roman citizen at the time of Rome's greatness, and suppose that you then knew what we now know of the causes that led to the decline and fall of Rome; what advice would you have given to your countrymen? 2. One of the great lessons that history teaches is that slavery is even worse for the masters than for the slaves; why does slav-

ery have so unfortunate an effect upon slave owners? Lincoln once said: "As I would not be a slave, so I would not be a master. That is my idea of democracy." Can you think of any other things besides holding slaves that a true believer in democracy would not do? 3. Try to imagine what life in your state would be like if the feudal system of the middle ages were still in existence. Think of yourself as a farmer living under such conditions. You would probably live in a village and go out with other farmers to work in the surrounding fields every day. How does this differ from the way in which most American farmers live to-day? Why did nearly every one live in towns or villages in feudal times? What rights and privileges do free citizens have to-day that the serfs of feudal times did not have? What duties do free citizens have that serfs did not have?

II. 1. "While the feudal lords were building up their power, the Church was slowly uniting them in certain ways" (p. 126). Explain this statement and tell in what ways the Church united the people living in western Europe. 2. Give as many reasons as you can explaining why the clergy had so much power in the middle ages. 3. What are the differences in the meanings of the following words: *bishops*, *priests*, *monks*, and *nuns; monasteries* and *convents; clergy* and *laymen?* 4. In western Europe during the middle ages there were many governments and many languages, but only one religion; how does this condition contrast with the condition of our country to-day? 5. What is meant by the word *Christendom?* (Think of other words that have the same ending, such as *kingdom*, *earldom*, *dukedom*.) Though all the nations of Europe to-day, except Turkey, are Christian nations, could we properly speak of Europe as Christendom? Give reasons for your answer.

Geographical Studies

I. 1. Why can the Roman empire be shown on a one-page map while medieval Europe (a much smaller territory) requires

a two-page map? 2. On p. 112 you are asked to compare the map of the Roman empire (p. 53) with the map of medieval Europe facing p. 116. Compare it also with the map of modern Europe facing p. 436. Name the chief medieval and modern countries that are included in, or that include, the following provinces of the Roman empire: Gaul, Dacia, Illyricum, Italy, Thrace. 3. On p. 115 St. Jerome is quoted as complaining of the invasion of Rome by various barbarous tribes. Would you expect to be able to locate all these tribes on any one map?

Suggestions for Reading

Bénezét, L. P. — *The Story of the Map of Europe*, ii–vi; Scott Foresman.

Best, S. M. — *The Nations of Western Europe;* Macmillan.

Hall, Hammond — *The Boy's Book of Chivalry*, i–ix; Partridge.

O'Neill, Elizabeth — *The Story of the World*, xvi–xx; Putnam.

Tappan, Eva M. — *When Knights Were Bold*, i–ix; Houghton Mifflin.

Van Loon — *The Story of Mankind* (*School edition*), xxvi–xxxviii.

CHAPTER VI

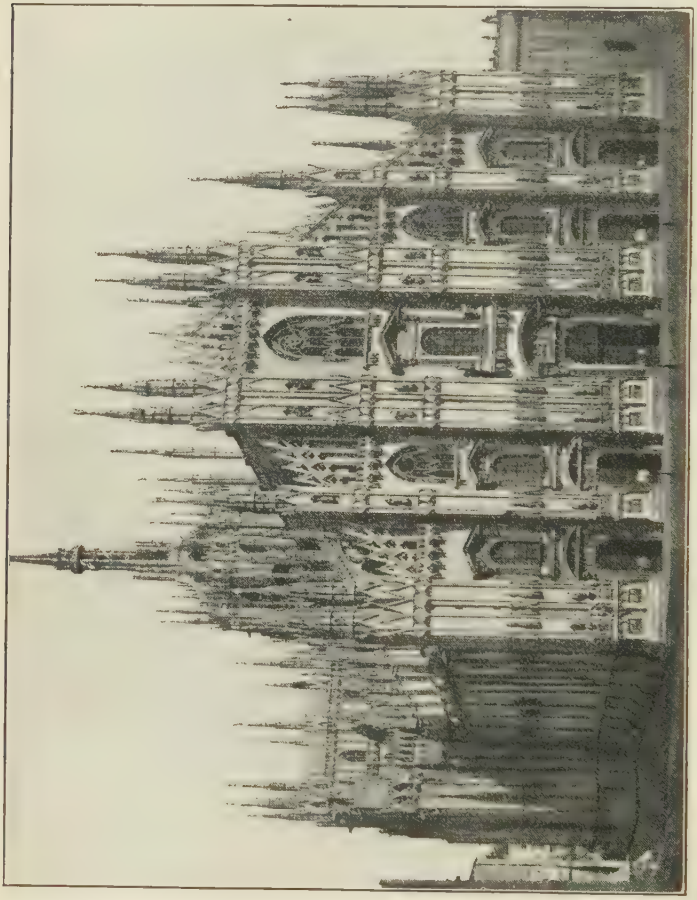
THE ARTS AND TOWN LIFE IN THE MIDDLE AGES

More than a thousand years lay between the sack of Rome by Alaric in 410 and the discovery of America by Columbus. During a large part of this time, all Europe was in the confusion that followed the barbarian destruction of the Roman empire. Mankind was busy with migrations, wars, feuds, and the bare struggle for existence. In the midst of this chaos, the Catholic Church offered unity, order, and peace. The priests and others in the service of the Church found the means or the leisure for cultivating the finer things of the human spirit. In contrast to the varied interests of Greece and Rome, there was in the middle ages one supreme interest — the Christian religion as interpreted by the Catholic Church. All art, all architecture, all literature, all learning, bore the stamp of religion. Everything was viewed from the standpoint of the Catholic Christian faith. That is the striking feature of the middle ages.

Architecture, Art, and Learning

Medieval Architecture. As the Greeks devoted their noblest energies to erecting temples, so the people of

the middle ages devoted theirs to building beautiful churches. Christian congregations, as soon as their



The Cathedral at Milan

worship became lawful, moved into the temples of the Greeks and Romans after tearing down the statues

of the old gods and making alterations. When they began to build for themselves in western Europe, they frequently adopted Roman models; and the style of many early Christian churches is for that reason called *Romanesque*. Such structures were marked by massive walls and low roofs. They were heavy and lacking in grace.

In the course of time, architects devised a new style known as *Gothic*. They learned how to build high, thin walls, supported by buttresses on the outside. Their work thus became more flexible. They could construct lofty, vaulted roofs and towering spires that pointed heavenward. Instead of narrow slits for windows, they could make great openings and fill them with delicate traceries of stone, lead, and stained glass. Therefore we see great differences in the Gothic style. Some cathedrals were massive, severe, and stately. Others were slender and ornate, like fine lace work.

In religious buildings, architects had the greatest opportunities for creative work, because the middle ages lavished money mainly upon beautiful churches. Yet there was other work to do. There were splendid castles to be built for feudal lords. Occasionally, also, they were called upon to build town houses for merchant princes. Wonderful examples of this form of architecture are to be found in Venice and Florence. Sometimes they were employed by unions, or *gilds*, of merchants, like the clothiers or goldsmiths, to erect

a *gild hall* in which the members could hold their meetings. There were some public buildings, too, like town halls and royal palaces. In planning them the medieval architect had a chance to make new designs. Whether the noblest work of the middle

St. Mark's, in Venice (Showing Byzantine Architecture)

ages was better than that of the Greeks, each one can judge for himself by comparing a Gothic cathedral with a Greek temple.

Art. In painting, as well as in architecture, the artists of the middle ages worked out many new and interesting ideas. This is true, even though in later

times they often copied the gorgeous colors, the gold and glitter, that came into Italy from Constantinople. In most cases they chose for their subjects Biblical characters and scenes. They took infinite pains in portraying their ideas of the Madonna, of Christ, and of interesting events in the growth of the Church.

For color, form, and beauty, their work stands out among the splendid artistic achievements of all times. Moreover, there were so many painters of high grade and they painted so many pictures that it is hardly just to mention any of them without giving a long list. Giotto (1276–1337) is distinguished as the founder of the Florentine school of painters. Michael Angelo (1475–1564) is famous as the decorator of the Sistine Chapel in Rome, which may yet be seen in its fading, but still wonderful, splendor. Even in Angelo's time, the painting was mainly religious; but more and more the artists were painting *secular*, or non-religious, scenes and portraits of eminent laymen.

Literature. In literature, as in art and architecture, religion stood first. For many a century after the decline of Rome, there were no great poets and dramatists. The educated people, nearly all of whom were priests, thought chiefly of religious subjects. They wrote lives of the saints and martyrs whose labors and sacrifices had helped to spread the gospel throughout the world. They compiled great works on the theories of religion and on the problems of Christian conduct. They composed long books on the Bible. They worked

out all sorts of theories as to the nature of angels and the doings of Satan. Even when they wrote on business matters, such as money-lending and selling goods, they looked at the subject from the religious point of view. This led them to treat fully "just prices" for goods and "the sin of usury," or high interest rates.

When at length there appeared a great poet, the Italian Dante (1265–1321), his theme was still religious. Dante's greatest work was his *Divine Comedy*, in which he drew vivid pictures of hell, purgatory, and heaven. This was at once hailed as a masterpiece. It is still read to-day. It was unique because it was written in the language of the people, Italian, instead of Latin, the language of the learned. Few European poets, certainly no medieval writers, are now more widely studied in the United States than is Dante. Two great translations have been made by American scholars, one of them by the poet Henry Wadsworth Longfellow, who organized the first Dante society in America.

Next in bulk to works on religion and the lives of saints stood histories and chronicles. Of these every European country produced a great quantity during the middle ages. Almost every monastery kept a *chronicle* or record of events by years; from time to time some monk would undertake to compile a story of mankind from Adam to his own day. Most of these medieval historical works are queer mixtures of truth

and fiction. They tell of wars, of the work of the clergy, of the fortunes of kings and queens, of gifts to churches, and of the adventures of mythical heroes.

Take, for example, the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*. It purports to be a history by years from about the birth of Christ to the twelfth century, telling especially about England. It was written by many men, partly from rumor, partly from books, and partly from actual knowledge. Most of it is devoted to wars among the Anglo-Saxons and to the affairs of the Christian Church in England. Some years the chronicler can find nothing important to write down, so he enters the year and leaves a blank space. In 671, he can only say: "This year was a great destruction among birds"; but this at least is a change from tales of war and piracy. In 734, we are told: "This year the moon was as if it had been sprinkled with blood." In 793, some one wrote: "Fiery dragons were seen flying in the air."

Other historical works were ballads reciting the brave deeds of kings. These were often sung at court to please the monarch who was praised by the bard. In none of them do we get a clear and full picture of all classes or of the life of the masses. It is mainly from laws, account books, tax records, and similar documents that we are able to form a correct idea of how the people of the middle ages lived in their towns and villages. Medieval history did not deal with the doings of the common people; nor was it written for their benefit.

In addition to religious and historical works, there was some writing about the government of mankind. The poet Dante, though his fame rests almost entirely upon his poetry, was an able writer on politics. He believed that peace was necessary to draw out the noblest side of human beings; so he advocated forming an empire again, in some respects like that of old Rome. At least he thought there should be one high imperial ruler who would restrain robbers and warriors and permit the people to live and work in comfort. In Dante's time there also lived another noted political writer, Marsiglio of Padua. This author startled the educated classes by saying (1) that the purpose of government was "the good of the people"; (2) that the whole body of the citizens "or the better part of them" should be the supreme law-makers; and (3) that even popes should be elected by the people. Indeed, there were very few themes that were not touched upon by medieval writers in one form or another.

Schools and Universities. It was a long time after the fall of Rome before there appeared in Europe schools, colleges, and universities with regular teachers, students, and courses of study. Practically all the teaching that went on during the dark days of the barbarian invasions was the work of individual priests and missionaries. They instructed a few followers in order to spread the knowledge of Christianity.

The first schools that deserve the name seem to have been founded by wealthy bishops at their cathedrals.

The main purpose of such a school was to prepare for the priesthood; but sometimes it was attended by young princes who wished to master the art of reading and writing. King Alfred (below, p. 172), we are told by a monk of his time, set a good example; he sent his youngest son to a school to learn "the liberal arts before the manly arts, namely, hunting and such pursuits as befit a gentleman." By the year 1500 Europe had scores of cathedral schools. Good bishops regarded it as both a duty and an honor to give money to them.

To these institutions the sons of peasants and merchants came to prepare for the priesthood. That was the one career through which they could rise out of their classes into the higher ranks. When a serf became a priest he was freed from servitude. Feudal lords often became angry at losing their bondmen, but the bishops paid little heed. They were always glad to welcome bright boys from the peasantry because the Church had need of able and vigorous men to carry on its varied work.

As the towns grew in size, rich merchants founded grammar schools to teach reading, writing, and arithmetic. These institutions were open to boys preparing for business as well as to those who planned to enter the ministry.

With the passing years, schools for more advanced studies were also established. The college or university arose in the middle ages somewhat in this fashion. It was the practice of missionaries and learned men to

go about teaching, stopping in one town after another to instruct any who cared to listen. One taught the Old Testament, another grammar, and a third mathematics. In a very natural way, teachers of different subjects began to gather at certain centers, like Paris or Oxford. This was a great saving of time for students and masters, because all subjects could be studied at one place.

The next step was easily taken. The teachers and students of a given city formed a society or union or gild known in Latin as a *collegium* or *universitas*. When that was once done, it was a simple matter to arrange a regular course of study through which any pupil had to pass in order to become a master himself. Indeed, one became " a master of arts " as one became a master mason, except that an apprenticeship was served in learning rather than in stone cutting.

At first there were no splendid buildings. Each teacher would rent or find a vacant room and lecture there. The chief subjects of study were Latin, grammar, arithmetic, and the writings of the famous Greek philosopher, Aristotle (p. 95). There were no printed books for the students. The teacher simply read his lectures slowly while the pupils laboriously copied his sayings word for word. Nothing contrary to the teachings of the Church was allowed. Great pains were taken to show that there was nothing in the writings of the pagan Aristotle that was contrary to the Bible or Christianity. Of the vast range of subjects

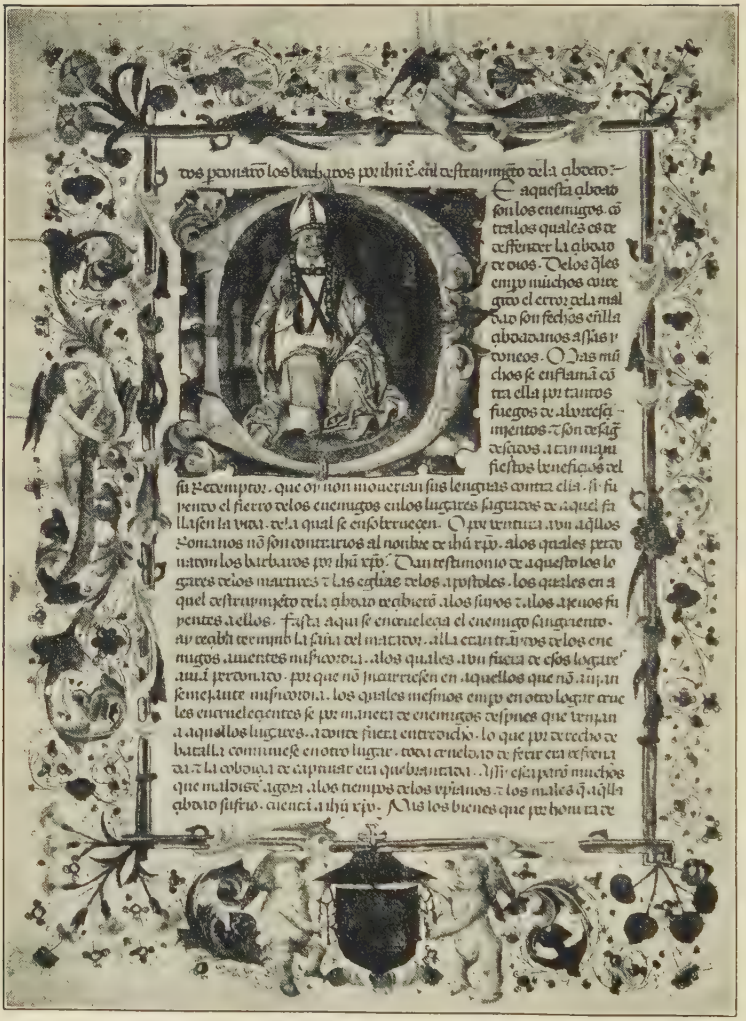
like chemistry, botany, physiology, geography, and history, very little was said in the medieval universities.

The Revival of Ancient Learning. About the year 1400 there opened a new period in the history of learning. The learning of the early middle ages, as we have seen, had nearly all been in the Latin language. Books were written in it; it was the tongue used in the classrooms all over western Europe. Some of the Greek writings were in constant use, but in Latin translations. Greek literature as a whole and most of the literature of the Romans had been allowed to lie buried in the dust of old buildings. The Greek language itself was not understood by students in western Europe. Many of the ancient writings, the work of philosophers who lived many years before Christ, were not approved by Christian teachers because of their pagan teachings.

Slowly this changed. The learning of the Greeks and Romans was made to live again. In the year 1396, a famous bishop went from Constantinople to Florence and began to teach the Greek language and literature. Pupils flocked to him; soon some ventured to go to Constantinople itself to study.

When that city fell into the hands of the Turks in 1453, Greek scholars fled in crowds to Italy, taking their precious books with them. The merchants of Venice and Florence were proud to carry cargoes of manuscripts along with their bales of silks and spices from the Far East.

Soon the Italian cities were the homes of "a new



Metropolitan Museum

PAGE OF A MEDIEVAL BOOK MADE BY HAND

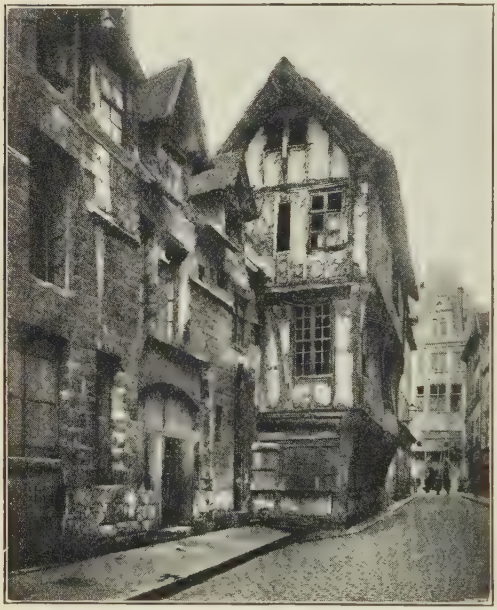
learning." About the same time interest in the writings of the ancient Romans was awakened. The books and papers of Caesar, Cicero, and Tacitus were rescued from the dust where they had long been buried, and spread far and wide in many editions.

Thus a new world of ideas and historical events was opened to students everywhere. People began to care for ancient, or pagan, literature as well as for Christian writings. Scholars soon read the poems of Vergil as well as the Psalms of the Old Testament and the Sermon on the Mount. The stately orations of Cicero found a place by the side of the lives of early Christian saints and martyrs.

The Invention of Printing. While the students of Europe were in a furor about Greek and Roman writings, some patient workmen invented movable type and the printing press. Before that time every book had to be made laboriously by copyists with quill or brush. The process was slow and expensive. Innumerable errors crept in as one copy was made from another. With movable type, any book could be put into type almost as quickly as the old copyist could write it down. Once in type and on the press, any number of copies could easily be printed.

Just who it was that deserves the honor of inventing printing we know not. Gutenberg and Faust in Germany and Coster in Holland are among those to whom the credit has been given. As in the case of most inventions, the idea was in the air and many men were at

work on it. We do know, however, that a Bible was printed at Mainz, Germany, in 1456. That year may well be taken as opening the age of the printing press.



Old Houses in Rouen (France)

Within fifty years printing presses were set up in most of the leading cities, and it was estimated that eight million volumes had been printed. Books became cheap. Interest in reading spread steadily among the people. Printers were eager to publish books on any subject that might find a sale. Books on travel, on law, on Greek and Roman literature, on farm management, on geography, and on medicine began to flow from the presses. Learning was no longer confined to the clergy nor almost solely to religious subjects. After a while books were made even for children.

Town Life in the Middle Ages

Growth of Towns. It was mainly in the towns that the art and learning of the middle ages flourished. Many a Roman city had lived on after the fall of the empire, and in the course of time new centers of trade also had arisen all over western Europe. Sometimes the town was under the protection of a powerful feudal lord or even of a king. Sometimes it was under the rule of a bishop or archbishop. Again it happened that the city and its inhabitants were wholly independent. In most cases, the people built a wall about their city and were ready to defend it against attack.

In England, the towns of London, York, Lincoln, Winchester, and Bristol were leading centers of trade as early as the fourteenth century. In Germany, there were many wholly independent towns, or *free cities*, among them Cologne and Hamburg. For mutual aid, a score or more of them formed a union known as the *Hanseatic League*.

Such trading cities grew more rapidly and easily in Italy than elsewhere. Because of their situation between the East and the West, the Italians early became the leading merchants of Europe. From India and China they brought spices, precious stones, and rich fabrics. They carried these goods by land or water to the trading towns of Spain, France, Germany, and England. On the east coast rose Venice, "the

queen of the Adriatic," built upon a group of small islands for protection against invaders; Venice in time became rich and powerful. On the west coast there flourished a rival in Genoa, the nursery of hardy sailors, and the birthplace of Columbus. Pisa, Florence,

Trading Centers in the Middle Ages

and Milan were also centers of commerce, art, and literature.

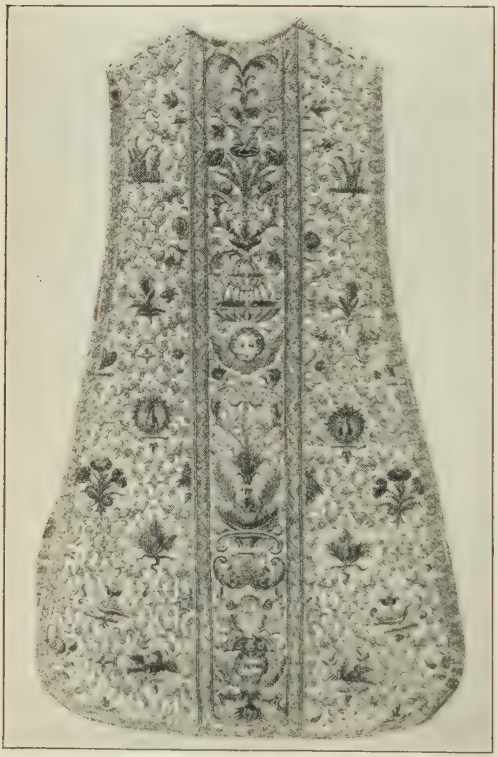
The Merchants. It was in the towns that there grew up the class of merchants and business men who were in time to have more wealth and influence than the feudal lords. As trade increased, the merchants

amassed great sums of money. They then began to take an interest in many things outside of business. They vied with bishops, popes, and princes in encouraging art. They gave money to painters and sculptors and thus enabled them to devote all their time to their work. Merchants also sent their sons to college. They bought books and the beautiful manuscripts made by monks. They founded schools and libraries. They lent money to hard-pressed kings and sometimes became their advisers

The Merchant Gilds. The power of the merchants was increased by their unions. In each town, they formed a society or gild (p. 140). Often it happened that the gild members were the only voters in the town; in that case, they managed the town government. The gild was both a business and a charitable society. It laid down rules about the price and quality of goods and it aided its sick and unfortunate members. No one could carry on business in the town without its consent. No new shops could be opened without its approval.

The Artisans. The towns were also the homes of the artisans — weavers, smiths, and the like — who made the goods which the merchants bought and sold. Though business had fallen off in the days of Rome's decline, the arts of manufacture were by no means lost. With the spread of Christianity, encouragement was given to craftsmen of every kind. The building of churches, cathedrals, and monasteries called

for great skill. The gorgeous robes of the priests and bishops and the decorations of the churches show how clever were the men and women who made them.



Metropolitan Museum

A Gorgeous Clerical Robe

Many of the monks spent all their time making locks, artistic iron work, or wood carvings.

Moreover, the Christian Church promoted honest work by teaching the dignity of labor. The Greeks and the Romans had despised the artisan, as we have seen. "All gains made by hired laborers," wrote Cicero, "are dishonorable and base." Christianity, on the other hand, exalted the workman. "To labor is to pray," taught the Church. Since they were favored by the Church and given markets for their wares by the merchants, craftsmen of

all kinds flourished. As time passed, they became very numerous. This is shown by the names of people — Smiths, Fullers, Weavers, Dyers, Carpenters, Taylors, and Potters.

As soon as there were several artisans in a medieval town, they organized as the merchants did. Their society was known as a *craft gild*. Each trade had its gild, which fixed the wages of workmen and made sure that good materials were used in all articles. In addition to this the gild took care of sick and disabled gildsmen and their families.

The Rise of Democracy in Towns. In the beginning, the town was often nothing more than an overgrown country village which belonged to the lord or the king. Its residents were serfs bound to render services to their overlord just like the peasants. Its position on a sea, a river, or highway crossing, however, favored the rise of trade and industry. In the course of time, the townsmen came to demand certain rights of their own. These were the easier to win as the rich men of the town had money to give in exchange for the favors they asked.

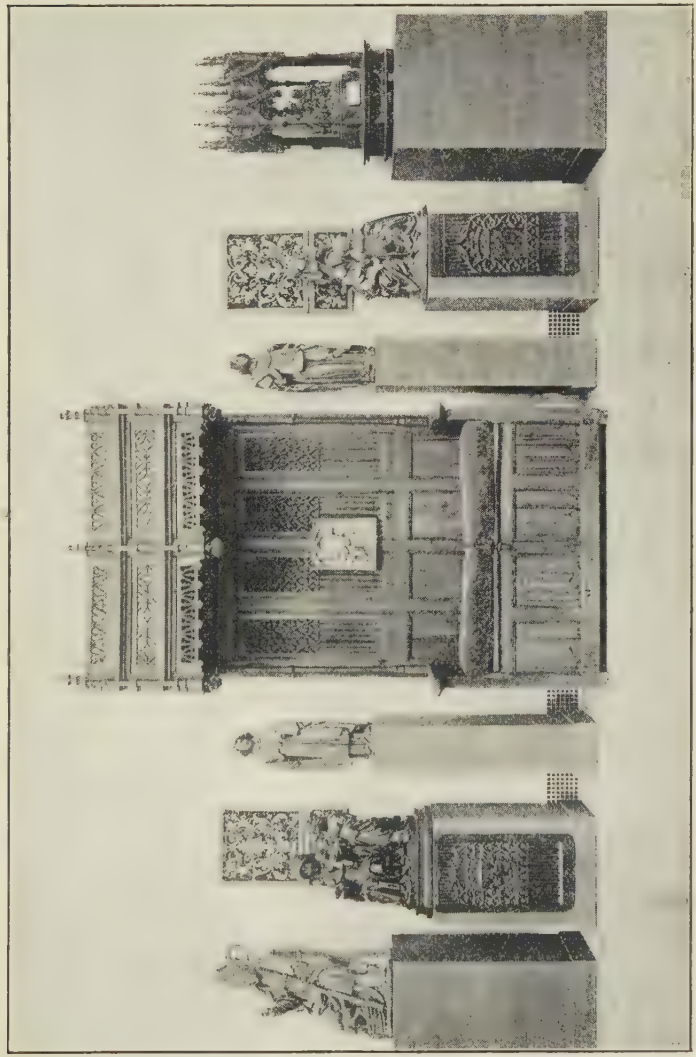
When the townsmen got their rights they had them set forth in a *charter*. The word "charter" itself comes from the Latin word *charta*, meaning a sheet of paper. The charter of a town was a document recording the rights granted to the inhabitants by the overlord. As a rule, the townsmen had to pay for the privileges granted to them.

These charters varied from place to place. In general, they included the right of the townsmen (1) to elect a mayor and aldermen; (2) to hold courts for the trial of offenders against the law; (3) to hold town meetings; (4) to collect their own taxes; and (5) to be free from the interference of the lord's steward and bailiff. Here was the germ of self-government and democracy. Some of the men, at least, could vote and have a voice in making laws and laying taxes. Thus some of our modern notions of democracy already existed in the middle ages.

Strange to say, the kings actually favored the rise of self-governing towns. They were glad to have help against powerful nobles. So they were ready to grant charters to townsmen and enlist them on the royal side in any dispute with the feudal lords.

Progress in the Towns. The towns were the centers of new ideas and new enterprises, as well as the homes of budding democracies. The country, on the other hand, did not change much from century to century. Work went on there in the same way and with the same tools. Peasants did not travel or read. If one of them wanted to do something other than farm work, it was to the town that he went. The peasant's lord also clung fast to old-fashioned ways. He looked after his estate and waged wars as his father had done before him. He sometimes bought rugs or pictures, but he seldom changed his ideas or his habits.

The merchant of the towns was the "progressive"



Metropolitan Museum

EXAMPLES OF MEDIEVAL ART

element in every country. He had to read and understand arithmetic in order to do business. He traveled and saw strange parts of the world. He was interested in new goods, new inventions, and new markets. He was always eager to find other ways of making money. The nobleman wanted to fight the Turks because they were not Christians. The merchant was ready to do business with Turks, Arabs, Hindus, or Chinese — if it was profitable.

Life in the city was more exciting than life in the country villages. To the city came merchants and travelers from distant lands, bringing stories of strange peoples along with their goods to sell. In the streets and market places of the towns, the people heard of new kinds of articles and new industries. So the notions of change, of invention, and of adventure stirred the minds of the townsmen. Slowly the world was getting ready for the modern age of discovery and business enterprise.

Questions and Problems

I. 1. Compare the Gothic and Byzantine cathedrals pictured on p. 138 and p. 140. Note the differences in the construction of the roof, the walls, the windows. Point out the *buttresses* on the Gothic structure. Which is to your mind the more fitting for a cathedral: a spire or a dome? Also study the church buildings that you are familiar with and see how many evidences of Romanesque architecture you can find (p. 139). 2. Compare the picture of the castle on p. 124 with that of the Gothic cathedral. What are the important differences? 3. Dante's *Divine*

Comedy was one of the first great books written in a modern language; how long after the fall of Rome did Dante live? What language had been used by writers during all those years? 4. What is meant by a "chronicle"? By a "ballad"? 5. Why did Marsiglio's theories of government "startle the educated classes" of his time? How do they compare with the views of government that are generally held to-day? 6. The first five hundred years of the middle ages are sometimes known as the "Dark Ages"; from a study of the text under the heading, "Schools and Universities," what reasons can you give for the use of the term "Dark Ages"? What kind of "darkness" is referred to? 7. Aside from the Bible, the principal writings studied in the schools of the middle ages were those of Aristotle, and his influence on the thinking of educated people was practically supreme up to the time of the Revival of Learning, about 1400. How long before this time had Aristotle lived? 8. How did the colleges and universities of the later middle ages differ from the colleges and universities of to-day? 9. What is meant by the Revival of Learning? 10. Why is the date 1453 considered an important "key date" in history? 11. The invention of printing is recognized as one of the most important events in human history; give as many reasons as you can that will explain its importance. Some one has compared the invention of writing to opening a door just a little so that "a mere line of light" comes "through the chink into a darkened room." "At last came a time . . . when the door, at the push of the printer, began to open more widely. Knowledge flared up, and as it flared it ceased to be the privilege of a favored minority." Explain what this means.

II. 1. Why were most of the cities of medieval Europe surrounded by walls? What effect would this have upon the growth of the cities? Upon the way in which the people would have to live? Upon the health of the people? 2. What was meant in the middle ages by a "free city"? 3. Printing, as we have

seen, did something to break down the power of the clergy; in what way did the development of trade and the rise of commercial cities help to break down the power of the feudal lords? 4. What is meant by a "gild"? What associations or organizations to-day have purposes similar to those of the "merchant gilds" of the middle ages? 5. What is the difference between a "merchant" and an "artisan"? Between an "artisan" and an "artist"? Name some of the important artisan trades of to-day. Why did the artisan trades develop more during the middle ages than in ancient times? What organizations of to-day correspond to the "craft gilds"? 6. What is meant by a "charter"? American cities are usually governed under charters; find out by what authorities these charters are granted. How does this differ from the way in which medieval charters were granted? 7. What is meant by the statement that the government of the medieval cities was "the germ of self-government and democracy"? 8. How did life in the country villages in the middle ages differ from life in the large towns and cities? What are some of the important differences to-day in our country between country life and city life?

Suggestions for Reading

Church, A. J. — *The Crusaders;* Macmillan.
O'Neill — *The Story of the World*, xxv.
Tappan — *Heroes of the Middle Ages*, xxiii–xxvi.
When Knights Were Bold, x–xv.
Van Loon — *The Story of Mankind* (*School edition*), xxxviii–xli.

CHAPTER VII

THE RISE OF NATIONS

The King's Part in History. In the middle ages — with the warlike lords and princes, the powerful Church, and the rival towns — there was growing up a new force: the strength of kings. It was the king who finally put a stop to much of the local fighting that broke out after the fall of the Roman empire. It was the king who brought peace again to large sections of Europe and bridged the gap between the empire of Rome and the modern world.

In the beginning of his career, the king was merely a powerful chieftain. Perhaps he was the head of a conquering tribe or a baron more skilled in fighting than any of his fellow barons. At all events, his power was at first in his sword; later, after the invention of gunpowder in the fourteenth century, in his guns and cannon. He added to his territories as he conquered one feudal prince after another and broke down the walls of their castles with cannon balls.

When a king had conquered a large area, he did a number of things that counted for progress. He kept peace among his subjects, which favored both agriculture and trade. He coined money and made it

circulate within his realm, thus aiding the merchants. In this way, he made it possible for them to trade all over his kingdom. He chartered towns. As we have seen, this favored the growth of city democracies. He battered down the castle walls of robber barons perched upon the crags. He thus made the highways open and safe for travelers and traders. He amassed a large treasury and so had the money to fit out ships for exploration. It must not be forgotten that all the early explorers who unveiled the New World had the aid of kings.

The king set up a school at his court and encouraged scholars to write books and collect maps and records. He built highways that were useful for commerce as well as for his armies. He aided Christian missionaries, thereby helping in the spread of Christianity. As we shall see, more than one king quarreled with the pope at Rome, and so took the lead in bringing about the Protestant Reformation. One need not be blind to the cruelties of kings in order to see what a large part they played in making the modern world.

It was around the kings that the nations of western Europe grew into strength and unity. First there was the unity brought about by the sword. Then came unity in language, literature, education, law, the administration of justice, the monetary system, commerce, and the strong central government. The medieval dream of one European empire disappeared before national patriotism. Even the idea of one

church was later cast aside, as some nations definitely rejected the supremacy of the pope. All this made for more variety and many separate countries. At the same time, it led to terrible wars among nations, such as the Hundred Years' War between England and France ending in 1453, and the Thirty Years' War — a general European conflict that closed in 1648.

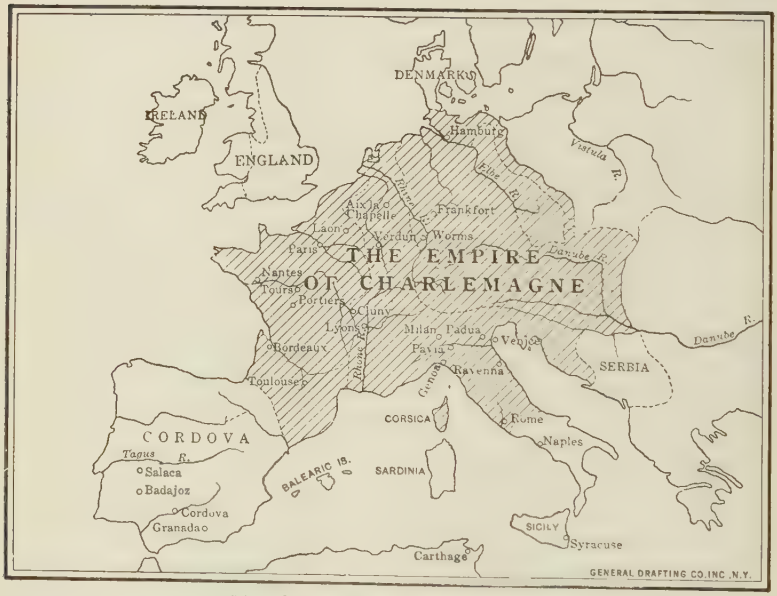
The Rise and Growth of France

The Frankish Kingdom. France was the first of the nations to appear. It derived its name from a band of Frankish warriors who broke through the northern border of the Roman province of Gaul about the middle of the third century. Long afterward there arose among them a leader called Clovis, who began, in 486, the conquest of Gaul. At his death some twenty-five years later, the work had been finished; nearly all the territory now embraced in modern France had been subdued and united under his sword. In the meantime he had been converted to Christianity (see above, p. 126), so that France was among the first Christian kingdoms of the world. For nearly two hundred years the descendants of Clovis reigned in France. Then the family grew weak and indolent and was thrust aside by one more powerful.

The Carolingians. The new family, known as Carolingians, had been growing in wealth and power for a long time; it counted among its members warriors of skill and bravery. Each of the new line of kings

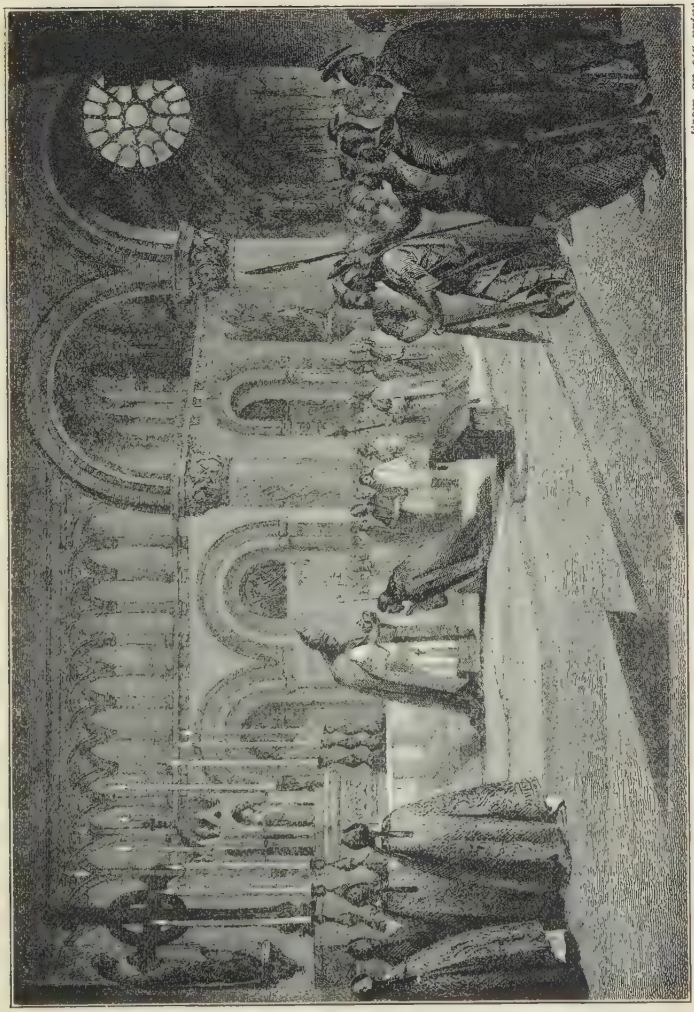
was approved by the pope and thus had religious sanction for his authority. Those who had once reigned by virtue of the sword now ruled "by the grace of God."

The most famous of the line was Charlemagne, or Charles the Great, who reigned from 768 to 814. He



The Empire of Charlemagne

extended his realm to include large portions of Germany and Italy as well as France. He was a fierce warrior when fighting his neighbors; at the same time he was a friend to peace within his own dominions. He founded schools, aided in the conversion of the heathen to the east of his realm, built magnificent palaces,



From an old print

CHARLEMAGNE CROWNED AT ROME

and took pride in erecting beautiful churches. He was so deeply interested in learning that he tried to teach himself how to write after he became a man; he kept tablets under his pillow so that he could practice whenever he had a little time to spare. Unhappily he began too late in life and could not master the art. The monks at his court, however, who could write, have left exciting stories of his valor and his deeds.

The Holy Roman Empire. In the year 800 a wonderful thing happened in the life of Charlemagne. He was then on a visit to Rome, and on Christmas Day attended services at the great church of St. Peter's. While Charlemagne was kneeling before the altar, the pope, Leo III, placed a crown upon his head and hailed him as "Emperor of the Romans." By this act the king of the Franks was declared to be the successor of the great Roman emperors. In the streets of the Eternal City, where once the masses had cheered the victorious Caesar, the populace now did homage to a new master, who bore the grand old title of "Augustus."

In this way there was established what was known as the *Holy Roman Empire*, which was to last until 1806. It had a stormy life. Since it was the pope who first placed the crown on Charlemagne's head, later popes claimed the right to decide who should wear it. Charlemagne's empire broke up a few years after his death, but the struggle among princes to secure the imperial crown went on for nearly a thousand years. There were also endless disputes between popes and emperors

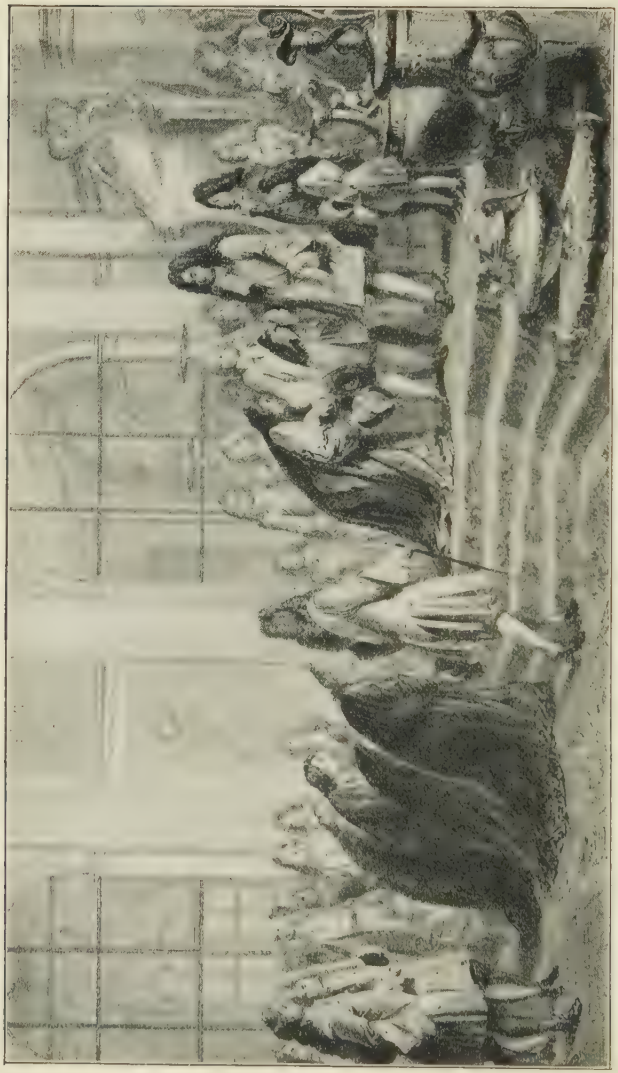
over the question as to whether the religious or the imperial power was supreme.

France under the Capetians. Charles the Great's family could not keep order in France, so that task passed to other hands. This time it was undertaken by Hugh Capet, a masterful baron who, from his seat

France in the Fifteenth Century

at Paris, began to conquer dukes and counts all about him. Under the Capetian family France was again united. Branches of the family ruled in France, except for a short time, until the nineteenth century.

The French barons strove with might and main to keep their independence; but year by year, with



From an old print

LOUIS XIV AND HIS COURTIERS

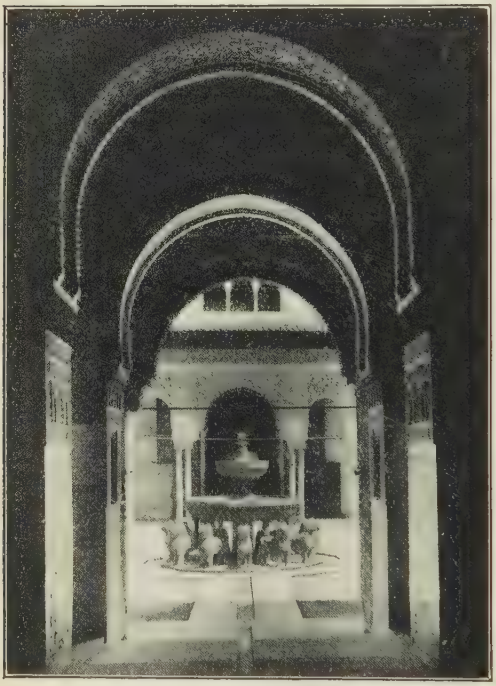
occasional setbacks, the power of the king increased. At length Louis XIV (1643–1715) could boast that he alone possessed all powers of government. Sons of barons who had once threatened kings with the sword were now glad to hold a napkin for a king as he sat at dinner. From time to time the French kings called *parliaments* composed of the clergy, the nobility, and the commoners. In 1614 even that restraint on the king was set aside. The king was absolute master, but the union of France was secured.

The Rise of Spain

Goths and Arabs in Spain. Even its fortunate position below the Pyrenees Mountains did not save the Spanish peninsula from the ravages of the barbarian invasions. In 418 a German tribe of West Goths burst into Spain and established a kingdom there. For nearly three hundred years, the West Goths held their own against all enemies. Then in 711 they were utterly defeated by a great army of Arabs, or Moors, from Africa. The Moors were the followers of a zealous religious leader, Mohammed (died 632 A.D.). They were bent on conquering all Christendom.

For seven hundred years the Moors maintained themselves in Spain. They built beautiful palaces and mosques, many of which still lend a peculiar charm to Spanish architecture. They brought with them the learning of the East. Above all they prized the study of natural science.

The Formation of Modern Spain. The presence of the Mohammedans in Spain was a source of distress to the kings of France. Charlemagne set about the task of winning the country back to Christianity. By heroic efforts he was able to wrest a part of the land from the Moors and gain a foothold beyond the Pyrenees.



© Keystone View Co., Inc.

COURT OF THE LIONS, ALHAMBRA (SPAIN)

Thereafter a few Christian princes in Spain, who survived the Moorish conquest, were able to throw off Moorish rule. So independent kingdoms appeared here and there in the north. Among these early kingdoms were Castile, Leon, Aragon, and Navarre.

Finally these Christian realms were united under Ferdinand of Aragon and Isabella of Castile, who were married in 1469. By this time all of Spain had been re-

covered from the Moors, except the kingdom of Granada in the far south. In 1492, the year that Columbus sailed on his fateful voyage, the Moors were driven from their last foothold in Spain. All Spain came under the rule of Ferdinand and Isabella. To the west, however, the little kingdom of Portugal was able to keep its independence for a long time. Spain, united and peaceful at home, soon launched upon a new career. It led in exploring and conquering the New World.

The Making of the English Nation

The Coming of the Anglo-Saxons. When the barbarians were at the gates of Rome in 410, messengers were sent post haste to recall the Roman army from the distant province of Britain. That far country, which Caesar had visited and his successors had conquered, was now to fall a victim to other foes.

The newcomers were Jutes, Angles, and Saxons — Germanic warriors, who came from their homes in and near what is now the Danish peninsula. "Foes they are, fierce beyond other foes, and cunning as they are fierce," wrote a Roman poet; "the sea is their school, war and storm their friend; they are sea wolves that live on the pillage of the world." Angles and Saxons were, in 449 A.D., invited by the Britons to aid them against the still more savage Picts and Scots that came down from the north.

Before many years had passed, the English, as we may now call the various tribesmen, turned against

their allies. They began the conquest of Britain for themselves. For a century or more the terrible contest went on. Wealthy Romans fled with their gold and silver or buried the treasure in the earth. One after another, the old Roman towns fell into the hands of the invaders. Christian churches were not spared the torch. Even the priests were slain at the altars. By the year 557, all southern and eastern Britain was subdued by the English, who had come in many bands under as many different war lords.

Early English Unity. Yet the island was not to find peace. The conquerors turned against one another. For two and a half centuries English chieftains waged a deadly contest among themselves for supremacy. At length, in 828, one of them, Egbert of Wessex, brought all the English under his banner. In the meantime, Christian missionaries had been active and had converted the English to their faith. Churches and monasteries had risen all over the land, and monks were busy with their quills writing down laws and chronicles.

Alfred the Great and the Danish Conquest. Unity had hardly been won before a fresh danger appeared. Bands of fierce warriors from Scandinavia, the Danes, swept down upon the English coasts in frightful array, burning and plundering. In a bitter struggle with them, Alfred, a grandson of King Egbert, was to win the love of his people and the title of "the Great." Coming to the throne in 871, he found his whole realm

in peril. By the most heroic efforts he saved a large part of it from the conquerors; but all the northeastern part of England was wrested from him.

In the realm that remained Alfred ruled with wisdom and justice. He won for himself a place in history as one of the noblest English sovereigns. He was a brave warrior and knew how to lead an army in self-defense. He was a wise lawgiver. He compiled the laws of England, taking, as he said, "those which seemed rightest to me." He was deeply interested in education. He had a school at his court, and wished that every freeborn boy should "abide at his book until he can well understand English writing." Alfred was also a generous friend of the Church.

EGBERT'S KINGDOM

He loved the English tongue and himself translated

into it many works written in the Latin language. Not content with making mere translations, Alfred added many passages of his own. He wrote down his ideas of wise and just government and made clear his hatred for the cruelty and tyranny of Roman emperors. Day and night, one of his friends said, Alfred labored to correct injustice done to his subjects, " for in that whole kingdom the poor had no helpers, or few, save the king himself." At his death, in 901, Alfred had made the beginnings of English literature and had set an example of a king who wished to be " a father to his people."

The Norman Conquest of England. About a hundred years after Alfred's death, all England was conquered by Danish warriors. One of their leaders, however, King Canute, tried to rule as well as Alfred had done. After he had made certain of his grip upon England, he paid a visit to Rome. There he vowed, he says, " to rule justly and piously my realm and subjects." After his death, wars filled the land again; and, in 1066, another invader appeared in the Channel.

This new soldier of fortune was William, the Duke of Normandy, from northern France. He was the descendant of a piratic Norse chieftain who had raided the coasts of France and then settled down there as a vassal of the French king. William himself was a born fighter of great strength and dreadful cruelty. " So stark and fierce was he," wrote a chronicler of his time, " that

none dared to resist his will." None was strong enough to bend his bow or wield his heavy battle-ax.

As he looked about for more land and booty, William had fixed upon England. At the battle of Hastings, in 1066, he defeated and killed the English king, Harold, and seized his realm. After a little while he extended his stern rule to the borders of Wales and Scotland. He divided the land among his warriors, who became the landlords of England. But he was careful to keep all the nobles well in hand, so that none could set himself up as king or defy the royal power.

England Under William the Conqueror

Under the Norman kings, England became a united and powerful country. The king kept order in the land; peasants and merchants could live and work in peace. An old monkish chronicler, writing of the deeds of William the Conqueror, said: "Among the good

things, is not to be forgotten the good peace that he made in his land; so that a man who had any trust in himself might go over his realm with his bosom full of gold, unharmed. No man durst slay another, no matter how great might be the wrong done to him. . . . The king was very harsh and took from his subjects many a mark of gold and many a hundred pound of silver, all the which he took, by right and unright." Though the king was harsh, the land had peace. From the Norman conquest to the present day, England has remained united. There were a few civil wars, but the land was not continually torn and ravaged by warring feudal princes. This good fortune was due in the beginning to the strong kings who kept the feudal lords from fighting one another.

From an old print

KING JOHN SIGNING MAGNA CARTA

King John and Magna Carta. Though the Norman kings and their successors were powerful in England, they were not allowed to rule just as they pleased. When King John undertook to tax, punish, imprison, and in other ways oppress his people, the barons and the high authorities in the Church united against him. They met at Runnymede in June, 1215, and forced the king to promise to abide by certain rules.

These rules were written down in a Great Charter (*Magna Carta*) which is prized by the English-speaking people to-day along with such documents as the Declaration of Independence. By the charter, certain dues which the feudal lords had to pay the king were fixed at definite sums. The rights of the clergy, including their property, were protected. The citizens of all cities were to enjoy their ancient customs and privileges undisturbed. No *freeman* was to be tried and imprisoned by the king in an arbitrary manner. Justice was not to be sold or delayed by the king's officers. Only those who knew the law of England and meant to observe it were to be appointed royal sheriffs and judges. Certain taxes — though by no means all taxes — were to be levied only with the consent of the landlords who had to pay them.

In time a wonderful fiction grew up about the Great Charter. It was believed that Magna Carta guaranteed trial by jury to all persons arrested for crimes. It was also believed that, according to the Charter, no taxes could be laid without the consent of the people.

In after years, when any one did not like the king's deeds, he said that such ways were forbidden by the Great Charter. The fact is that the people often thus read into the Latin words of the Charter a meaning that was not really there. It cannot be said with truth that the mass of the English people, who were serfs, were meant to derive any special benefit from it. Still, the Great Charter is a justly famous landmark in English history. It did declare that the king could not do as he pleased in all matters. It also declared that in some cases he could not act without the consent of at least a few Englishmen.

The Rise of the English Parliament. The son and the grandson of King John adopted a custom that also had a strong influence on all the later history of England and America. Since they were in dire straits for money, they called on certain of their subjects to help them get it. They asked the bishops, archbishops, and all the barons of high rank to meet them in person. They also invited each town and county to send *representatives* to the meeting. These representatives were chosen by the well-to-do men of the towns and the landlords of the counties who had money to give the king.

In time, such meetings between the king and certain of his subjects became a regular custom. So arose the English form of government. The lords and the higher clergy sat together during these sessions and were known as the House of Lords. The representatives of the towns and counties sat together and were

known as the House of Commons. The two houses together were called *Parliament.* The term itself comes from a French word meaning "to speak." Parliament spoke to the king about taxes and such matters.

In the beginning, the chief business of Parliament was to settle upon taxes for the king's treasury. It was not long, however, before Parliament in return for the taxes that were paid began to petition the king for changes in the laws that had been made by him. If the king approved a petition, it was accepted as a law of the land. Thus Parliament began to make laws itself.

Gradually the rule was fixed that, save on rare occasions, the king was to make no law and lay no tax without the consent of Parliament. After a while Parliament ceased even to petition the king for new laws. It drew up its own law in the form of a *bill.* If the king approved the bill, it became a law. If the king said, in Latin, *Veto*, "I forbid," then it did not become a law. Although the king kept this right of veto for many centuries, still he generally consulted Parliament, which represented the taxpayers, when he wanted new laws. Such was the origin of representative government. Though other countries, as well as England, had this plan of government in the middle ages, it was brought to American soil directly from England by the first colonists (*First Book*, p. 55). It is our plan of government to-day.

The Growth of the National English Literature. The uniting of English territory meant the uniting of

English minds — the forming of a national mind, so to speak. This was, like everything else, a slow process. The efforts of Alfred the Great to create a national English literature had been almost forgotten in the turmoil that followed his death.

The Norman conqueror, William, brought with him an army of priests to whom English was a foreign tongue. He himself and his barons spoke the French of Normandy; so that language was the language of the royal castle and the law courts. Judges rendered their decisions in French. Children had to learn it in the schools. For royal decrees and legal documents, like Magna Carta, Latin was generally used. Even the accounts of merchants and stewards on the great estates were usually kept in Latin. When William compiled a record of the lands and property of England for taxation, known as the Domesday Book, everything was put down in Latin. Only for a few chronicles and stray writings was the English tongue used.

Nevertheless the conquerors could not force their language on the masses. In field and workshop, English was in daily use. Even the descendants of Norman barons had to learn English in order to deal with their subjects. By 1362, the use of French had become uncommon. In that year the order went forth that English should be used in the courts of law. In a few more years, it took the place of French in the schools and the acts of Parliament were written

in it. At length, sermons were preached in English. All that was then needed to make the humble language of the people a national language was its use in great poems and books. In time, these also appeared.

Chaucer and the Canterbury Tales. First among the masters of English literature was Geoffrey Chaucer, the son of a London wine merchant, born about 1340. Unlike most learned men of that time, he was not a priest. He was, for a short period, a soldier; then minister of the king on missions to various Italian cities; and finally he was a member of Parliament and a government officer.

His greatest work, *Canterbury Tales*, begun about 1384, is justly famous even to this day. It is a vivid picture of English life in that age. It purports to be a collection of stories told by some pilgrims stopping at an inn on their way to the shrine of a saint at Canterbury. For the clergy as a class, a monk, a friar, a poor parson, and a "sweet prioress" speak; a lawyer, a doctor, and a clerk spin their yarns; a good wife from Bath, a merchant, a tailor, a plowman, a weaver, a miller, and other artisans add their tales to the common store. The language of the poem is English. Though many of the words are strange to us and the spelling seems queer, we can read it to-day with a little help from a dictionary of old English. High school students usually read passages from it.

Here we have for the first time a great English poem which deals not with heroes or saints and martyrs,

but with the people of everyday life. The scholar who loved his Latin book could laugh over it, and so could the humblest person who could read English. In a little more than fifty years after Chaucer's death in 1400, the printing press was to spread copies of his stories broadcast over his native land.

William Caxton and the Printing Press. It was in 1476 that the first printing press was set up in London. It was brought into England by William Caxton, who had spent many years as a merchant in Bruges and had there learned the art of printing. At first Caxton, besides printing for his customers, translated many books from French and Latin. He brought them out in the English form, employing as far as possible "the common terms that be daily used." Schoolboys could then get, for a few pence, copies of many of Cicero's writings in English as well as in Latin.

But Caxton was more than a translator. He wanted to help perfect the English language and to give to readers the best writings in that tongue. In fact, he printed all the English poetry that was thought worthy in his day. Naturally, he brought out a fine edition of the *Canterbury Tales*. "That worshipful man, Geoffrey Chaucer," he said, "ought to be eternally remembered." In due time, books in English crowded aside those of Latin authors and French romancers. An English national literature was created. This English literary inheritance has had a powerful influence upon our own country.

Questions and Exercises

I. 1. What does modern civilization owe to the kings of medieval Europe? 2. On p. 162 several bonds uniting people into nations are named: a common language, a common literature, a common system of education, a common system of laws, a uniform monetary system, a common religion, a strong central government, and means of carrying on commerce among all parts of a country. Which of these have been most important in making the United States a nation? 3. Some of these things tend to-day to unite the peoples of Europe; and yet Europe is made up of many nations. What would probably have to take place before all of Europe could be united in the sense in which our people are united?

II. 1. Why is the name of Clovis remembered? 2. How long after the fall of Rome did Charlemagne die? 3. What is meant by the Holy Roman Empire? In what ways did it differ from the ancient Roman empire? 4. In what important ways did the early history of Spain differ from the early history of France? 5. Find out something about the religion of Mohammed and his followers. How does it differ from Christianity? What city in Europe now follows the religion of Mohammed?

III. 1. Why are the English people sometimes called the Anglo-Saxons? Find on the map the regions from which the different peoples came that successively conquered England. 2. As England was invaded from the east and south, the original inhabitants were pushed to the west and north; find on a map the regions in which they might have found refuge from the invaders. Perhaps you can think of some reasons that will explain why the people of Wales and Ireland and of the north of Scotland are even to-day in many ways different from the people of England. 3. Why has the year 1066 somewhat the same importance in English history that the year 1776 has in American history? 4. For three centuries after 1066 the French lan-

guage was the official language of the English government; how would you explain this? 5. What classes were chiefly benefited by the Magna Carta? 6. How did the term "parliament" originate? In what ways did the English Parliament in its early days differ from our Congress? Why was development of the power of Parliament to control taxes so important? 7. What is meant by "representative government"? In what respect is it true that the development of representative government in England is a part of *American* history? 8. In what ways did Chaucer and Caxton help to unify the English people and thus to make the English nation?

Geographical Studies

1. For the Holy Roman Empire (p. 166), see map on p. 277. Compare its extent with the extent of the ancient Roman empire (p. 53) and with the extent of modern France (map facing p. 436). 2. What modern countries are included in the territory covered by the empire of Charlemagne (map, p. 164)? 3. What territory belonged to France in the fifteenth century that now belongs to her neighbors? Answer this question by comparing the map on p. 167 with the map facing p. 436. 4. Explain, by reference to the text, why the map of England on p. 175 is simpler than that on p. 173. 5. Make a list of the names of places in this chapter. Try to locate each name on one of the maps in this chapter. Which places cannot thus be located? Why?

Suggestions for Reading

Best, S. M. — *Merry England;* Macmillan.
Dale, Lucy — *Landmarks of British History*, i–viii; Longmans.
Macgregor, Mary — *The Story of France*, i–xiv; Stokes.
Marshall, H. E. — *A History of France*, i–xxiv; Hodder and Stoughton.
Morris, Charles — *Historical Tales — English;* Lippincott.

QUENNELL, M. AND C. H. B. — *A History of Everyday Things in England*, Parts I and II; B. T. Batsford, London.
TAPPAN, EVA M. — *England's Story*, i–v; Houghton Mifflin.
Hero Stories of France, i–xiii; Houghton Mifflin.
Heroes of the Middle Ages, xix–xxii; Harrap.
WARREN — *Stories from English History*, i–v, viii–xiv; Heath.

CHAPTER VIII

THE GROWTH OF WORLD COMMERCE AND EXPLORATION

After securing their unity, the new nations, Spain, France, and England, were ready for the next historic task — the great work of exploring, conquering, and settling a New World. North and South America were soon to be discovered, in a search for a water route to India and China. In time commerce and industry were to overshadow, in importance, agriculture — the mainstay of the people in the middle ages. Business men and industrial workers were to rival in numbers landlords, clergy, and peasants. Industrial and trading cities were to spring up all over western Europe.

In short, with the unity of the three nations, Europe was going over into a new epoch — out of the middle ages into modern times. The history of Europe was now to pass beyond Europe itself to the uttermost parts of the earth, where new nations were to be founded and trade carried on. The governments of Spain, France, and England, especially, were to grant money to explorers, charter companies, and build fleets of ships. They were to engage in three hundred years

of warfare for the possession of trade and lands beyond the seas.

The Growth of Trade from Early Times

Commerce in Ancient Times. This new age, however, did not burst upon mankind all at once. It was like the flowering of a slowly growing plant. Commerce among nations began in the distant past. All the great countries of antiquity had their ships, their warehouses, and their merchants. The people of Egypt, Babylonia, Persia, Greece, Rome, Carthage, and other ancient states, each in turn, built up trade in the Mediterranean basin.

East and West, adventurous merchants and sailors looked for new markets and new supplies. King Solomon's men brought gold, silver, ivory, and peacocks all the way from India to Palestine. Alexander the Great, looking for more worlds to conquer, led his army to the very borders of

Metropolitan Museum

Antique Silk from the Far East

India. Though an early death cut short his plans, Greek merchants opened up a rich traffic in Indian goods. Herodotus, the Greek historian, said that India was the wealthiest and most populous country on earth. Even more distant China was known to the ancients, by the name of Seres. It was often mentioned in the legends of the Persians. Among the records of China is an account of a Chinese prince who, in the year 985 B.C., made a journey into the remote lands of the West and brought back with him skilled workmen and many curiosities.

The Romans made much of their trade with the Far East. A Roman writer of the first century after Christ complained that Arabia, India, and China drained Rome of millions of dollars of gold annually to pay for silks and other luxuries. In the later days, when the Roman empire stretched from Britain to Arabia, the trade was immense. In the markets of the city of Rome could be seen tin, lead, and hides from Britain and iron from Gaul, as well as silks, spices, and precious stones from India and the distant East. We are told that one Roman merchant carried on the same voyage from Egypt to Rome a great obelisk, 200 sailors, 1200 passengers, 400,000 Roman bushels of wheat, and a cargo of linen, glass, paper, and pepper. In the cities of the Roman empire, there were to be found huge warehouses of the merchants who made princely fortunes from trade.

Commerce in the Middle Ages. As the Roman

From an old print

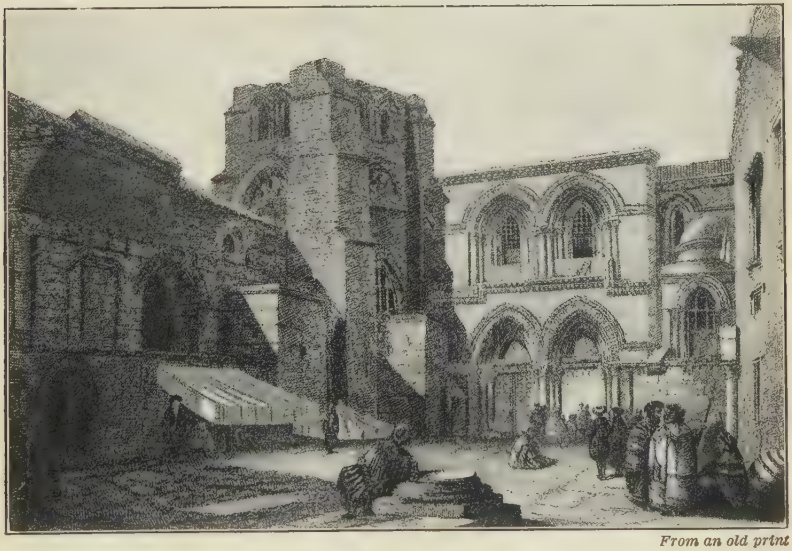
PREACHING A CRUSADE

empire fell to pieces, its vast trade decayed. Warehouses closed their doors. The families of rich merchants became poor. The silks, spices, and precious jewels of the East were seen no more in the market places. The huge and bare stone castles of feudal lords took the place of luxurious Roman villas. Each locality came to depend upon itself for practically all the necessities of life and most of the few luxuries that were enjoyed. The merchants who ventured abroad were likely to be set upon by thieves and robbed of their goods.

Still, in the worst of times, trade did not vanish altogether. Though the wide-reaching Roman roads were no longer kept in repair, they offered ways for the adventurous trader to journey from land to land. Even the most fortunate community could not supply all its wants. Iron and salt, at least, usually had to be brought from some place more or less distant. Some lands were better for grain, and others for cattle and swine. So it came about that even in the midst of the decline of old Rome a little traffic was kept going.

In the course of time, new market towns arose. Some of the old Roman cities, too, after a period of idleness showed signs of life again, or new towns were built upon the ruins of the old. The monasteries inhabited by Christian monks, which dotted every country, became centers to which men journeyed from far and wide. In them the wayfaring merchant could always find a place to sleep and something to eat.

At certain favorable points, annual fairs were held, at which local goods were traded for iron, salt, and other merchandise. At other favorable points, market towns sprang up, often under royal protection. In the days of Alfred the Great, English merchants journeyed often to the continent to trade at the French fairs, even as far away as Marseilles.



From an old print

Church of the Holy Sepulchre

The Crusades and Commerce. By a strange stroke of fortune, the trade of Europe was increased by the rise of the Mohammedans (p. 169), who threatened to overwhelm Christendom. All the eastern and southern shores of the Mediterranean, including Palestine with the tomb of the Savior, fell into their hands.

To rescue the Holy Land from the Mohammedans, the Europeans of all nations began, in 1096, a series of wars known as the *Crusades*. These lasted for more than two hundred years. Kings, princes, knights, common soldiers, monks, peasants, artisans, and even little children flocked to the armies that made the perilous journeys to the distant Palestine. In these crusades, thousands of people perished by the wayside or on the battlefield. Other thousands lived to make their way home, bearing stirring tales of their adventures and of the countries through which they had passed.

The tomb of the Savior was not permanently won for Christendom by the crusaders. As often happens, the results were very different from what had been expected. Instead of hating the Mohammedans and all their ideas, the crusaders were deeply affected by their way of living. Men from England, France, Germany, and Spain acquired new wants and tastes as they beheld the luxuries of the East. They were no longer content with the rough life they had led. Henceforth they must have spices, silks, tapestries, rugs, gold and silver ornaments, and precious stones from the East. Their neighbors caught the spirit as they heard wondrous stories of far countries, rich in luxuries.

Moreover, enterprising persons from western Europe had seen the splendor of Constantinople, where the remnants of Rome's former glory were to be found. Adventurers then learned how to traffic with the

merchants of the East and heard from them many tales of India and China. Especially did the Italians profit from the crusades. The merchants of Genoa and Venice heaped up great fortunes by selling supplies to the crusading armies. In the train of the victors, they founded colonies and trading centers on the eastern shores of the Mediterranean.

From an old print

SALADIN, A MOHAMMEDAN WARRIOR

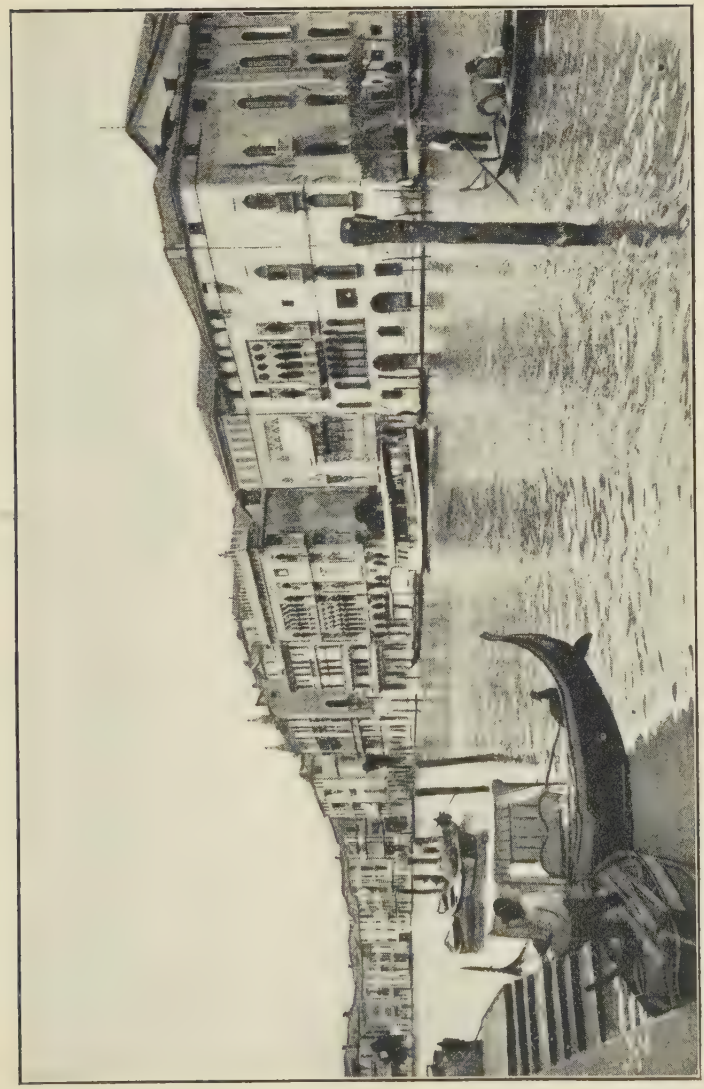
EUROPEAN ATTENTION FIXED UPON THE EAST

The Steady Growth of Oriental Trade. For more than two hundred years after the seventh and last great crusade, in 1272, trade in eastern wares steadily grew in volume. During this period, the Italians abandoned the long overland route to England through France and adopted the plan of sending their goods by ships through the Strait of Gibraltar. The great mercantile houses of Genoa, Florence, and Venice

had their branches in The Netherlands and England. They bought lead, tin, wool, and alum from the English and gave in exchange wines, tea, silks, spices, perfumes, porcelains, precious stones, tapestries, and rugs. In vain did English moralists lament that their countrymen were trading useful things like tin and wool for spices, sweet wines, and other trifles " which fatally blur our eyes." Englishmen learned to like luxuries so much that preaching against " fancy goods " could not stop their sale.

The Italians made great profits from this trade. They founded banks and lent money to kings engaged in wars. French, Spanish, Portuguese, Dutch, and English merchants looked with envy upon the gains of their Italian rivals and longed to get into " the golden East " themselves. Indeed, later in the fifteenth century English merchants began business for themselves in the eastern Mediterranean. By that time all western Europe was deeply stirred over Oriental and Indian trade.

The Old Trade Routes. The goods which were enriching the Italians and delighting the purchasers in western Europe came to the West by many routes, all of which led through the Mediterranean. One or more overland lines extended all the way from Peking, China, to the Black Sea and Constantinople. Another line stretched from India through the Persian Gulf and the city of Bagdad to Constantinople. Still other routes ran through the Red Sea to ports on the Mediterranean.



THE GRAND CANAL IN VENICE

The overland journeys were made by long trains of camels heavily laden with boxes and bales of merchandise. These trips were, at best, perilous and expensive. Goods from India had to be packed and unpacked many times. For example, they were carried overland to the ports on the west coast of India; there they were placed on board ship and carried to the headwaters of the Persian Gulf; at that point they were put on camels and taken overland to the shores of the Black Sea; thence they went by boat to the Constantinople market. At Constantinople the goods passed into the hands of Italian traders who shipped them, perhaps, to Venice. Venetian merchants then carried them to Marseilles and overland through France to the English Channel, thence by boat to London, and from London often to a final destination in some inland town.

The cost of freight for such a journey was necessarily heavy, and each merchant through whose hands the goods passed took his toll of profits. A pound of cinnamon often sold in an English or German market for twenty-five times its original cost in India. The losses, too, were great. The land was infested by robbers and the sea by pirates. Wars were constantly being waged between the Italians and the Turks. When the latter, in 1453, captured Constantinople, the greatest trading center of the Near East passed out of the hands of Christians and into the control of the hated "infidels." Long before that event, how-

ever, the Italians had begun a search for a water route around Africa.

The Travelers to the East. Western people were not content merely to receive goods from the East. Naturally, they became curious about the countries from which silks and spices came. They wanted to know more about the fabled lands and to see them with their own eyes. Christian missionaries, daunted by no perils, went to convert the heathen. A writer of the third century, telling of successful missions, declared: "We can count up in our reckoning things achieved in India, among the Chinese, Persians, and Medes." In 1245 a missionary was sent by the pope far beyond the Black Sea into "the land of the Great Khan." On his return this man wrote a lively account of his visit. He praised highly the people of Cathay, as he named the land of the Chinese; he vowed that their country was "very rich in grain, wine, gold, silver, silk, and everything which tends to the support of mankind." Ten years later another missionary, sent by the king of France, came back and told astonishing tales of "little fellows" with "very narrow eyes," some of whom lived in a town that had "silver walls and gold battlements."

A few more years passed and two famous Venetian merchants, the Polo brothers, went overland to China and visited the emperor of the Mongols at Peking. On a later visit, they took with them young Marco Polo, who stayed many years in China. Marco jour-

neyed from city to city and learned about the trade and habits of the Chinese.

When he returned to Venice in 1295 bringing diamonds, rubies, and sapphires, he stirred the whole city by his stories. He boasted to his friends of his exploits; these were set down in a book, which described at great length the land he had visited. He told of the Chinese emperor's splendid palace with its walls of burnished gold and silver, its jeweled panels, and its gorgeous tapestries. He told of his visit to the royal court where, he said, princes wore robes of silk and beaten gold and girdles set with precious stones. Never had such a tale appeared, except in fairy stories. Polo's book was in great demand. It aroused the interest of all who read it — kings and princes, as well as merchants and sailors.

The Spread of Knowledge about the East. After the Polos' day, many new books were written about Asia. In 1307, a monk from Armenia, who lived in France, wrote a geography of Asia with valuable historical notes. An Italian commercial agent, Pegolotti, published a handbook and guide for merchants doing business with the Far East. He explained how goods were packed, money exchanged, and tariffs paid. He carefully described the trade routes and gave good advice about traveling in safety and comfort. This book shows clearly that the road to Cathay was often traveled and that a vast amount of goods was handled by the merchants. Among the things listed

by this writer were copper, pepper, cotton, madder, oil, flax, ermines, furs, pearls, almonds, sulphur, and nutmegs, cinnamon, and other spices.

By 1350 there were probably merchants in every large town from London to Venice who could talk intelligently about the long routes to the East and about India and China. Monks in the monasteries, merchants in their shops, sailors and longshoremen at the docks, and many a scholar poring over his books by that time knew something about "the fabled East."

The Service of Science and Learning

The Making of Geographies. While merchants and travelers were going to and from the East, bearing tales of endless wonder, geographers were busy too. They pieced together bits of information and began to draw maps of Asia. As the beginning for their work, they had the writings of the ancients. Greek scholars, long before the time of Christ, had taught that the world was round. Moreover, they had written many books about geography. Some fragments of Greek writings had been copied down by a famous geographer, Claudius Ptolemy, who lived in Egypt. In the second century after Christ, Ptolemy wrote a great deal about the lands and waters of the earth.

Though Christian writers thought of the other world rather than of this, they did not by any means neglect geography. One of them, writing in the sixth century, seems to have been well acquainted with

India and shows a knowledge of the ancient Greek writings. Another, in 1306, drew a map which showed Africa ending in a point. Still another, Fra Mauro, a lay brother in a Venetian monastery, made, about 1459, his unique map of the world in which he used the knowledge gained by Marco Polo and other travelers. Mauro's map gave a very clear idea of the Mediterranean basin and western Europe. It also showed (1) Africa with the water route all around it, (2) the Indian Ocean, and (3) a rough outline of Asia with the Ganges River rudely drawn. With much truth, men mixed many errors and all kinds of absurd guesses; but keen minds were slowly separating the truth from the rumors.

Toscanelli. Perhaps the most famous of these early geographers was Toscanelli, an astronomer and librarian, who lived in Florence until his death in 1482. He early became interested in stories of travel, including those of Marco Polo. Through the busy years of a long life, he worked steadily at geography until his fame spread far and wide. Navigators went to talk with him and princes sought his advice. Toscanelli finally came to believe that the world was round and that India could be reached by sailing west. He wrote a letter and made a map giving his ideas. Though the map was lost, the letter was kept and from it we can see clearly what was in Toscanelli's mind. It is thought that Columbus had both the letter and the map when he sailed in 1492; but this is not known.

Knowledge of the Earth's Shape. Naturally, as men studied geography they came to think more and more about the shape of the earth. It was the common view that the earth was flat. It seemed flat, and nearly

From an old print

Perils of the Deep

everybody took the appearance for the truth. Still there had been, from very early times, a few scholars who believed it to be round (p.199). Aristotle, as early as the fourth century B.C., taught that the earth was a globe. Nearly four hundred years later, the geographer Strabo said that this theory was sound; so also did Roger Bacon, an English monk who lived in the thirteenth century. He even went so far as to say that India could be reached by sailing west from Spain.

The Science of Navigation. While the map-makers were busy tracing the shape of continents, other men of science were finding ways of guiding ships over pathless oceans. Sometime in the thirteenth century there appeared among the sailors of Europe a tiny instrument that made it possible for them to tell directions even on the darkest night. This tiny thing, the compass, was invented by some unknown genius. The date of the invention is likewise unknown. In English books written about 1180, we read of a " needle on a pivot which revolves until the point is north." In a little while every ocean-going ship had its compass. As the years passed, other sailing instruments were made. The astrolabe was improved so that the sailor could find his distance from the equator by taking the height of the sun. When the time came for the voyages which revealed the New World, sea captains could hold their ships to a given course and keep a record of their sailing.

Navigators, Explorers, and Conquerors

The Navigators. As travelers and scholars gained knowledge, men of affairs applied it. Italian sailors took the lead. They chafed at the expense of trade by the overland routes and wondered about a water route around Africa. They had found it easy to sail out through the Strait of Gibraltar and far north to England. It occurred to them, naturally enough, that it would be equally easy to sail south around Africa.

GREENLAND
ICELAND
NORWAY
SWEDEN
RUSSIA
ASIA
AMERICA
PAPAL LINE OF DEMARCATION 1493
Cabot 1497
NEWFOUNDLAND
LABRADOR
NETHERLANDS
EUROPE
Venice
Genoa
Florence
Marseilles
PORTUGAL
Lisbon
Str. of Gibraltar
MADEIRA IS.
CANARY IS.
Morocco
BARBARY
Black Sea
Constantinople
TURKEY
PALESTINE
Bagdad
PERSIA
Peking
1271 Marco Polo
JAPAN
MONGOLIA
ATLANTIC
BAHAMA IS.
Columbus 1492
Cortez 1519
Mexico
SPANISH WEST INDIES
SPANISH COLONIES
Panama
SAHARA
ARABIA
HINDUSTAN
INDIA
CHINA
Canton
PACIFIC
PHILIPPINE IS.
C. VERDE IS. 1445
CAPE VERDE IS.
AFRICA
GUINEA
Calicut 1498
Goa
CEYLON
Magellan
1521
MOLUCCAS OR SPICE IS.
OCEAN
da Gama
PORTUGUESE COLONIES
PACIFIC OCEAN
BRAZIL
Pedro Alvarez Cabral 1500
del Cano 1522
INDIAN
ZANZIBAR
JAVA
Magellan 1519
MADAGASCAR
AUSTRALIA
OCEAN
OCEAN
Magellan's Ship
GOOD HOPE
Diaz 1486
Str. of Magellan 1520
SPANISH
PORTUGUESE
GENERAL DRAFTING CO. INC. N.Y.

As early as 1292 they tried it; but at length they gave it up as hopeless.

The Italians, however, aroused the interest of the Portuguese. On their way to and from the ports of The Netherlands and England, Italian seamen often put in at Lisbon. Many a one stayed to make his home in Portugal. The Portuguese were likewise moved by the huge profits which the Italians made on Oriental goods. They began to think about a new route to Persia, India, and China. So it happened that Portuguese sailors became the pioneers in the work of exploring the high seas.

From an old print

QUEEN ISABELLA, THE PATRONESS OF COLUMBUS

The way for this great work was made easier by the labors of a son of the Portuguese king, Prince Henry, famous in history as "the Navigator." Though brave in battle and skilled in military science, he turned from the arts of war to the arts of peace. He refused a high military command. He chose instead to live on the lonely cape of Sagres at the remotest point of Portugal looking out southwest to the sea. There he built a home and an observatory. There he brought together astronomers, geographers, and map-makers.

He sent expedition after expedition down the coast of Africa in search of the southern passage to the Indies. Out of his own purse he bought maps and books. He maintained a school in which seamen were trained to sail their ships according to the best plans that science could afford.

Prince Henry's men discovered Madeira and the Azores. They rounded Cape Bajador, nearly a thousand miles to the south of Sagres on the African coast. They sighted the waters of the Senegal River flooding out to the sea. They swept away the myths about the dangers of long sea voyages. As a result Prince Henry, in putting aside military glory, found lasting fame as a helper of mankind. When he died, in 1460, he left behind a large band of skilled sailors who carried on the good work he had so nobly begun.

The Great Explorers. The men who carried forward the work of Prince Henry the Navigator found a water route to India and discovered a new world (*First Book*, pp. 1–50). A Portuguese sailor, Bartholomew Diaz, in 1486 rounded the point of Africa and gave it the name of the Cape of Good Hope, a sign that the victory over the seas was soon to be won. Six years later Columbus, bearing the flag of Spain, made the first of his four famous voyages that were to unfold a new continent to European eyes. A little later came the astounding news that Vasco da Gama had rounded the Cape of Good Hope, sailed straight to India, and returned home safely to Portugal (1497–99).

About the same time, John and Sebastian Cabot, in the service of the English king, sailed to the coast of North America and gave to England a claim to its eastern shores. In 1507 the new continents were christened *America* in honor of the explorer, Amerigo Vespucci, who, it was claimed, made four voyages of discovery to the New World.

From an old print

COLUMBUS ON THE DECK OF HIS SHIP

In 1519 Magellan decided to outstrip his fellow explorers by sailing all the way around the world. He perished on the journey, but some of his sailors completed the historic voyage three years afterwards.

A little more than ten years later, the king of France took a hand in the new enterprise. He sent out one of his bravest sailors, Cartier. This bold seaman ex-

plored the St. Lawrence River and laid claim to the St. Lawrence basin.

Within fifty years of Columbus' first voyage, there was a lively trade between Europe and India. Hundreds of islands and two vast continents in the western hemisphere were rapidly being opened up.

From an old print

Spanish Conquerors Destroying Mexican Idols

The Spanish Conquerors. Leadership in exploring the mainland of North and South America was undertaken by warriors bearing the banner of Spain and by missionaries bearing the cross of Christ. One of the great Spanish warriors, Ferdinand Cortez, in 1519 discovered Mexico — a vast empire with fertile farms, prosperous cities, and great stores of gold and silver.

In a short time he conquered Mexico, looted its treasuries, and subjected it to Spanish rule.

Another warrior, Pizarro, soon afterward heard of Peru, another rich country to the south. With a handful of soldiers he overthrew the native king. In a short time, he raised the Spanish flag over the dazed and beaten natives, and carried off tons of precious metals.

A third Spanish captain, De Soto, sought fame and wealth by making an expedition into Florida and the wilderness to the west. Instead of great cities, however, he found a few native Indians living in wretched huts; instead of fortune, he met his death on the banks of the Mississippi River. Other explorers, working northward from Mexico, penetrated the territories now included in Texas, Arizona, and New Mexico, planting the Spanish flag in many a trading post and mission which they founded.

Before the sixteenth century was half over, the Spanish king had a vast empire in the two Americas. Streams of gold and silver were pouring into his country. The sails of Spanish galleons were seen amid the curious junks in Chinese harbors; in the strange waters of Java, Sumatra, and India; in the ports of West India and both Americas; and bending before the storms of two capes, Good Hope and the Horn.

Questions and Exercises

I. 1. Why was a more extensive commerce possible in the days of the Roman empire than after the fall of the empire?

(Think of the ways in which a large number of small, independent states would make the transportation of goods over long distances a difficult undertaking.) 2. What effect, if any, did the supreme importance of religion during the middle ages have upon commerce? (For example, would there be so great a demand for luxuries?) 3. The Romans built splendid roads throughout the empire; how would these roads have been likely to fare when the empire was split up? 4. How would the lack of a strong law enforced by a central government affect the safety of travel? 5. What were the "Crusades," and what was their most important influence on the life of Europe? How long after the fall of Rome was the first crusade undertaken?

II. 1. When trade between western Europe and the eastern countries had once been reopened, what decided advantage did the Italian cities have for controlling the trade? 2. Trace on the map (p. 203) the routes by which goods from China and India were brought to Italy, Spain, France, and England. 3. How did the capture of Constantinople by the Turks affect this trade? In what other way have we found that this event influenced western Europe?

III. 1. Why was it difficult for people living in the middle ages to think of the earth as a sphere? What reasons have you learned from your study of geography to justify your belief that the earth is round? Which of these reasons may Aristotle have thought of as a basis for his belief that the earth was round? 2. Why was the compass so important an invention? How had the Romans been able to manage their navigation of the Mediterranean Sea without such instruments? 3. What advantage did the astrolabe give to the navigator?

IV. 1. The Italians found it possible to sail their ships through the Strait of Gibraltar and thence north to England. Why was the southern route around Africa so much more difficult? 2. Why is Prince Henry the Navigator remembered as one of the great benefactors of mankind? What important events

grew out of the work of Prince Henry? 3. Who finally discovered the "ocean route" from western Europe to India? 4. In the attempts to discover this route, the Western world had been discovered. Which turned out in the end to be the more important event, and why? Which was considered at the time the more important event, and why?

Geographical Studies

1. Trace on the map on p. 203 as many as you can of the voyages described in this chapter; of the land journeys. 2. What line on that map separates the northern from the southern hemisphere? All the nations of any importance at the time of Columbus lay entirely in the northern hemisphere. How, then, can you explain the fact that so many of the important voyages of discovery were partly or chiefly in the southern hemisphere? 3. Would Columbus have seen the value of the Suez Canal? Of the Panama Canal? Would Magellan? 4. What continent did Magellan just miss discovering? 5. Marco Polo's trip to China was entirely overland. He started from Acre (Akka) in Asia Minor and traveled through Persia, over the Pamir Plateau, through what is now eastern Turkestan, and across the Desert of Gobi to Shangtu, in northern China. Trace this route on the map on p. 203. Compare this map with the map of Asia in your textbook in geography, and estimate the great distance that Polo traveled, and see why it took him four years to make the journey.

Suggestions for Reading

Blyth, Estelle — *Jerusalem and the Crusades;* Dodge.
Gray, G. Z. — *The Children's Crusades;* Houghton Mifflin.
Hall — *The Boy's Book of Chivalry*, xi–xv.
O'Neill — *The Story of the World*, xxi, xxiv, xxx.
Tappan — *Heroes of the Middle Ages*, xxvi–xxxvi.
Van Loon — *The Story of Mankind* (*School edition*), xxxiv, xxxviii, xli.
Warren — *Stories from English History*, vii.

Suggestions for Review of Chapters V–VIII

1. If we think of the middle ages as beginning with the fall of Rome and ending about the time of the discovery of America, how many years did this period cover? Compare this with the period covered by recorded history up to the fall of Rome; with the period between the first Roman kings and the fall of Rome; with the period between the discovery of America and the present time; with the period of our national history (from 1776 to the present time).

2. Make a list of ten events and topics occurring during the middle ages that you consider the most important; for example, the spread of Christianity, the rise of nations, the invention of printing, and the journey of Marco Polo. Arrange these in the order of their happening, and then try to rearrange them in the order of their importance, giving reasons for the importance assigned to each. Keep this list, for you may change your mind on some points as you go on with your study of modern history.

3. Let each pupil think of this question: Who are the prominent persons of medieval history that you would like best to know? Then take a vote and have "reception committees" appointed to gather information about these persons and through this information bring the persons themselves to meet the class.

History Stories, Myths, and Legends for Chapters V–VIII

Baldwin, J. — *Stories of Siegfried;* Scribners.
The Story of Roland; Scribners.
Butler, Isabel — *The Song of Roland;* Houghton Mifflin.
Church, A. J. — *Stories of Charlemagne;* Macmillan.
Dasent, G. W. — *Norse Fairy Tales;* Lippincott.
Dutton, Maude B. — *Little Stories of England;* American Book.
Haaren, J. H., and Poland, A. B. — *Famous Men of the Middle Ages;* American Book.

Lamprey, L. — *In the Days of the Guild;* Stokes.
Masters of the Guild; Stokes.
Lanier, Sidney, (Editor) — *The Boy's Froissart;* Scribners.
Lanier, Sidney — *The Boy's King Arthur;* Scribners.
Pyle, Howard — *Robin Hood;* Dutton.
Stein, Evaleen — *Our Little Norman Cousin of Long Ago;* Page.
Stephen, James — *Irish Fairy Tales;* Macmillan.
Winslow, C. V. — *Our Little Carthaginian Cousin of Long Ago;* Page.

CHAPTER IX

THE PROTESTANT REFORMATION

While kings were building up their power in Europe and bold explorers were opening America for settlement, the old dispute between the pope and the monarch — Church and State — broke out afresh. As you will remember, Christianity was at first the belief of small and persecuted groups of people. Three centuries later, it was made the official religion of the Roman empire. The pope at Rome became the head of the Church. After the downfall of the Roman empire, there appeared many kings in Western Christendom, who often quarreled with the pope, although they were loyal to the Catholic faith. For a time the quarrels ceased; but in a little while after the year 1500 they were renewed. Before this new dispute was ended, several nations had denied altogether the right of the pope to control in religious matters, and a number of new religious denominations had come into being. These sects were known as *Protestants* because they protested against the Catholic faith. The religious movement which filled the sixteenth century with turmoil was known as the *Protestant Reformation*.

For more than a century, Europe was torn by religious wars between Catholics and Protestants. There were civil wars and there were wars between nations. The contending factions burned or otherwise cruelly punished many of their opponents. Thousands of people were driven by this religious persecution to seek refuge in America. The masses everywhere were aroused by the disputes of kings and preachers as well as by the disputes of kings and the pope. The printing press had, not many years before, begun to make it possible to manufacture so many books that great numbers of people now took an interest in them. Thus popular education on a wide scale was started in this age. The masses had never read anything before. So we may truly say that the sixteenth century is among the most important periods in all history.

The Protestant Reformation in Germany

Early Criticism of the Church. Although the Protestant revolt against the authority of the pope in the sixteenth century first took form in Germany, there had been criticism of the Church in other countries. Indeed, from time to time during the middle ages, attacks had been made both on the pope and on the Catholic faith itself. The kings of France and England, though loyal Catholics, had many times complained bitterly because the pope had appointed Italian clergymen to high church offices within their realms. They had also complained because the pope

had collected so much money in fees and contributions from their subjects.

In 1393 the English king had his parliament pass a law forbidding Englishmen to take offices in the Church without the king's consent. It declared that all who refused to obey should be punished. About the same time an English priest, John Wyclif, openly taught that all the property of the Church in England could be seized by the king and used for public purposes. He also said that the service of a priest was not necessary for salvation; that any person could approach God directly, without the aid of anyone else.

The followers of Wyclif were easily put down in England; but, far away in Bohemia, John Huss spread similar ideas freely for a long time. At last, however, he was condemned and burned as a heretic. Protests against the Church then died away and its authority seemed unquestioned.

Growth of Criticism. At the opening of the sixteenth century, there came another outburst of criticism against the officials and practices of the Church, this time in Germany. The attacks were at first confined to certain minor matters. It was said that the monks were often lazy and worthless fellows who lived by begging. It was alleged that the fees charged by priests for marriages, burials, and managing the property of deceased persons were too high. Complaints were made against the exemption of Church property from taxation; it was said that its property should

be taxed like that of any citizen. The bishops and other high church officers who had great wealth were accused of living in luxury, while the poor village priests often had scarcely enough to keep soul and body together. Above all, the critics objected to the large sums of German money that were paid each year to the Church at Rome.

From an old print

ERASMUS

The leaders in such criticism were sometimes priests themselves who attacked what they called the "abuses" in the Church. Among them was a gentle and witty scholar of Holland, Erasmus, who thought that there should be a reform but not an overturning of the Church. In a little book called *The Praise of Folly*, he poked fun at the monks and laughed at scholars who disputed all day over some foolish question, such as "How many angels can stand on the point of a needle?" Erasmus laid great stress on right living. He thought that selfish and corrupt men should be forced out of high places in the Church. He declared that men should care more about the teachings of Christ and less about his images. Yet Erasmus was loyal to the Catholic Church and wanted reforms to be brought about gradually and without anger.

Martin Luther and the Revolt against the Pope. Far different from other reformers in the Church was a German monk, Martin Luther, who lived at the same time as Erasmus. Though the son of a slate-cutter, he had been able to obtain a university education and to devote himself to the study of law. Against the wishes of his parents he entered the priesthood and became an Augustine monk. Shortly afterward he was made a teacher of theology in the university of Wittenberg, in Prussian Saxony, some fifty miles southwest of Berlin.

While Luther was busy teaching, a Dominican monk came to Wittenberg to raise money for the Church. Luther was stirred to anger by some things that were said and done by this monk. He thereupon wrote out ninety-five *theses*, or statements of ideas that he believed to be true. Among other things he said that any Christian who felt truly sorry for his sins would be forgiven. He added that a common man might very well ask why the pope, who was very rich, did not build St. Peter's with his own money instead of "taking that of the poor man." This was in 1517.

Three years later Luther and his writings were condemned by the pope. Luther answered by burning the decree which condemned him. The break had come. Luther denied the authority of the pope and declared that many beliefs taught by the Church were errors. Above all he thought that man was to be saved, not by good works, but by repenting of his sins

and by having faith that God's justice would save the repentant sinner.

Luther kept on teaching his doctrines, protected by a powerful German prince, until his death in 1546. He made a translation of the Bible into the German language for the use of the common people. He wrote

From an old print

MARTIN LUTHER AND THREE FAMOUS PROTESTANT SCHOLARS

hundreds of letters and books on religion. He appealed to the German princes to bring about reforms in the Church. But he was strongly opposed to the idea that people should take the matter into their own hands.

The Lutheran Church. At first, those who did not like Luther made fun of his followers by calling them

Lutherans. This term of scorn was finally accepted by them as a term of honor. As the years passed, many German princes adopted certain of Luther's teachings and defied the authority of the pope. They also seized much of the property of the Church and monasteries that lay within their realms. When an attempt was made to restore Catholic beliefs in Germany, a number of them signed a great "protest" against it.

All efforts to bring about agreement between the pope and the Protestants were vain. In 1530 a document was drawn up, known as the *Augsburg Confession*, in which the main ideas of the German Protestants were fully set forth. This Confession became the basis of the new Lutheran faith and is so regarded by Lutheran churches everywhere to-day.

Within ten years after Luther's death, the states of northern Germany and Norway, Sweden, and Denmark had broken away from Rome and had become Protestant countries. All of them in adopting the new faith added to it the title *Evangelical*, which Luther himself had used to describe his doctrines. As *evangel* meant the "gospel," Luther said that he was merely going back to the gospel as taught by Christ himself.

The two centuries which followed Luther's age were full of woe for Germany. There were many religious wars among the Germans themselves. The Catholic king of France waged war after war on the Germans in order to get more territories along the Rhine. In many

cases these territories were inhabited by Protestants. Beginning late in the seventeenth century, the Protestants turned, especially, to America as a refuge. Thousands of them fled across the ocean to the English colonies, mainly to Pennsylvania (*First Book*, p. 74). In the nineteenth century, after the religious causes for leaving their homeland had largely disappeared, Germans continued to come to America in great numbers.

The Protestant Reformation in England

Henry VIII and the Break with the Pope. When Martin Luther opened his stormy career as a reformer in Germany, England had a powerful king by the name of Henry VIII. Far from approving Luther's ideas, Henry wrote a book in which he sharply condemned them. In a few years, however, he himself was engaged in a desperate quarrel with the pope. He wanted to divorce his wife, Katherine of Aragon, and to marry a woman of his Court, Anne Boleyn. The pope refused his appeal for a divorce and Henry was very angry. Katherine's nephew, the Holy Roman Emperor, had just seized the city of Rome and really held the pope a prisoner. Henry charged that the pope was afraid to grant the divorce on that account.

In his wrath, Henry declared that he, himself, would be sole master in England. So he got his divorce from an English court. Then, in 1534, he compelled his parliament to pass a law making him "the only

supreme head on earth of the Church of England." He thereupon seized the land owned by the monasteries and divided much of it among his favorites. He took to himself the right to appoint bishops and other high officials in the Church. He forced all the clergy to accept the new order. Those who refused were harshly treated. Some were banished, others were burned, and others were beheaded. In denying the authority of the pope over England, however, Henry at first made no important changes in the faith and services of the Catholic Church. Indeed, he treated those who wanted religious changes as savagely as he did those who did not want to disown the pope.

The Growth of Protestantism in England. After Henry had cast off the rule of the pope, he found it hard to suppress those who began to cast off the Catholic faith too. In attempting to do this, he drove many of his subjects to Germany. There they learned the doctrines of Martin Luther and became converts. Fired with new zeal, they slipped back into England to spread his ideas.

In a little while England, too, was affected by these preachers of reform. Some of them turned away from the leading ideas of the Catholic religion. Others declared that the images and stained windows in the churches were "idolatrous." Others denounced fast days and holy days.

When Henry died and the crown passed to his son, Edward VI, in 1547, the Protestants triumphed.

New articles of religious faith were drawn up and all English people were forced to adopt them. Although the Catholic religion was later restored for five years under Queen Mary, it was impossible to hold to the old order. England was destined to be Protestant.

The Established Church of England. In 1558 Queen Elizabeth came to the throne. Soon after she was crowned, the parliament adopted a form of Protestant faith for all Englishmen again. By a law known as the *Act of Supremacy*, the power of the pope over England was once more denied. The queen was declared to be supreme in religious matters. A creed of thirty-nine articles of faith was written down and every one was ordered to accept it. A uniform service for all churches was prepared and all clergymen were forced to follow it. In short, a *Church of England* was established by law. Its faith and services were fixed by law. All people were required to attend its services and believe in its doctrines. Punishments were fixed for those who refused to obey.

Moreover, the power of the sovereign was greatly enlarged. The queen could appoint all bishops and archbishops and forbid the clergy to hold meetings without her consent. To call the queen a heretic was treason. To attend mass was made a crime. When a bishop complained to Queen Elizabeth against the seizure of some of his lands, she scornfully told him that she had made him and would unmake him if he did not yield the property at once. Both Catholics

and Protestants who openly rejected the Established Church were cruelly punished. Having set up this new order, Elizabeth and her advisers thought that peace would come to the troubled realm.

Puritans and Separatists. But there was to be no peace. The system was hardly agreed upon before some persons sought to change it. A very powerful group, which grew steadily in numbers, wanted to "purify" the new church. They wanted to do this by omitting parts of the service, taking images away from church buildings, and making other reforms. They were therefore nicknamed *Puritans* by their enemies, and they proudly adopted the title. This group, or party, did not, however, seek to overthrow the Church of England or to deny its authority.

It was certain members of this body of reformers who, after struggling against the king and the church, fled to America in 1629 and founded the Massachusetts Bay colony (*First Book*, pp. 59–65). Even when the Puritans sailed away, they were counted members of the Church of England; and such they remained for a while after they reached America. In time, however, they left the English church and formed little groups of their own — *congregations* — for religious worship. Such was the origin of the Congregational churches to be found all over New England and in other parts of the United States to-day.

Along with the Puritans there sprang up in England another Protestant group that utterly rejected the

Church of England. They flatly declared that it was no true church, that its services were idolatry, and that its bishops had no lawful power over Christians. They asserted that the rightful form of church was described in the New Testament as a simple congregation composed of all those who believed in Christ. A church, they said, "is a company or number of Christians or believers who by a willing covenant made with their God are under the government of God and Christ and keep his laws in one holy communion." Members of this sect were called *Separatists*, because they proposed to separate entirely from the Church of England and set up independent congregations of their own. Of course, the king did not like the Separatists at all. They were always in danger of punishment. So many of them fled from the realm. It was the members of this group that founded the colony of Plymouth in 1620 (*First Book*, pp. 57–59).

The Increase in Religious Sects. Some of those who drifted away from the Church of England believed that a certain form of baptism was necessary to salvation. John Bunyan, the author of *Pilgrim's Progress*, held this view. So did Roger Williams, of Rhode Island (*First Book*, pp. 62–63). He is sometimes called the founder of the Baptist churches in America. From small beginnings sprang the Baptist congregations of the United States, which now have nearly ten million members.

One powerful body of Separatists, or independents,

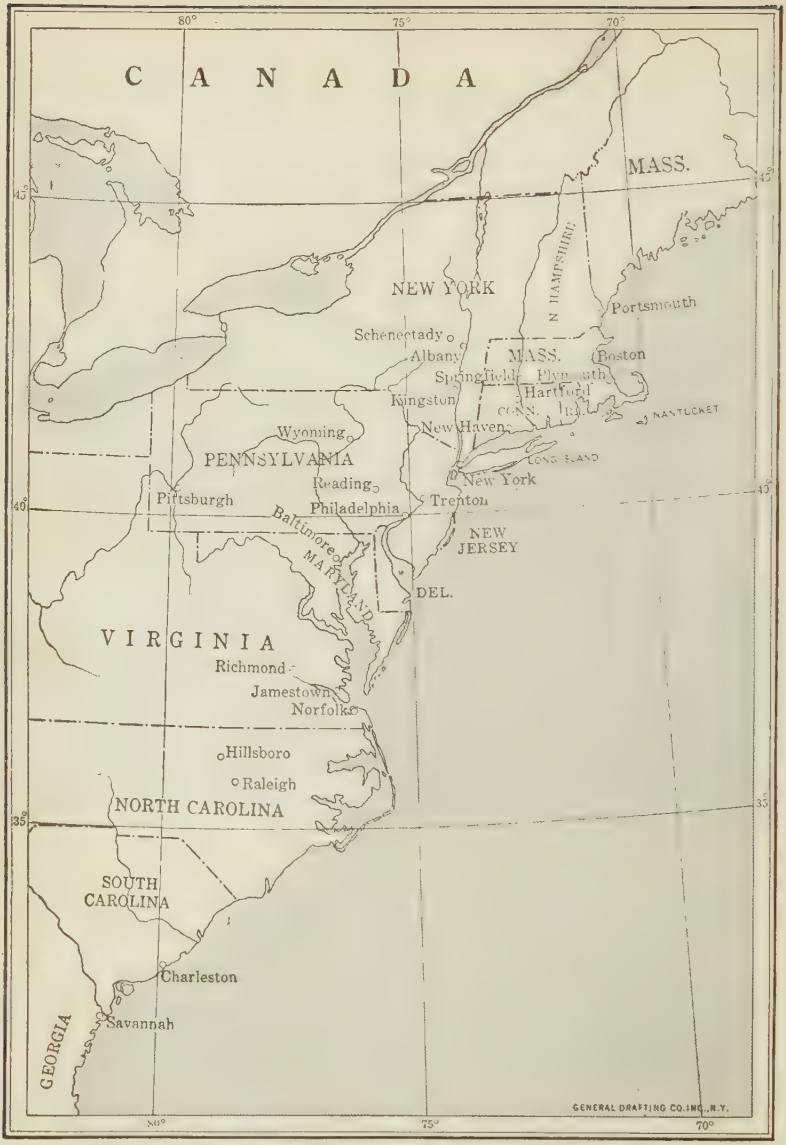
was the *Presbyterians*, who were especially strong in Scotland and the north of Ireland. They counted among their great teachers John Calvin of Geneva and John Knox of Edinburgh. Like the other independents, the Presbyterians were oppressed by the English government. Shortly after the English colo-

From an old print

THE COTTAGE OF JOHN BUNYAN IN ENGLAND

nies were founded, they therefore flocked to the New World also. In New Jersey, Pennsylvania, and the inland sections of the South they were very numerous. They took the lead in the western movement toward the Mississippi.

Another sect that rejected the Established Church was the *Quakers*, or, as they called themselves, the



European Settlements in America

Friends. They followed the teaching of George Fox. One of their leaders, William Penn, founded the colony of Pennsylvania. There the Friends were free to worship God according to "the light" which they had received. They granted this same religious freedom to others.

The dissenters from the Established Church usually combined with their religious views a dislike for the government of England because it tried to force on them the religion made lawful by the parliament. So they carried with them to America political as well as religious ideas. They found it possible even to work with the Catholics, who had founded Maryland, in the great War for American Independence (*First Book*, pp. 55–56).

Results of the Protestant Revolt

Religious Wars. For more than a hundred years Europe was filled with religious wars, civil and international. The Dutch in The Netherlands, then under the rule of the Catholic king of Spain, became Protestants. Soon afterward, they rejected the rule of their sovereign. In a terrible war they won their independence, which was recognized in 1648.

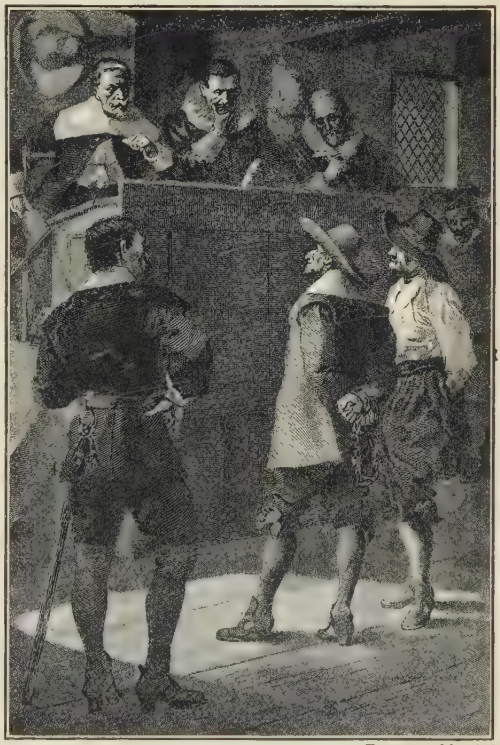
In France, Protestants known as *Huguenots* began to appear shortly after Luther defied the pope, but by stern measures the government kept them from becoming very powerful. Still they were numerous enough to excite the alarm of the Catholics. France was

divided into two parties and civil wars followed. Finally, in 1598, the king issued the *Edict of Nantes*, which gave a certain toleration to the Protestants. This Edict was in force for nearly a hundred years. Then it was revoked by Louis XIV. All Frenchmen had to be Catholics or run the risk of punishment. Huguenots were persecuted. Thousands of them fled to England and Prussia. Others came to America. New Rochelle, in New York, was one of the places founded by Huguenots. It was named after their old home, Rochelle, in France.

For a time after Luther's day the Protestant and Catholic princes in Germany managed to live on fairly good terms. Afterwards, however, they began a bloody strife known as the Thirty Years' War (1618–48), which at length involved France, Spain, Sweden, and Denmark as well. This was a terrible war. Hundreds of German villages were utterly destroyed; some cities lost half or more of their inhabitants; and the whole country was left helpless and poverty-stricken. In the end neither party was victorious. Neither of them could master the other. As a result, toleration for various branches of the Protestant faith was granted in Germany.

Religious Persecution. In addition to open religious wars there were persecutions within each of the countries where religious disputes appeared. The Catholic Church had always required strict obedience to its authority. Long before Protestantism appeared, it

had turned heretics who would not repent over to the government to be punished. This practice the Catholics continued in those countries where they retained their power.



From an old print

ENGLISH JUDGES CONDEMNING PROTESTANT DISSENTERS TO PRISON

Protestants, on the other hand, while they objected to such cruel treatment for themselves, often resorted to it in their own time of triumph. Luther had no more thought of allowing every man to worship God according to his own conscience than had the pope at Rome. The very idea was hateful and dangerous in the sight of both parties in the sixteenth century. Catholics imprisoned, banished, and burned Protestants. In their turn many Protestant sects treated Catholics in the same way. They even punished with the same severity

other Protestants who differed from them. When Henry VIII in England broke with the pope he burned many sweet-spirited and noble Catholics, like Sir Thomas More, who were unable to accept him as the head of the Church. Likewise he put to death equally sweet-spirited and noble Protestants who would not do his will or who sought to make changes in religion which he did not approve. So it happened that thousands of men and women, Catholics and Protestants alike, were ready to flee to America when it was opened for settlement.

When religious persecution died away in western Europe, it was kept up in eastern Europe. The Russians and Poles persecuted the Jews, and the Turks persecuted the Christians. Even in our own time, religious persecution goes on in many regions. Thus for more than three hundred years the desire to escape from religious oppression has been one of the powerful motives that sent emigrants to America.

The Growth of Toleration. As we have said, few of the early Protestant sects believed that every one should have the right to choose his own religious faith or to belong to no church if he so decided. With some exceptions each sect was in fact as eager to compel every person to accept its faith as the Catholic Church had been in the middle ages. The idea of complete religious freedom seemed as distasteful to the early Lutherans and Puritans as it had to the Catholics.

Nevertheless, after centuries of persecution the

spirit of toleration gained ground. Nobler ideas and gentler manners helped. People became weary of the turmoil and hatred born of persecution. Then, as the sects grew in numbers in spite of persecution, no one of them could suppress all the others. Finally, as interest in worldly affairs increased, religious disputes died down. As if by accident rather than by design, the enlightened people of every religious denomination gave up the idea of punishing those who differed from them. They finally adopted the modern notion that "every one has a right to worship God according to the dictates of his conscience."

Though America did not at first escape entirely from the Old World heritage of religious intolerance, it did lead all mankind toward the ideal of religious freedom. The first amendment to our Constitution provided that Congress should make no law "respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof." This clause, adopted in 1791, was a landmark in the long struggle for religious toleration.

Translations of the Bible. The Protestant Reformation brought with it wars and persecutions, but it also aroused a new interest in reading the Bible and other religious books. The Old Testament had been written originally in Hebrew and the New in Greek — both languages which were utterly foreign to the peoples of western Europe. To overcome this difficulty, a translation of the Bible had been made into Latin about the end of the fourth century. This

edition, approved by the Catholic Church, was called the *Vulgate*, because it was in the tongue of the multitude — *vulgus* meaning in Latin "the people." From time to time parts of the Bible had also been translated into German, English, French, and other languages. For example, many long passages had been done into Anglo-Saxon in the reign of Alfred the Great, and the whole Bible was translated about 1383 by the English reformer, John Wyclif.

The revival of learning (p. 147), which gave students a special interest in the Greek language, led them to turn with new zeal to the life of Christ. It was to be found in the New Testament, written in Greek by those who knew him and had labored and suffered with him. Speaking of the Gospels, Erasmus, a leader of the "New Learning," wrote: "Were we to have seen him with our own eyes, we should not have so intimate a knowledge as they give us of Christ, speaking, healing, dying, rising again, as it were in our very presence." Then, in a burst of enthusiasm, he exclaimed: "I wish that they were translated into all languages, so as to be read and understood not only by Scots and Irishmen but even by Saracens and Turks. I long for the day when the husbandman shall sing portions of them as he follows the plow, when the weaver shall hum them to the tune of his shuttle, when the traveler shall while away with their stories the weariness of the journey." The wish was fulfilled, but not always by translators belonging to the Catholic Church.

The great translations into German and English were made by Protestants, who naturally enough gave a Protestant meaning, wherever possible, to the Hebrew and Greek words. Martin Luther, as we have seen, prepared for his followers a German Bible in the language of the common people. About the same time several versions appeared in English. As some confusion arose from the various versions of the original tongues, an official English translation, under the direction of King James I, was published in 1611. This was the famous *King James* or *Authorized version.* For nearly three hundred years it was the accepted English edition of the Holy Scriptures and was used by all English Protestant denominations. The Roman Catholic clergy also brought out an official Catholic version in English known as the Douay Bible.

It is impossible to overestimate the influence of the King James version of the Bible on English life and thought. The masses, who had known the Old and New Testaments only through the teachings of priests, could now read for themselves. For a long time the Bible was almost the only book which the common people had. It was at once their guide to ancient history, their collection of marvelous stories, their record of human trials and sufferings. In it they found words of thanksgiving for joyous occasions and words of solace in hours of death and sorrow.

That was not all. The very language of the English edition made a deep impress upon all English literature.

The translators chose the clear and simple words of everyday usage, and so they set a model of style for English writers of all times. Leaders in American affairs as far apart in centuries as William Penn and Abraham Lincoln found inspiration in the noble thoughts and clear language of the Bible. When Lincoln opened his Gettysburg address with "Four score and seven years ago," he used the old and simple style of the Bible.

The Spread of Education. The Bible was also a book of education. Thousands of humble folk, who had never been in school a day, learned to read in order that they might study it for themselves. An English bishop lamented that "cobblers, tailors, felt-makers and such-like trash" were taking it upon themselves to study the Bible and teach its message to their neighbors.

Whoever has the power to read has open before him a gateway to knowledge which is closed to illiterate persons. Those who learned their letters by poring over the Bible were later able to read the plays of the great Shakespeare, as well as books and pamphlets on politics and other subjects. By seeking knowledge in religious matters, they learned about "the mysteries" of kings and governments. Thus the translations of the Bible helped to prepare the people to govern themselves.

The Reformation also helped greatly in the spread of schools for the masses. In the middle ages, the

idea of giving every one an education was not looked upon as practicable or desirable. The schools were few and colleges were mainly for the training of men who wished to enter the priesthood. As the various Protestant congregations sprang up, however, the members of each were careful to bring up their children in their own faith. Schools were founded to teach children to read the Bible and to instruct them in religious doctrines. Thus the ability to read became more widespread than ever before in human history. Puritans, Presbyterians, Baptists, and other denominations, including the Catholics, all established schools in which their religious views were taught. Every college founded in America in colonial times, except the University of Pennsylvania, was established by a religious denomination to train young men in its faith and services. The natural sciences, like botany, chemistry, and physiology, received no more attention in the first Protestant schools than they had in the universities of the middle ages.

Questions and Problems

I. 1. What is the meaning of the word "Protestant" as applied to the Protestant churches? 2. For how long a time was the Catholic Church supreme in western Europe? (Recall the time of Constantine the Great and consider 1517 as marking the beginning of the Protestant Reformation.) How does this compare with the period from the beginning of the Protestant Reformation to the present time? 3. Why are the names of John Wyclif and John Huss remembered? 4. One complaint against the

Catholic Church was that its property was free from taxation; is church property free from taxation to-day? 5. How did the views of Erasmus differ from those of Wyclif and Huss? 6. Can you think of any reasons that will explain why the revolt against the Church came first from the clergy rather than from laymen? 7. How did Luther's views differ from those of Erasmus? Why is Luther rather than Wyclif or Huss regarded as the founder of the Protestant churches?

II. 1. What were the important differences between the Protestant Reformation in Germany and in England? 2. What is meant by an "Established Church"? In what ways did the Established Church of England resemble the Catholic Church? How did it differ? How did it differ from the Lutheran Church? In America to-day, the Protestant Episcopal Church most closely resembles the Established Church of England. If there is such a church in your community perhaps you can find out some of the ways in which it differs from other Protestant churches; for example, in the conduct of its services, the construction of the church building, the dress of the clergy. 3. How did the Puritans and the Separatists resemble each other? In what important respects did they differ? 4. In what ways did the Baptists, the Presbyterians, and the Quakers differ? 5. Make a list of the religious sects represented in your community. (Probably some of them are not mentioned in this chapter.) If possible, find out something about the origin of these various sects.

III. 1. Give as many reasons as you can to explain why the multiplication of religious sects gave rise to so many wars during the period that we are studying. 2. What is the difference between a "civil" war and an "international" war? Which of the three wars mentioned in the text were civil, and which were international? 3. What is meant by "religious toleration"? 4. In what important ways did intolerance and persecution in Europe influence our country? What American colonies were founded by people who sought religious freedom? 5. People

naturally regard and cherish the idea that they have fought for and suffered for; perhaps you can give some of the reasons that explain why the people of western Europe and of North America now believe so firmly in religious toleration. You might well think of this as an ideal for which a great price has been paid. What was the price? 6. Another great ideal had its birth in the troubled times which we are studying; namely, the ideal of "universal" education — that is, the education of all of the people in at least the rudiments of learning. In what way did the Protestant Reformation help to make a universal knowledge of reading important? What great invention made it possible for interest in religion to have such an effect?

ERA OF THE REFORMATION

Suggestions for Reading

Best — *Merry England.*
Creighton, Louise — *Stories from English History*, xxx–xxxiii, xxxviii; Longmans.
Dale — *Landmarks of British History*, viii.
O'Neill — *The Story of the World*, xxxi.
Van Loon — *The Story of Mankind* (*School edition*), xliv.
Warren — *Stories from English History*, xvii.

CHAPTER X

THE GREAT POLITICAL REVOLUTION IN ENGLAND

The Protestant Reformation, at first, left unchecked the power of kings, landlords, and clergy. Wherever the Catholic Church was overthrown, another church was set up in its stead and the people at large had to accept the new faith as they had the old. In this change, Protestant kings really got more power for a time because they were enriched by the property they took from the Catholic Church. But their sudden gain was destined to be short-lived in England. The Protestant revolt there was followed in the next century by a political revolt against the king himself. This was the first of the great democratic revolutions that have swept through the world during the past three hundred years.

The Old Political and Social Classes in England

The King and the Established Church. The acts of James I helped to start the English political revolution. When he was crowned king of England in 1603, he found himself in a place of great power. He could appoint all the officers high and low without the consent of Parliament. He alone could permit men to form companies

From an old print

AN ENGLISH COUNTRY GENTLEMAN ON THE WAY TO CHURCH; THE PEASANT TAKES OFF HIS HAT

to explore, colonize, or trade beyond the seas. All land which was discovered belonged to him, and he could grant it to individuals or companies at his pleasure. He could issue royal orders which were as binding on his subjects as the laws of Parliament.

The Church of England added to his strength. All Englishmen, as we have seen, had to be members of it and obey its commands. The king appointed the archbishops and bishops, who governed the Church and watched over the clergy of lower rank. Everywhere the Church taught that obedience to the king was obedience to the will of God.

The Nobility. The power of the king was also increased by the help he had from the nobles. They were few in number and no common man could become a noble unless the king raised him to that rank and gave him a title. Much of the land of England, however, was owned by these great lords — dukes, earls, and barons. On their lands they were very powerful, although they could no longer defy the king as their ancestors had done (p. 177). They were not independent. They were courtiers. They held high offices under the king and served him in many ways in war and peace.

The Country Gentlemen and the Merchants. Below the nobility in rank were the large landowners who did not possess noble title. They were usually called "the country gentry." They had large estates, tilled by peasants, and lived in handsome manor houses. They

often served as members of the House of Commons, and there boldly asserted that the king could not tax them without their consent. They were not often seen at the royal court and received few favors from the crown. They were proud and independent in spirit. It was they who led in all efforts to curb the power of the king. From this class came men like Cromwell and

From an old print

THE MANOR HOUSE ON AN ENGLISH ESTATE

Hampden, who, in the days of revolution, defied the king. From this class also came men like John Winthrop and John Endicott, who migrated to the New World and made the beginnings of a new nation there.

Even more independent in spirit were the English merchants. They grew steadily in numbers as the

trade of England multiplied. They did not own vast landed estates. Their wealth was in shops, warehouses, and ships. Their ranks were not closed to outsiders, for any successful business man could secure a place among them. The seats of the merchants were in the towns like London, Bristol, Plymouth, and Manchester. Representatives of the towns in Parliament were usually merchants or neighboring landed gentry.

These two classes, welded together, led in the revolution that overthrew the king in 1649. In fact, they made themselves the ruling classes of England before the end of the century.

The Other Ranks. Among the masses there were three distinct groups. There were, first, the *yeomen*, who were the free and proud owners of small farms. Sometimes they worked with their own hands at the plow and at threshing.

The second and most numerous group was composed of the agricultural laborers. They were descendants of the former serfs. Serfdom itself had disappeared in England, and the former bondmen had become landless men who worked for wages on the great estates. They were usually poor and wretched, and just at this time their lot was becoming harder. The landlords found it more profitable to grow wool than to raise grain, and turned their fields into pastures. Thousands of acres of land were withdrawn from cultivation ; laborers and their families, therefore, had to leave the soil for the poorhouse or for a life of semistarvation in the

towns. The writings of this time are burdened with complaints about the "surplus of people." Sending people to America was therefore looked upon as a way of getting rid of the surplus population.

It was from the yeoman stock and the class of agricultural laborers that most of the immigrants to America were first drawn.

More fortunate than the agricultural laborers were the artisans, the skilled workmen of the towns. English trade grew by leaps and bounds after the discovery of the water routes to India and the New World. English cloth and cutlery were famous in Russia and India for their quality and finish. English weavers, dyers, cutlers, potters, and other skilled workmen supplied the goods which were exchanged for spices, tea, sugar, and the commodities of the East and West. The artisans, like the merchants, were often independent in spirit. Their numbers increased as foreign trade grew. They made the articles which the merchants carried to distant lands. Anything that helped trade helped them. Anything that interfered with trade injured them. Naturally they took the side of the merchants, who wanted the king to let them alone. Among the officers in the revolutionary army which overthrew King Charles I there were tailors, brewers, linen drapers, weavers, and silk merchants. Since the artisans usually had little difficulty in finding employment in England, they did not at first take kindly to migration to America.

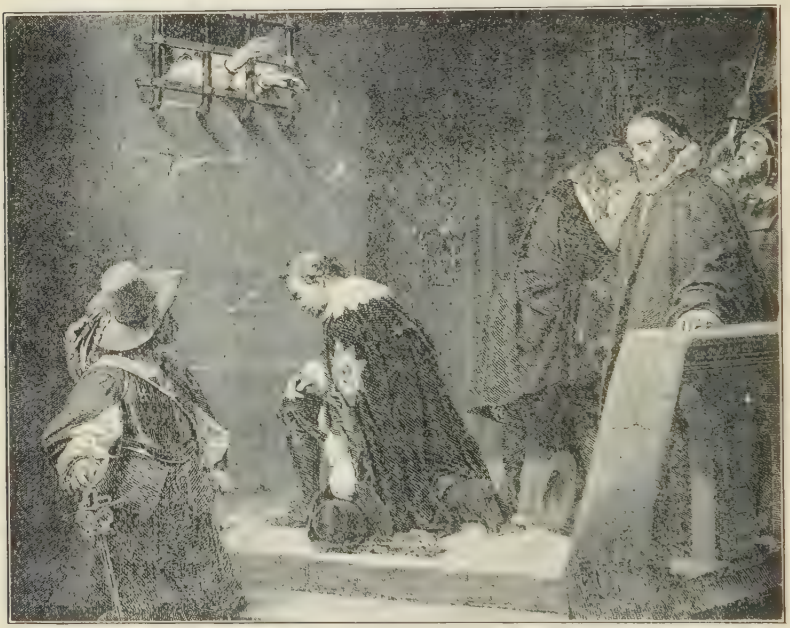
A Century of Revolution

The Arbitrary Conduct of Kings — Divine Right. The English people in general seem to have been fairly well contented when James I came to the throne in 1603. If he had been moderate in conduct, mild in speech, and willing to make terms with the people, there doubtless would have been little trouble in England. But James and his son, Charles I, whose combined reigns lasted from 1603 to 1649, were poorly fitted to deal with a nation that had any pride.

Both of them taught and practiced the doctrine of divine right — that kings had power from God and could do no wrong. James I was especially haughty in talking about his own "majesty." "The state of monarchy," he informed Parliament, "is the supremest thing on earth, for kings are not only God's lieutenants upon earth and sit upon God's throne, but even by God himself they are called Gods." That was not enough for him. He added: "As to dispute what God may do is blasphemy, so it is sedition in subjects to dispute what a king may do in the height of his power." No one could teach, preach, or publish a book without a license from royal officers, and anyone who questioned the king's rights and claims was liable to severe punishment.

In addition to teaching the doctrine of divine right, James and Charles both treated their subjects haughtily and harshly. They levied taxes without the consent

of Parliament. They compelled their wealthy subjects to lend them money. They imprisoned men like John Hampden who would not pay taxes laid by royal order. They encouraged the Church of England to hunt down and turn over for punishment those who refused to



From an old print

One of King Charles I's Officers, Condemned by Parliament, on the Way to the Scaffold

obey its commands. They dismissed judges who failed to carry out their decrees. If Parliament complained, the members were sent home.

The House of Commons Opposes the King. Leadership in opposing the king fell to the House of Commons.

In that body the country gentlemen and the merchants were masters, and to them taxation without their consent was especially hateful. They firmly but respectfully informed the king that they would not grant him large sums of money while he treated them as if they had no rights. Since they held the purse strings, they compelled him, in 1628, to approve the *Petition of Right* — a document often placed with Magna Carta (p. 177) among the great landmarks of English history.

In the Petition of Right, three important principles were laid down: (1) no one should be imprisoned without a regular trial; (2) a royal decree setting up the rule of army officers should be revoked; and (3) taxes, loans, and gifts collected without consent of Parliament were unlawful.

King Charles made these promises only to break them. He then ruled for eleven years without calling Parliament together. When at length he needed money and summoned Parliament, in 1640, he found it in an angry mood. It had two of the king's closest advisers put to death; it set free the victims of the king's anger who were in prison; it abolished two of the high courts that had helped the king to oppress his subjects. Finally Parliament demanded control over the army, which the king claimed as his own.

Civil War. — Oliver Cromwell. Charles, angry and frightened, refused to give up his power over his soldiers He knew that, if he lost the army, he would be helpless. So he decided to fight for his rights and raised

the royal battle flag in 1642. The northwestern part of his kingdom came to his aid; that is, the old and

From an old print

CHARLES I CALLING UPON HIS SOLDIERS AT THE OPENING OF THE CIVIL WAR

feudal part. Against him were the more populous counties and the thriving towns.

Under the leadership of a stern warrior, Oliver Cromwell, the revolutionary army overcame the king's troops in a civil war. King Charles was taken prisoner, tried, and executed. A Commonwealth, or Republic, was then proclaimed in England.

The Religious Revolt. United with the revolt against the king was another revolt against the Church. That, too, came gradually. When James ascended the throne, there was already in England a small party of reformers who wanted to make minor changes in the church services. As we have seen (p. 223) they were known as Puritans. They handed James a respectful petition on reform, but he scornfully laughed at them. "If this be all your party hath to say," he shouted at the spokesmen of the Puritans, "I will make them conform themselves or else harry them out of the land."

By this sharp speech, says the English historian Gardner, James "sealed his own fate and that of England forever." And it might be added, "the fate of New England as well," for the people whom he "harried" out of the land went across the sea to seek liberty of worship for themselves.

The Puritans, though surprised at the king's curt refusal to listen, kept on demanding reforms. They were joined in their attacks on the Established Church by another group — the Separatists or Independents (p. 223). The Puritans wanted to make minor changes in the Church; the Separatists rejected that

Church entirely. Though they differed in their views, Puritans and Independents united in opposing the control exercised over them by the king and Church. They were both persecuted and punished. More than one man had his ears cut off and his cheeks branded with hot irons for attacking the Church. Men who were imprisoned for refusing to pay illegal taxes found as their companions in jail men who held unlawful religious opinions. So religion and politics were combined. Thus the revolt against the king became a religious revolt. When the monarchy was pulled down in 1649, the power of the Church was broken.

The Dictatorship of Oliver Cromwell. After the monarchy and the Church were overturned, the revolutionists had to face the difficult task of creating a form of government for themselves. Then their troubles began in earnest. Before long, they were divided among themselves and began to quarrel one with another. Some wanted only a few changes in the English form of government. Others wanted many changes.

In the end, the great soldier who had led the revolution, Oliver Cromwell, came to the top as dictator He ruled England with an iron hand; so there was no liberty, after all. He punished those who would not obey him, collected taxes at will, and governed in a ruthless fashion. While he lived, he kept the government going. After his death, in 1658, his poor, weak son was unable to control England. Two years later the elder son of Charles I was called to the throne as Charles II.

From an old print

OLIVER CROMWELL, THE DICTATOR

The Chastened Monarch. The crowning of Charles II could not undo the work of Cromwell and the revolution. The Church of England was "established" again. The bones of Cromwell were dug up and hanged in chains, but the spirit of revolt was still abroad in

From an old print

KING CHARLES II GREETED BY HIS SUBJECTS ON BEING CALLED TO THE THRONE

the land. Many of the men who had helped to put Charles I to death were executed, but the methods of James I and Charles I would never be tolerated again in England.

Charles II was lazy and loved pleasure. He was

careful not to walk in the footsteps of his father and grandfather. He said that he wanted to keep his crown on his head and his head on his shoulders. He succeeded. For twenty-five years he reigned, and then died peacefully in his bed.

James II and the Second Revolution. James II, Charles' brother and successor, was a different sort of man. He was a sincere Catholic and earnestly strove to bring England back to the old faith. At the same time, he was as harsh in manner as his father, Charles I. He laid taxes, arrested his subjects, and set aside laws as if he were a czar rather than a king under the control of Parliament. After three years of his rule, his discontented subjects rose in their wrath and expelled him. To save his neck, he fled from England in 1688. Parliament called to the throne his niece, Mary, and her husband, William, the Prince of Orange in Holland.

The Results of the Revolutions

The Supremacy of Parliament. Before giving the crown to William and Mary, Parliament passed a law, known as the *Bill of Rights*, which set forth the chief results of the revolution. This bill is as famous in English history as the Great Charter (p. 177) and the Petition of Right (p. 247).

The Bill of Rights first set forth the evil deeds of James II. Then it declared that the king could not set aside the laws, levy taxes, or keep a standing army

in time of peace without the consent of Parliament. The Bill also declared certain rights of persons. It proclaimed freedom of speech for members of Parliament, the right of the people to petition the king, and the right of Protestant subjects to bear arms. It forbade cruel and unusual punishments and excessive fines. Some of the very language of this Bill of Rights is to be found in the Constitution of the United States, especially in the amendments.

The great document was read by an agent of Parliament to William and Mary, and they agreed to abide by it. Thus Parliament became supreme in England. "We accept what you have offered us," said William. Divine right was dead in England. Shortly afterwards, an act of Parliament was passed granting religious toleration to all except Catholics and Unitarians. Henceforward Protestants could hold religious meetings and worship God according to their consciences. Many years were to pass, however, before religious freedom was granted to all.

The English Constitution. It was by such laws as Magna Carta and the Bill of Rights that the English system of government was fixed. The English people never held a national convention to draft a complete constitution. A great deal of their plan of government is not written down at all. It is unwritten, that is, consists of customs that have grown up through the years. That part which is written consists of important laws like the Bill of Rights.

The Meaning of the Revolutions for America. During this long and bitter contest in England every English colony in America, except Georgia, was founded (*First Book*, pp. 51–78). The religious disputes before and during the first revolution drove many Puritans and Separatists to New England. On the other hand, while the Puritan party was supreme under Cromwell, many of the king's friends, *Cavaliers* as they were called, were forced to flee to Virginia for safety. Henceforward, England's interest was to be mainly colonial and commercial, and her activities were to spread to every part of the world.

The revolt against the harsh power of the king in England also meant more freedom for the American colonies to grow up in their own way and to manage their own affairs. James II had attempted to subdue the American colonies as well as his subjects at home. The Americans therefore rejoiced when they heard of his overthrow. With James II passed away the last arbitrary English king for many a year. Seventy years, in fact, were to pass before another English ruler undertook to meddle personally with American affairs.

After William and Mary were dead, the crown passed to Mary's sister, Anne. Then it went to George I, a great-grandson of James I, a German prince who did not even know the English language and to the end cared only for his German home. His son, George II, learned to speak English with an accent, but never undertook to rule harshly in England. He married

a German wife, and preferred to live in his German palace. During the reigns of these sovereigns, that is, from 1688 to 1760, the English colonists in America were free to go their own way as far as the king was concerned. Not until George III came to the throne, in 1760, was royal meddling in American affairs renewed.

How the Ideas of American Independence Took Form. The English revolution of 1688 not only weakened the power of the king at home; it proclaimed ideas of human rights which were many years later used by Americans in their revolt against George III.

These ideas were best set forth in the works of John Locke, a writer of singular power. He was the son of a Puritan gentleman, a graduate of Oxford University and a student of government. About the time that James II was overthrown, Locke published a book in which he attacked the theory of divine right and asserted, instead, the rights of the people. He declared that men were born with a right to freedom and equal opportunity; that the end of government was the good of mankind. Then he went on to say that whenever any government violated the life, liberty, and property of the people, the people had a right to abolish it and establish a new one that suited them better.

Here, in other words, are the doctrines set forth in the American Declaration of Independence. Thomas Jefferson, the author of the Declaration (*First Book*,

pp. 132–136), was familiar with the writings of Locke. From them, no doubt, he drew many of his ideas. So the defense of the English revolution of 1688 was to become the defense of the American revolution of 1776.

Europe Aroused. On the continent of Europe, as well as in the American colonies, the English revolution made a great stir. Kings and princes were shocked at the uprising of the English people. It was the first disturbance of the kind since the days of ancient Rome and there was no telling how it would end. "The news of the king's death," says the historian Green, "was received throughout Europe with a thrill of horror. The Czar of Russia drove the English envoy from his court. The ambassador of France was withdrawn on the proclamation of the republic. Holland took the lead in open acts of hostility."

Though kings and princes were shocked at the English revolution, the people of Europe became interested in English ideas. In a hundred years, the king, nobles, and clergy of France were to be overthrown just as they had been in England. All the famous French thinkers who prepared the minds of the French people for their uprising either studied in England or were familiar with English writings. The works of Locke were translated into French and studied by French popular leaders. The English ideas of (1) a free press, (2) a limited monarchy, (3) a supreme Parliament representing the nation, and (4) a moderate

religious toleration spread far and wide in France. Just one century after William and Mary faced the English Parliament and agreed to abide by its laws, the French king, Louis XVI, faced the French nation and learned that he was no longer master in his realm.

Questions and Exercises

I. 1. What is the difference between a religious revolt or revolution and a political revolution? Which of these two kinds of revolution was represented by the American War for Independence? 2. In what ways did the revolt against the Church increase the power of the kings? 3. State the important differences among the following ranks or classes in England: the king, the nobility, the landed gentry, the merchants, the yeomen, the artisans, the farm laborers. Which of these classes would be likely to side with the king in case of a quarrel, and why? Which would be likely to unite against the king?

II. 1. What is meant by the "divine right" of kings? Try to imagine what life in our country would be like if we had a king who believed in "divine right" and who ruled as James I and Charles I ruled England. 2. Why did the landed gentry and the merchants especially dislike to have the king levy taxes as he pleased? Why would they be likely to object to this more than the yeomen, the artisans, and the laborers? 3. Of the three important principles laid down in the Petition of Right, which one do you consider the most important, and why? 4. How did it happen that the political revolt in England became also a religious revolt? 5. We all agree that Americans should know something about their own great heroes like Washington and Franklin; are there any reasons why Americans should also remember the name of Oliver Cromwell? 6. What is meant by a "dictator"? Do you think that a "dictatorship" like that of Oliver Cromwell is ever justified? Give reasons for your answer

III. 1. What liberties did the people of England gain through the Bill of Rights? What important powers were thereafter lost to the kings? 2. How does the English constitution differ from the constitution of our country? 3. How did the English Revolution influence American history? 4. In studying chapter ix, we found that two great ideals grew up after the Protestant Reformation, — the ideal of religious toleration and the ideal of universal education. In the present chapter, what other ideals have been seen to take form? 5. "Freedom of speech" is generally thought of as the right to criticize the acts of those in positions of authority, especially in the government; why was this an advance over the "divine right" of kings? Does "freedom of speech" mean that anyone can say anything that he pleases? What might happen to a man who said something untrue about another person with the result that this person's reputation was injured? Even to-day it is generally believed that "freedom of speech" in time of war must be restricted; give reasons that justify this belief. 6. Another ideal established by the English revolution was the one that played so important a part in the American War for Independence, — "Taxation without representation is tyranny." Explain the meaning of this. Are you "represented" in the bodies that levy taxes in this country? How? 7. A third ideal might be called "humaneness in government." Both the Bill of Rights and our own Constitution forbid "cruel and unusual punishments." What punishments mentioned in this chapter as having been practiced by the English kings could not be inflicted by courts of law in our country to-day? 8. Still another ideal is represented by the "right of trial by jury." What is a "jury"? Why is a trial by jury likely to be fairer than a trial by a single judge?

Suggestions for Reading

Creighton — *Stories from English History*, xxxix–xlii.
Dale — *Landmarks of British History*, ix.

Marshall, H. E. — *Through Great Britain and Ireland with Cromwell;* Stokes.
O'Neill — *The Story of the World*, xxxiv.
Van Loon — *The Story of Mankind* (*School edition*), xlv, li.
Warren — *Stories from English History*, xxvii–xxviii, xxxii–xl.

CHAPTER XI

THE RIVALRY OF EUROPEAN NATIONS

The Influence of Discovery and World Commerce. The age of the Protestant Reformation and the English revolution was also an age of vast changes in the commerce and industry of Europe and in the life of the people. Huge fortunes were made out of the trade opened by Columbus, da Gama, and Cortez. As most of the profits went to merchants and traders, the business classes grew in power. At length they more than rivaled in wealth and numbers the nobles and the clergy. Their profits, added to the gold and silver drawn from the mines of the New World, furnished the capital for business enterprises on a huge scale.

The amount of money in the hands of the people was larger than ever before. Many a serf, by the sale of farm produce, was able to pay his landlord in cash and thus became a renter instead of a bondman. Some of the serfs, by careful saving, managed to buy their plots of land outright. So free peasants began to take the place of people bound to the soil. At the same time, the money in circulation helped business in the towns. The demand for manufactured goods increased, and so did the number of artisans. Then began the drift

of the people to the towns in search of employment — a drift that has kept up steadily until our own day.

Commerce, while making these changes within the nations, also became a powerful cause of wars among them. Princes had long fought over territory in

From an old print

A Sugar Mill in the Tropics in the Eighteenth Century

Europe. Now whole nations were to wage wars for territory and trade in all parts of the world for tea, sugar, coffee, and spices.

The chief rivals in this new form of warfare were five in number. (1) *The Portuguese.* As we have seen,

CHIEF EUROPEAN RIVALS

they led in the work of exploration. They opened the waterway to India and built up a rich trade there. They also founded the colony of Brazil in the New World. Portugal, however, lost her lead in 1580 when she was conquered by Spain. (2) *The Spaniards.* Through the exploits of her own seamen, Spain claimed nearly all of the New World and enjoyed most of the East Indian trade. By conquering Portugal, her power and possessions were greatly increased. (3) *The Dutch.* The people of The United Netherlands were once subjects of the king of Spain; but, as we have said, they finally revolted and became the rivals of Spain in trade. They sent their first expedition to India in 1595. They seized many of the trading posts formerly held in the East Indies by the Portuguese and they have managed to hold some of them to the present time. (4) *The French.* The king of France, not to be behind his neighbors, sent his sailors west and east and laid claim to much of North America and to parts of India. (5) *The English.* Though they came late upon the scene, the English soon surpassed all their rivals in the number of their merchants, sailors, and battleships. By building a mighty navy, England became mistress of the seas — the greatest sea power that the world had ever seen.

The Commercial Triumph of England

Victory over the Spanish. The English king had sent John Cabot across the Atlantic five years after

Columbus made his first voyage (*First Book*, pp. 26–29); but nearly a hundred years passed before the English people began to trade and form colonies.

When the English finally began to go abroad, they turned their attention to America, where the Spanish

From an old print

A Spanish Mission in California, Built when Spain Ruled the Southwest

were making huge fortunes. Defying the king of Spain, English sailors raided his towns in the West Indies and Central and South America. They attempted to plant colonies in parts of North America which he claimed. One of them, Sir Francis Drake, sailed all the way around the world (1577–80), looting

Spanish ships and trading posts as he went (*First Book*, pp. 38–44).

The king of Spain could not contain his wrath when he heard of Drake's exploits, and made ready for war. In 1588, he sent a powerful fleet of battleships, the *Armada*, to the English Channel to drive his English rivals from the sea. Instead of winning a great victory, the Spaniards suffered a terrible defeat (*First Book*, pp. 45–47). Spanish sea power was badly crippled and the English no longer feared it.

Still, Spain managed to hold most of her colonies until the nineteenth century. She held for a long time all of America from what is now the southern part of the United States down to the tip of South America, except Brazil, which was Portuguese. She owned Cuba and most of the West Indies. She also held the Philippines and other islands in the East (*First Book*, pp. 192, 372–375).

The Triumph of the English over the Dutch. The Dutch, as well as the English, profited from the downfall of the Spanish Armada. They too were mortal enemies of the Spanish. They rapidly pushed forward their trade with India and made huge sums of money by carrying goods to England for sale. Seeing large profits going to their Dutch rivals, the English in 1651 passed a law against them, known as the *Navigation Act*. This law forbade foreigners to carry into England in their ships any goods except those which they had grown or made themselves.

Within twenty-five years, there were three wars between England and Holland. In the second of these contests, the English wrested from the Dutch their rich province of New Netherland in America. In

From an old print

A View of New Amsterdam in New Netherland

1664, the old governor at New Amsterdam surrendered with a heavy heart to the British and lowered his flag. New Netherland became New York (*First Book*, pp. 65–73).

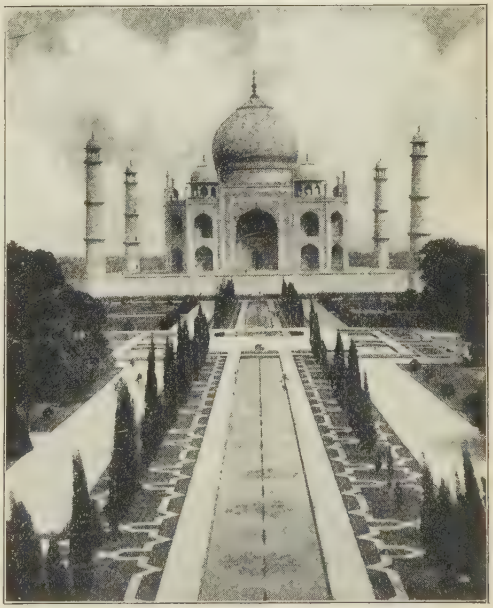
Still the Dutch were not daunted; their fleet swept up the Thames and burned English war vessels even at the docks. The English paid back their foes for this defeat in a few years. They joined the French in a war on The Netherlands, which proved very costly to the Dutch in men and money.

After this affair, the Dutch could no longer hope to rival the naval power of England. Still they were permitted to retain many of their islands in the East Indies, including Java and Sumatra. They held, until 1815, the Cape of Good Hope, which they had seized many years before. For a long time after the close of the third war, in 1674, the English and Dutch were at peace. Indeed, when the Prince of Orange became king of England, as William III (p. 253), the two nations united in wars on a common rival, the king of France.

The Conflict between England and France in India and North America

India in the Year 1600. When the English first began to trade in the East, India, a vast peninsula jutting out from southern Asia, was a great empire. The land was occupied by tens of millions of people mainly engaged in tilling the soil. There were many cities filled with wonderful temples and palaces. There were libraries stocked with books written by some of the world's wisest thinkers. Indian weavers made silks and linen finer than any European artisans could

make. Rich Indian merchants and princes had huge stores of gold, silver, and precious stones. In a word, India was a highly civilized country. The various peoples of India, however, differed in race and language. They were held together as one nation merely by the power of a strong emperor, the Great Mogul, as he was called by the English.



Taj Mahal, a Marvelous Tomb Built by an Indian Emperor for His Wife

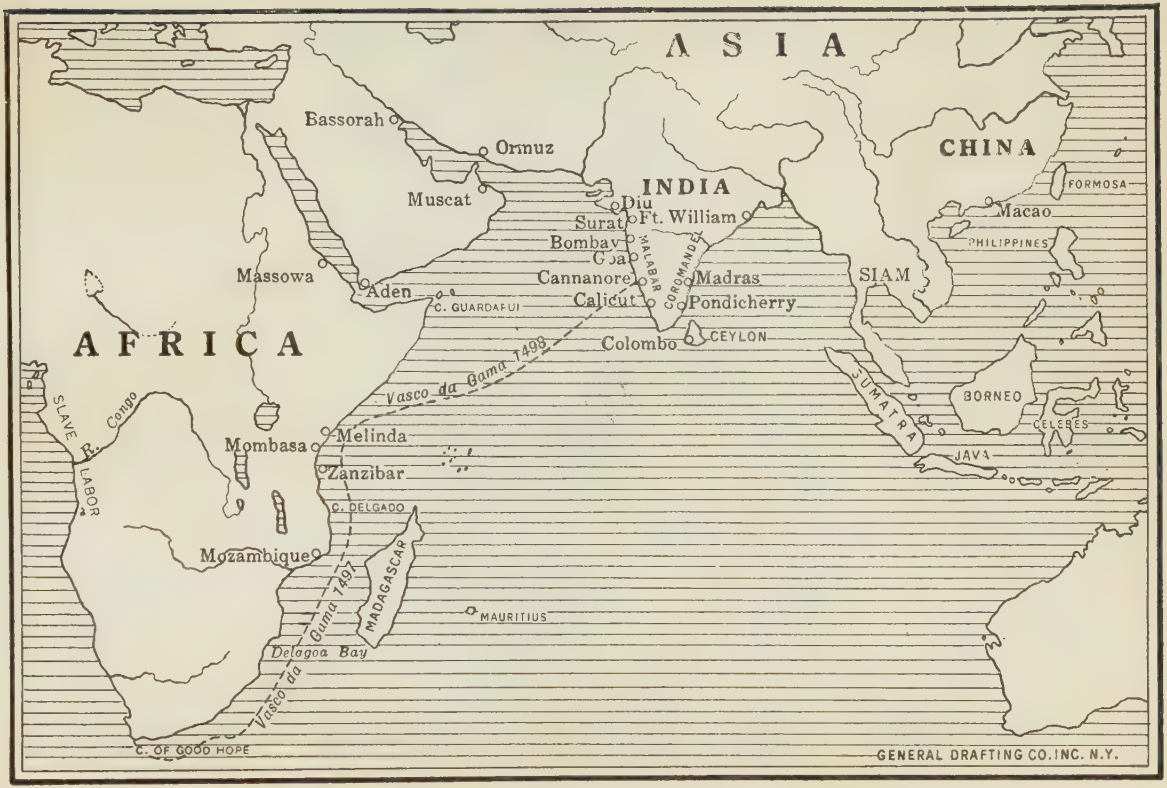
The English and French Gain a Foothold. In 1600, some English merchants formed an East India Company to trade in the Far East. Soon they were sending fleet after fleet of merchant ships around the Cape of Good Hope to Indian ports. The newcomers were welcomed by the natives and were permitted to build *factories*, or warehouses, in certain cities. The Great Mogul ordered his governors to "give them freedom answerable to their desires, to sell, buy, and transport into their country at their pleasure." The

Dutch and the Portuguese, who were already in India, could do nothing but make the best of the situation.

Likewise, when the French merchants came in 1669, they too were allowed to trade by the Mogul, and to build their warehouses as the other Europeans had done before them. By the opening of the eighteenth century, the merchants of the rival European nations were doing a thriving business in tea, silk, and other Indian goods.

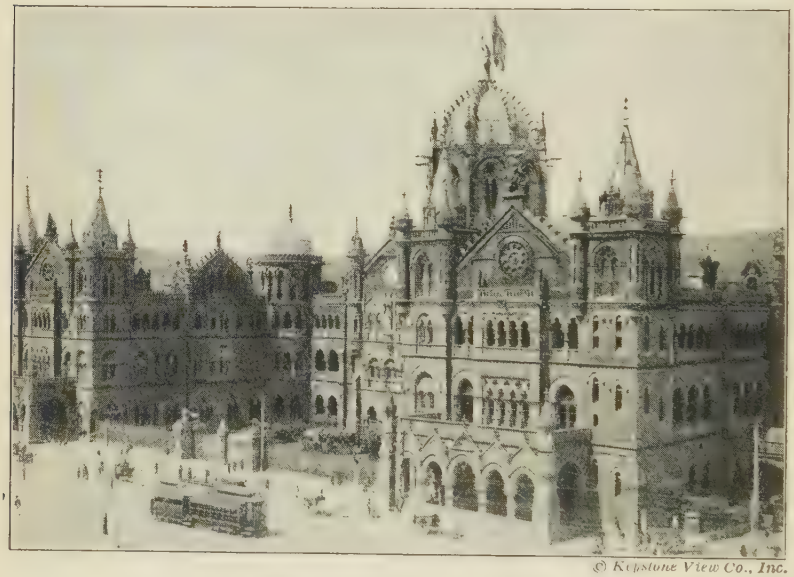
The Decline of the Mogul Empire. While the Mogul empire lasted, the European traders in India could go about safely and transact business without fear of robbers or tax gatherers. This peaceful state of affairs came to an end in 1707. In that year Arungzebe, the last of the great Indian emperors, died, leaving no son strong enough to hold together the vast heritage. Then the empire began to dissolve. Local princes, nawabs (nabobs), and rajahs, like feudal lords in Europe in the middle ages, declared their independence. At once, they began to struggle one with another to gain more territory. India became a scene of disorder and warfare like Europe after the fall of Rome.

The English Conquest of India. Both the English and the French in India were quick to see their chance. They soon learned that a powerful army could conquer all India, section by section. The French governor, Dupleix (pronounced *Duplex*), fortified the town of Pondicherry. He then organized bands of native soldiers, called by the English *sepoys*, and, in 1741, began



EUROPEANS IN THE ORIENT

a career of conquest. About the same time an English leader, Robert Clive, determined to gain all he could for the English East India Company. Whenever England and France were at war in Europe, and sometimes when they were not, their agents in India fought for mastery over the crumbling Mogul empire.



© Keystone View Co., Inc.

The Modern Railway Station at Bombay, India

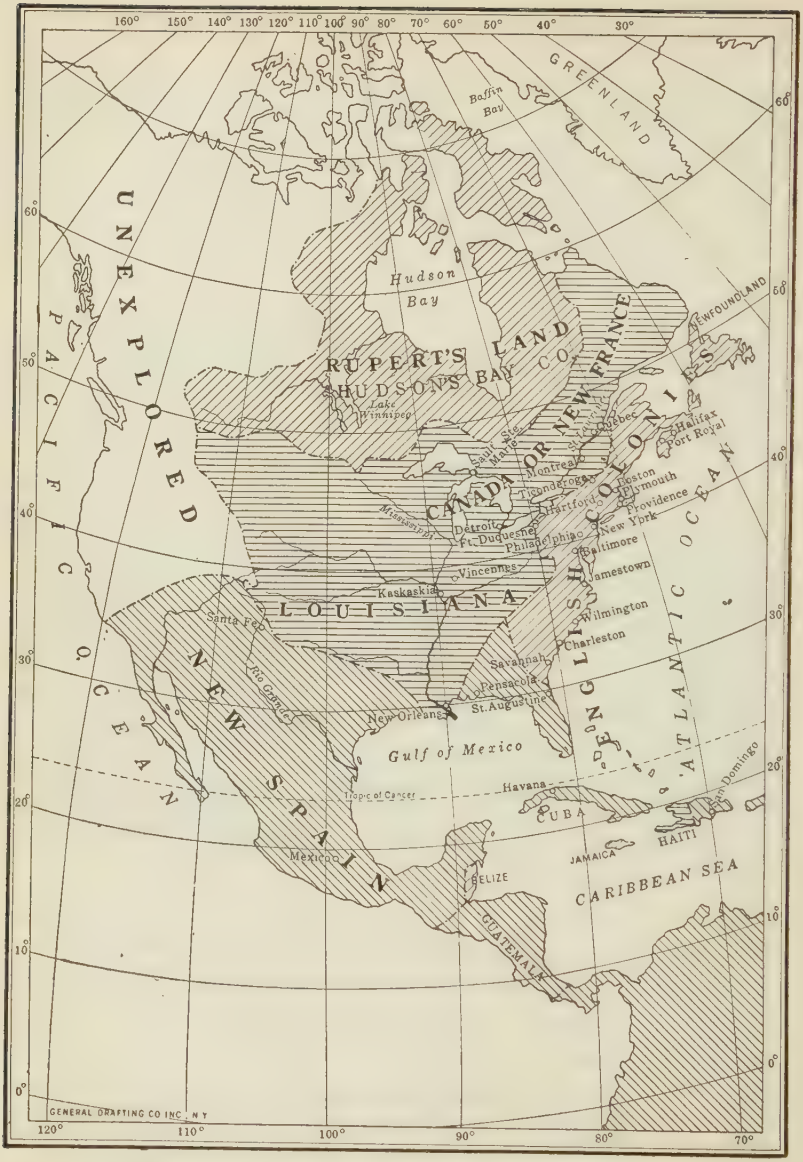
In the Seven Years' War (1756–63), the triumph of the English was quick and final. The French were defeated and driven out of India. They were allowed to keep a few trading centers, but they had to give up all hope of subduing India.

That task was undertaken by the English. By a long

and gradual process, they overcame one Indian prince after another until the whole Mogul empire passed under their control; rather, we should say under the control of the English East India Company. Thus the agents of a trading company became the rulers of an empire. They ruled it until a terrible native revolt, known as the *Sepoy Rebellion*, broke out in 1857. Then the English government set aside the Company and took over the control of Indian affairs itself. About twenty years later, Queen Victoria, with pomp and ceremony, was proclaimed "Empress of India."

The Triumph of the English in Canada. The contest in India was only one part of the mighty struggle between the English and the French over foreign possessions. They waged war upon each other on the banks of the St. Lawrence as well as on the banks of the Ganges.

While the English were building their thirteen colonies on the Atlantic coast, the French occupied Canada (*First Book*, pp. 83–92). From their base in Canada, French pioneers explored the Great Lakes, the Ohio Valley, and the Mississippi basin. They took possession of the land and named it Louisiana in honor of the Grand Monarch, Louis XIV. They founded towns at Montreal and at New Orleans and built forts here and there in the vast wilderness between these two towns. They threatened the western borders of the English colonies, especially Virginia and Pennsylvania.



British and French Rivals in North America

It was on this border that the French and Indian War broke out. In 1755 occurred the defeat of General Braddock, the English commander (*First Book*, pp. 92–101). From the forests of Pennsylvania the war spread to Europe, where it was known as the Seven Years' War. The English minister, William Pitt, bent every energy to bring ruin upon France, and was successful.

At the end of the war in 1763, Canada and most of the territory east of the Mississippi passed under the British flag. Well could Pitt boast that England was victorious at once in America and in India, "the umpire of the continent, the mistress of the sea." As colonial powers, the Dutch were humbled, the Spanish reduced to a low rank, and the French crippled by the triumphant British on land and sea. Proudly could the English historian write: "The Atlantic was dwindling into a mere strait within the British empire."

The Balance of Power in Europe

How the Idea Arose. The wars over trade and territory in all parts of the world were accompanied, as we have hinted, by wars in Europe itself. This was of course nothing new. From the downfall of the Roman empire onward, war had been the chief business of kings and princes. The trade with lands beyond the seas, discovered by the explorers, only gave new reasons for fighting. The rulers of Europe only found fresh excuses for pouncing upon their neighbors and

seizing their territory. Wars became more deadly and more costly than ever, and there was always danger that some one country, like Rome of old, might become supreme over all Europe.

In this state of affairs, diplomats invented a scheme known as "the balance of power." It was their idea to form alliances among nations in such a way as to prevent any one of them from becoming the master of all Europe. It was cold-blooded business. Kings made alliances and broke them with as much ease as they changed their clothes. They embraced a brother king one year and waged war on him the following year, if he became too powerful. Soldiers fought under one flag one year and under another flag the next year — with equal zeal. Such was the chief diplomatic interest of England, Spain, France, Holland, and Austria for nearly three centuries. In the eighteenth century two new powers came upon the scene: Prussia, under the Hohenzollerns; and Russia, under the Romanoffs.

England and the Balance of Power. In this game, England played a peculiar part. English kings had once fought in France with a hope of winning French territory, but they had long ago given up that project. Still, England had a keen interest in the balance of power in Europe. In the first place, she knew that if any king became supreme on the continent, he would soon attempt to cross the Channel and invade her island home. In the second place, England was often at war with Spain, Holland, and France over

foreign trade and territories. Thus she was deeply concerned in all quarrels that promised to increase her possessions in India or North America or to enlarge her trade at the expense of her rivals. To trace the history of the balance of power, therefore,

Western Europe in the Seventeenth Century

we must go over in another way the period which we have just treated.

The Grand Alliance of 1689 against France. After the decline of Spain and Holland, England's greatest

rival in Europe, as we have seen, was France. Under an ambitious and warlike king, Louis XIV (1643–1715), France sought to become a world power. Besides starting colonies in various parts of the world, Louis tried to annex some of the land now included in Belgium. That brought him into a conflict with the Spanish king, to whom the territory coveted by Louis then belonged. Louis was also bent upon adding to France lands to the east as far as the Rhine River. That aroused the ire of several German princes and particularly of the ruler of Austria.

The king of England, William III, hearing about Louis' plans, set to work to defeat them. He brought Holland, Spain, and Austria into a combination against France. England commanded the sea and sent troops to the continent to aid her allies in attacking France on the landward side. The proud Louis, after eight years of fighting, was forced to make a humiliating peace.

The Grand Alliance of 1701 against France and Spain. It was not long, however, before a new cause of war arose. In 1700, the childless king of Spain died, leaving his immense realms in the Old World and the New to a grandson of Louis XIV. Thus both France and Spain were in the hands of one royal family. Both were European powers of high rank. Both held great domains in the New World. Both were rivals of Great Britain for trade in the Far East and the Far West.

The peril to the English empire was undoubtedly great, and English statesmen were quick to scent the danger. The peril was equally great for the Dutch and the Austrians. So by skillful management William III was able to unite England, Holland, and Austria in an alliance against France and Spain in a long war that broke out in 1701 and lasted until 1713. This conflict was known as the *War of the Spanish Succession.*

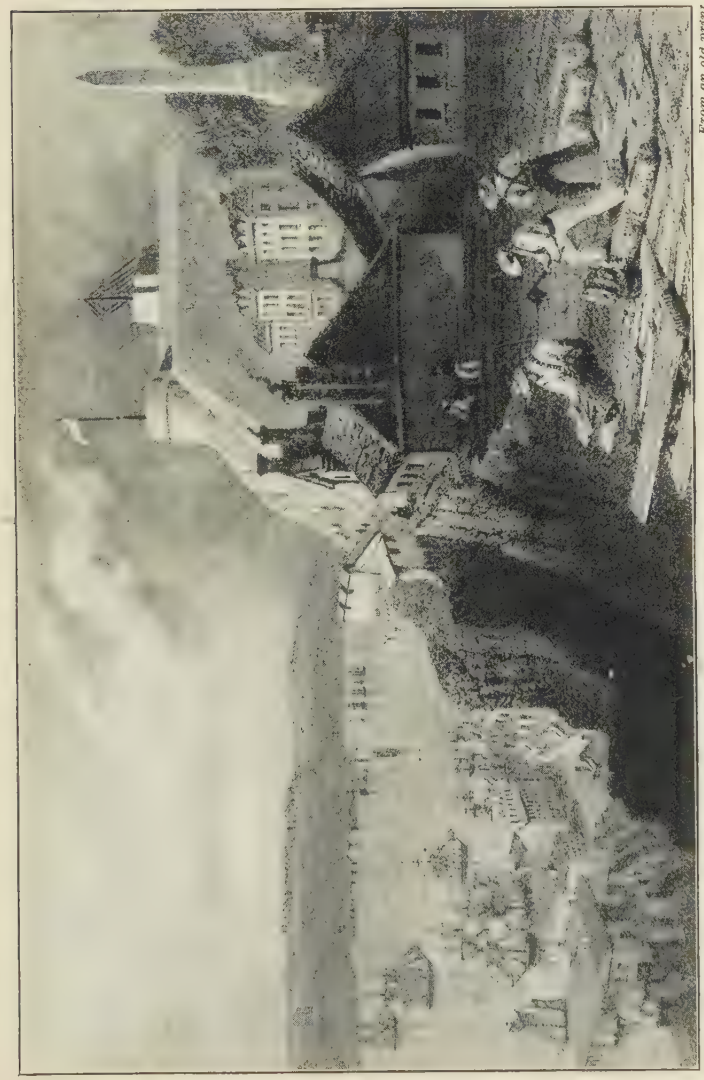
When peace came at last, England was amply rewarded. The fear that Spain and Spanish America might be united with France had been the chief reason for the war. That fear was now removed. It was agreed that the crowns of Spain and France should never be united. In addition England obtained from France Newfoundland, Acadia, and Hudson's Bay in America. She wrested from Spain Gibraltar, the fortress that guards the entrance to the Mediterranean, and Minorca, an island not far away.

England and Prussia against France, Austria, and Spain. Distracted Europe was not to enjoy peace very long. In 1740, Frederick the Great, the king of Prussia, and Louis XV, the king of France, united in a war to despoil Austria. They had started on the enterprise when England took a hand in the fray also. She furnished money to hard-pressed Austria and gave military assistance. This war, too, spread to America, where it was known as King George's War.

Peace came in 1748, but lasted only for a few years. Seven years later the French and English came to blows in the western part of Pennsylvania (p. 275). There the pioneers of the two nations met in deadly combat. War then flamed up in two hemispheres. As France now won Austria over to her side, England arranged a new balance of power. She united with Prussia against her old ally, Austria, and her ancient enemy, France. Troops were sent to aid Frederick the Great, the Prussian king, and English gold was poured into his treasury.

In America, General Wolfe astounded Europe by his brilliant conquest of Quebec (*First Book*, pp. 98–101). In India, Robert Clive achieved a victory no less important at the battle of Plassey, in which he overwhelmed the French and their Indian allies. "We are forced to ask every morning what victory there is for fear of missing one," exclaimed a witty Englishman as the news of one triumph after another poured into London.

In the end, England's arms were victorious everywhere. France was impoverished and weakened in Europe. She was forced, as we have seen, to give up her colonies in North America as well as in India. Canada became English. The name of William Pitt, the great English minister who brought England to such a pitch of power, was known and feared around the world. Even the former French stronghold at Fort Duquesne, in western Pennsylvania,



From an old print

THE CITADEL OF OLD QUEBEC (CANADA)

was christened Pittsburgh in his honor. Louisiana, beyond the Mississippi, was handed over to Spain. Prussia became now a strong military country and was in time to become master of all the German states.

The American Colonies, France, Holland, and Spain against England. It was to France, smarting under the ruinous defeat of the Seven Years' War, that the American revolutionists turned for help in 1776 (*First Book*, pp. 136–142). French statesmen saw that the time had come to call the New World into the European balance of power. There were many Frenchmen who sympathized with American ideas; but the king of France did not. He saw in the possibility of American independence merely a check on the immense power which England had won in the world. He at first aided the Americans secretly with money and arms. In 1778 he made a treaty of alliance with them. Then French battleships and military forces were sent to help the American colonies in their struggle against Great Britain.

Spain and The Netherlands, old commercial rivals, also joined in the war on England.

The outcome of this new balance of power was the defeat of England and the independence of America. Henceforward, the diplomats of Europe, in their schemes for war and empire, had to reckon with a new republic across the Atlantic. In Benjamin Franklin (*First Book*, pp. 136–143), the American minister who

From an old print

THE BRITISH BEAT THE FRENCH AND SPANISH AT TRAFALGAR IN 1805

brought about the alliance with France, they had found a supreme master of their art.

England's Combinations against France (1793–1815). England and France were at peace only for a short time after the American War for Independence. In 1793, they began a fresh series of wars that lasted, except for a short break, until 1815. When this new series of conflicts opened, the French had begun their great revolution (below, pp. 299–309). They had executed the king and set up a republic.

George III and the English ruling classes were dreadfully frightened at this outbreak so near at hand, in the same way that the French king had been alarmed at the English revolution a hundred years before (p. 257). When the French occupied Belgium, they were still more frightened. Then the old commercial and colonial jealousy flamed up again. England gave money to Holland and Prussia and formed a combination against France.

At this turn in events, a great military commander, Napoleon Bonaparte, rose to the head of affairs in France (below, p. 310). For a long time he was victorious on land over all combinations formed against him. On the sea, however, the British beat him in every battle. At last, in 1815, Napoleon, with all Europe against him, was overthrown at the battle of Waterloo. The credit for the triumph over Napoleon seems about equally divided between the English and

the Prussians, who fought side by side against the French.

In the Napoleonic wars, as in the wars of the preceding century, England's gains were colonial. She took the Cape of Good Hope, which became the basis of her empire in South Africa. She ob-

From an old print

CAPE TOWN, TRANSFERRED TO THE BRITISH DURING THE NAPOLEONIC WARS

tained certain French islands in the West Indies, and she added the island of Ceylon to her growing empire in India. Not until a hundred years later, at the outbreak of the World War in 1914, was England again seriously threatened by any continental power.

Questions and Exercises

I. 1. From a study of the first two paragraphs of this chapter, discuss two important ways in which the exploration and settlement of the Americas changed the life of European peoples. 2. What is meant by the word "rivals"? Locate on the map facing p. 436 the five nations that were rivals for the commerce of the world during the period covered by this chapter. Can you think of any reasons that will explain why such countries as Italy, Greece, Germany, and Russia were not so much interested in world commerce as were these five nations? 3. Locate on the map the principal parts of the world with which the Spanish early carried on commerce; the Dutch; the French.

II. 1. Point out on the map the extent of the Spanish possessions in the Americas during this period. Locate Spain's principal possessions in the Far East. 2. Why is the name of Sir Francis Drake remembered? 3. The English victory over the Spanish Armada is considered one of the most important events in English history. Why? 4. How did the English Navigation Act aid English shipowners? 5. In what way did the struggle between the English and the Dutch influence American history? 6. Locate the Dutch possessions in the Far East on the map on p. 271.

III. 1. How was India reached from Europe before the Europeans learned how to sail their ships around Africa? 2. Recall why great civilizations grew up in the Nile and Euphrates valleys. Are there similar reasons that will explain why India was a favorable place for the development of a civilized people? 3. How were the people of India held together at the time when the Europeans opened an extensive sea trade with them? In what way was the history of India thereafter like the history of Rome? 4. "Both the English and the French in India were quick to see their chance." Explain this statement and tell what each hoped to gain by conquering India. About how long had the English been interested in India

before they secured complete control of the country? In what important way does the present control of India by the English differ from their control in the early days? 5. The English people were also interested in North America. Did this interest differ in any respect from their interest in India? If so, explain. 6. Point out the extent of the French and English possessions in North America just before the Seven Years' War. 7. What were the chief interests of the French in making settlements in North America? How did these differ from the interests of the English?

IV. 1. What is meant by an "alliance" among nations? How would such alliances help to prevent any one nation or king from becoming master of all the rest? Why are alliances not always successful in doing this? 2. Why was England interested in keeping any one nation on the continent of Europe from becoming supreme? 3. Locate on the map facing p. 436 the lands that Louis XIV wished to add to France. Locate the countries that made an alliance against him. Why was the war that followed, which led to fighting between the English and French in America, known to the English colonists as King William's War? 4. Spain was against France in the war just referred to; how did she come to be allied with France in the next great war? Locate the new possessions that England gained in this war. Find out what this war was called by the English colonists in America. 5. How many years elapsed between the War of the Spanish Succession and King George's War? What nations were allied in the latter war? 6. How many years passed between the close of King George's War and the opening of the Seven Years' War? The last-named war differed from the earlier wars by starting in America. How did it start? Locate the European nations that later took part in it and tell which were in alliance with the English and which with the French. 7. What European country that we have heard very little about up to this time now becomes important? 8. What were the principal results

of the Seven Years' War for England? For our country? For France? 9. What was the first alliance entered into by the United States? In what important way did this influence the "balance of power" in Europe? 10. With what countries did England make an alliance in order to crush Napoleon?

Geographical Studies

1. Study the map of Asia in your textbook in geography. What mountains bound India on the north? Perhaps you can find some facts about these great mountains that will explain why they have been a real protection to India.

2. One of the chief purposes of your study of geography is to enable you to recognize and to locate in your "mind's eye" the important places which you encounter in your reading. This chapter contains many such names, but no more than you would find on the front page of an ordinary newspaper.

Hold a class contest to find out who can put the largest number of place-names in this chapter in the proper column. The following will be the headings of the columns: Hemispheres; Continents; Oceans; Archipelagoes; Islands; Lakes; Rivers; Straits; Bays; States; Modern Countries; Former Countries; Cities of General Importance; Cities Mentioned for Historical Importance. The following places, listed here alphabetically, are all mentioned in this chapter and should be classified in this way: Acadia, Asia, Atlantic, Austria, Belgium, Brazil, Canada, Central America, Ceylon, Cuba, East Indies, England, English Channel, Europe, Fort Duquesne, France, Ganges, Gibraltar, Good Hope, Great Lakes, Holland, Hudson ('s) Bay, India, Java, Louisiana, Minorca, Mississippi, Montreal, Newfoundland, New Netherland, New Orleans, New World, New York, North America, Ohio, Old World, Pennsylvania, Philippines, Pittsburgh, Plassey, Pondicherry, Portugal, Prussia, Quebec, Rhine, Russia, South Africa, South America, Spain, St. Lawrence, Sumatra, Thames, Virginia, Waterloo, West Indies.

3. Hold another class contest to see who can locate correctly the largest number of these places on an outline map of the world.

Suggestions for Reading

Creighton — *Stories from English History*, xlviii–xlix.
Dale — *Landmarks of British History*, x, xi.
Marshall — *A History of France*, lvi, lvii.
O'Neill — *The Story of the World*, xxxviii–xlii.
Tappan — *Hero Stories of France*, xiii–xxi.

CHAPTER XII

THE FRENCH REVOLUTION

While English sailors and soldiers were beating the forces of the French king on sea and land, English ideas were spreading among his subjects and helping to destroy his power at home. Moreover, his wars — including his aid to the United States in the War for Independence — added to his debts and increased the taxes laid upon his subjects.

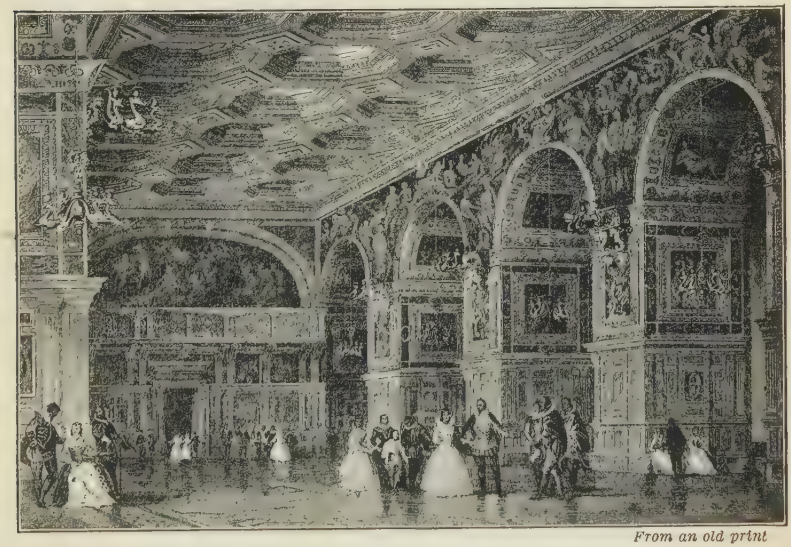
As the burdens grew heavier, the French people listened more eagerly to writers who told them how, in England, the king could not collect taxes without the consent of Parliament. The influence of the English revolution was made even greater by the American revolution. The Americans had thrown off the rule of the king altogether and had set up their own plan of government. French soldiers like Lafayette had helped in the American war for independence and had carried back to France stories of what they had seen and heard in the New World.

Thus many things prepared the way for a revolution in France like that which had occurred in England a hundred years before. When the upheaval came, Frenchmen proclaimed the democratic ideas which the

Americans had recently set forth in their Declaration of Independence.

The Old Order in France

The General Situation in Europe. On the eve of the French Revolution, nearly all the people on the continent of Europe were ruled by absolute monarchs. The Bourbons in France and Spain, the Hohenzollerns



From an old print

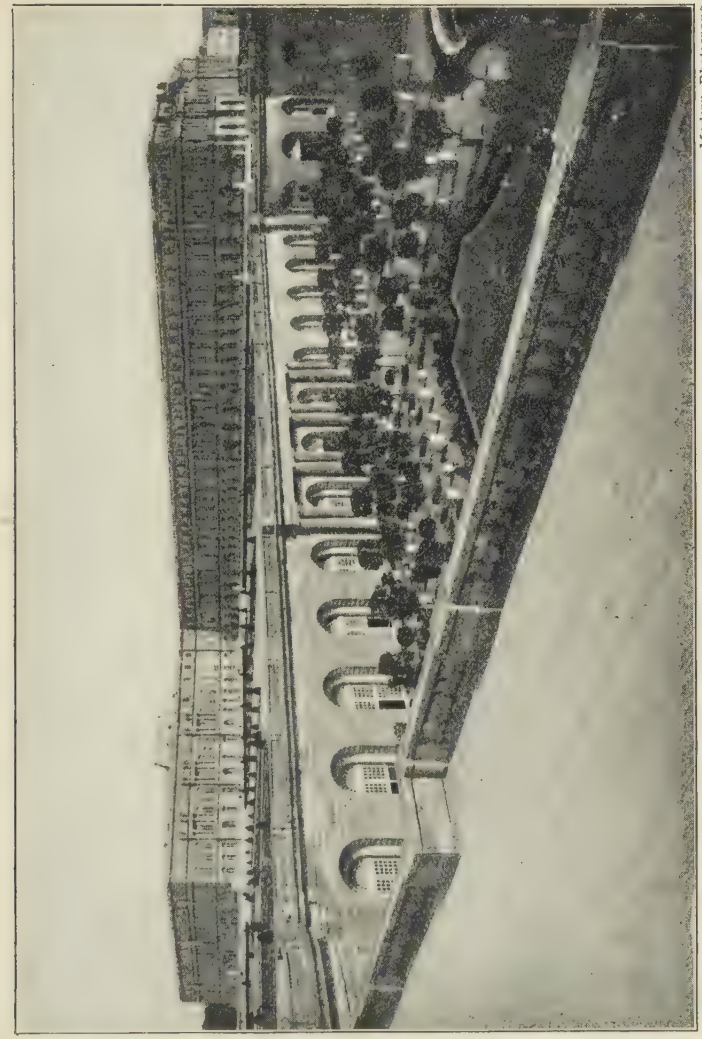
The Gallery of the Royal Palace at Fontainebleau (France)

in Prussia, the Hapsburgs in Austria, and the Romanoffs in Russia could all boast of almost unlimited power. The minor princes of Germany and Italy were no less supreme in their tiny realms. In only a few places, like Switzerland, Holland, and Scandinavia, did the

people have any share in their own government, as they had in England and in the United States. Everywhere else on the continent the masses were subjects and most of them were still serfs. Everywhere feudal landlords and the clergy enjoyed a great deal of the power which had been theirs in the middle ages.

In the magnificence of the king, the splendor of his court, and the authority of the clergy, France stood out above all other monarchies of Europe. She was the model and envy of all other kingdoms. Treaties among nations were written in the French language. French manners, French styles, and French plays became fashionable among society people everywhere from Madrid to St. Petersburg.

The French King. The powers of the French king seemed boundless — even greater by far than those of the English king had been before the Puritan revolution of the seventeenth century. His word was law. Any decree which he issued had to be obeyed. He could lay taxes at will without asking the consent of the taxpayers. He could spend the money as he pleased. By his mere signature on a piece of paper, he could put anyone in prison without trial and keep him there as long as he wished. He could make alliances with other kings and princes, either secretly or openly, and thus involve his country in all kinds of troubles. He could declare war or make peace at will. He appointed and removed all high officers and could compel them to carry out his wishes.



Modern Photograph

THE ROYAL PALACE AT VERSAILLES

As may be imagined, the expenses of the king were enormous. In addition to the ordinary costs of government, there were the heavy charges for wars entered into for glory or the conquest of new territory. The king kept up many costly mansions and had armies of servants. The royal palace at Versailles alone is said to have cost more than fifty million dollars. The upkeep of the spacious buildings and gardens was a drain on his treasury. The king also had about him hundreds of courtiers who lived upon his bounty and encouraged him in wasting money. To meet his bills, the king merely issued orders on the treasury. When the treasury was empty, he borrowed. At no time did he publish any statement showing what his receipts and expenditures had been. The finances of his kingdom he deemed a matter of no concern to the taxpayers.

Indeed the king's subjects had been well schooled to accept this system without grumbling. It was still a regular saying in Europe that "the king can do no wrong." In Protestant Prussia and in Catholic France alike, the people were taught the belief that the king ruled by the favor and will of God. This idea of divine right, which had once been proclaimed by English kings, was thus summed up by a celebrated French bishop: "Rulers act as the ministers of God and as his lieutenants on earth. . . . Should God withdraw his hand, the earth would fall to pieces; should the king's authority cease in the realm, all would be confusion. . . . The royal power is absolute. . . .

The will of the people is included in his." Wicked kings were accountable to God for their misdeeds, but they were to be obeyed by their subjects.

The Nobility. The French king had stanch friends among his nobles, a class of great landlords. Each noble owned an estate, sometimes of thousands of acres, tilled by tenants or by serfs. His birth and rank set him off from the mass of mankind. The noblemen, too, had many special rights. They escaped all the heavy taxes. They held all the high and important offices in the army and in the government. They crowded about the king's court and got favors from him. They spent the rents collected from their estates in lavish entertainments. They were happy when the king let them render him the meanest service; at the same time, they looked down upon merchants and peasants as inferior beings.

The Clergy. Like the nobility, the French clergy formed a distinct class. They were more powerful than the clergy in England. This was because the Protestant revolt had been stifled in France and there were no strong Protestant sects to dispute their authority. The priests were set apart for spiritual duties. Their religious garb marked them off from the mass of the people.

Though the village priest was usually very poor, many of the monasteries and the higher clergy — especially the bishops and archbishops — were very rich. About one fourth of the land of France belonged to the Church.

The clergy were exempt from taxes, but they had to give large sums for the support of the poor and the sick. They had control of all education. They chose the subjects to be taught and were themselves the teachers. They could suppress books which they did not approve. They could collect taxes, or *tithes*, for their own support, and punish people who violated the laws of the Church. They were powerful also as advisers of the king and as leaders of opinion.

The Third Estate. All the rest of the French people were known as the *third estate*, or third class. The majority of people everywhere in Europe were peasants and lived by tilling the soil. Unlike the agricultural laborers in England, many of them in France were still serfs. In Prussia, Austria, and Russia, serfdom was about the same as it had been in the middle ages. The serf was not a slave; that is, his master could not sell him at the market. But he was still bound to the soil.

The leaders in the third estate were merchants, manufacturers, and lawyers, rather than peasants or artisans. With the growth of world trade in the eighteenth century, the French merchant class had grown in numbers and wealth. Their warehouses in India and China, their fleets and their long lines of wharves and docks bore witness to their energy and power.

The merchants felt that they were the equals of anyone, but they had to pay heavy taxes and enjoyed no favors at the king's court. It is not surprising that

they did not like the inferior position in which they were placed. They had to obey royal laws, yet they were denied all voice in making them. In the government of France, the richest merchants, like the humblest peasant or artisan, had no rights. In opposing absolute authority of the king, therefore, all these people had a common interest.

Newspapers, Books, and Public Opinion. The lot of most editors and writers in those old days was not a happy one. If they praised the clergy and flattered the king, they were rewarded with money and positions; but it was a blind person who could not see abuses that cried aloud for remedy. So a host of writers began to call for reform. Some complained about the high-handed actions of royal officers, others about heavy taxes, and others about the special privileges of the clergy and the nobility.

The critics, however, had a hard time. Some of their books were seized by royal officers and others were burned by the hangman. Many a brilliant writer was fined or shut up in prison. Among those punished were some of the ablest men of France. One of them wrote in favor of toleration for all religious faiths; his book was declared to be "seditious" and was burned. Another writer, Voltaire, was imprisoned twelve months on the charge that he had written a criticism of the king, Louis XIV. An abbot who wrote an amusing story about a princess was promptly ordered to jail.

As prisons, fines, and exile did not stop criticism,

stronger measures were taken. In 1764 the French king decreed that no book should be published that dealt with political questions. A few years later, the government threatened with death any writer who excited the public mind, or attacked religion, or said anything about royal finance. These heavy penalties also failed to crush the critics. Thereupon a high officer of the king proposed that no books should be printed except on a press owned by the government and managed by royal agents. This last plan was not carried out. A revolution, which overthrew the entire system, prevented it.

The People Revolt

The Opening Scenes. When Louis XVI came to the throne of France in 1774, he found himself an absolute monarch, but heavily in debt. His grandfather had spent huge sums in the French and Indian War, and had lived extravagantly besides. The new king thought for a while that he would undertake reforms. In this he was unsuccessful. Every time he cut off the salary of a nobleman or reduced a pension a great cry went up from the victim. It seemed easier to drift along in the old reckless way, so Louis chose that course. Moreover, as we have seen, he added to his debts by joining with the Americans in 1778 in their war against England (*First Book*, pp. 136–142). In a few years Louis XVI's treasury was empty and he was practically bankrupt. Then he called upon the

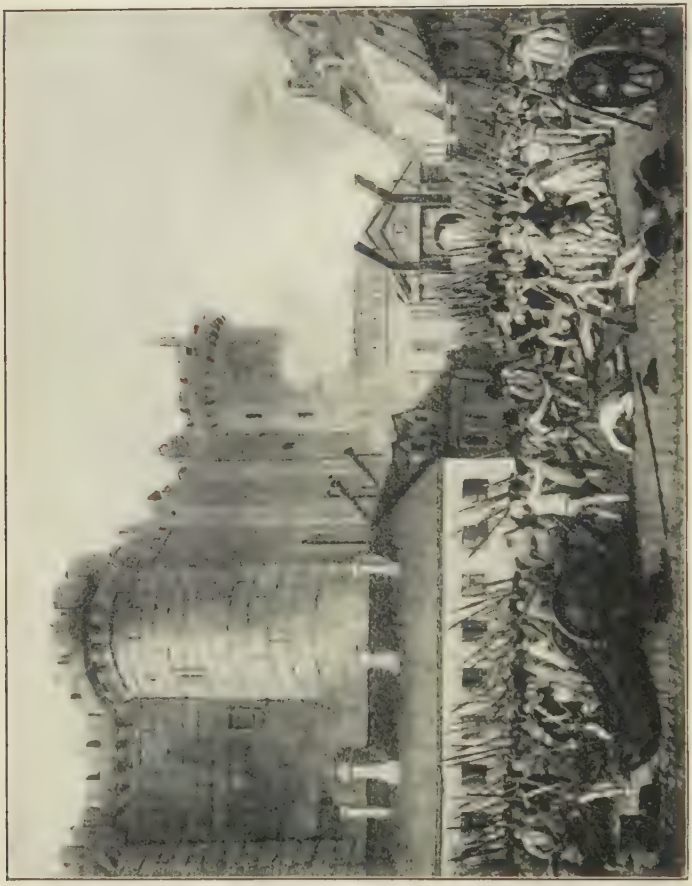
nobles and the clergy for help, only to meet with a flat refusal. This was in 1787, the year that the Constitution of the United States was drafted at Philadelphia.

The Estates General. Being at his wits' end for money, the king was forced to call upon the nation in 1789. So he summoned a grand national parliament representing the three "estates"—the clergy, the nobility, and the Third Estate. This assembly, known as the *Estates General*, was the first of the kind France had seen for more than a hundred years.

The representatives of the Third Estate came in a very serious mood. They resented the way in which the king and his ministers had ruled—the waste of money; the injury to business; the persecution; and the indifference to the welfare of the French people. They debated their grievances with much heat. They invited the clergy and the nobles to sit and vote with them instead of forming two separate houses. When the clergy and the nobles refused, the Third Estate, in a revolutionary outburst, declared itself to be "the National Assembly." It solemnly vowed that it would not dissolve until it had drawn up a constitution for France. The clergy and nobility found themselves face to face with a new ruler, the French nation, speaking through its representatives.

The Peaceful Revolution. It was in the spring of the very year that George Washington was inaugurated first President of the United States (*First Book*, pp.

154–155) that the French nation set out upon a road of reform that led to revolution. On July 14, 1789,



From an old print

DESTROYING THE BASTILLE

ten days after the Americans celebrated their thirteenth anniversary of independence, the people of Paris at-

tacked the Bastille, an old royal prison, and destroyed it. In memory of this event, the 14th of July has become the chief national holiday of France.

For two years the French National Assembly issued decrees of reform. It abolished the dues owed by serfs to their lords. It swept away the special rights and privileges of the nobility. Everywhere the serfs and peasants became free. It issued a Declaration of the Rights of Man. It took away from the king the right to make laws, lay taxes, or imprison at will. It declared in favor of religious toleration and freedom of press and speech. The Assembly decreed that the property of the Church should belong to the nation, and provided that the clergy should be paid from public funds. It drew up a constitution for France. It did not overthrow the king, but it did provide that laws were to be made and taxes voted by a legislature. This legislature was to be elected by all the men who paid a certain amount of taxes. Thus, in two years, the old order was swept away in France. Very little blood had been shed. The French nation was attempting to govern itself and the king accepted the reforms.

Americans Hail the New Day in France. The reforms of the National Assembly, especially the new French constitution, were greeted with general applause in the United States. "Liberty will have another feather in her cap," wrote a Boston editor. "In no part of the globe," declared John Marshall of Virginia, "was this revolution hailed with more joy than in

America." The main key of the old Bastille was sent to George Washington as a memento and accepted by him as "a token of the victory gained by liberty."

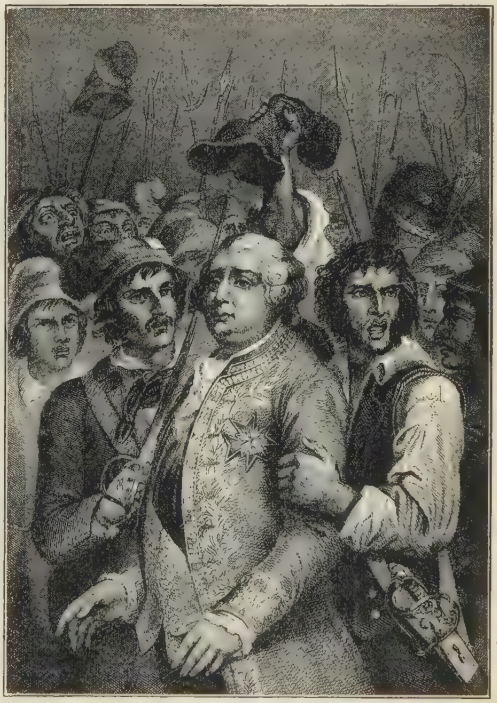
France Slipping into Disorder. In the midst of the rejoicing, however, there were omens of trouble. French nobles who had lost their privileges fled across the Rhine. There they tried to get help in a plan to invade France, "free the king," and restore the old system. Louis himself showed his bad faith by attempting to escape from his realm. When he was captured and brought back, the people were in an angry mood.

Some agitators began boldly to demand a republic. Hundreds of non-taxpayers in Paris assembled on a great drill ground (Champs de Mars) to petition for the right to vote. They came to blows with the soldiers and many of them were killed. All France was wildly excited.

The kings of Austria and Prussia announced that they were ready to advance with their armies and restore Louis to his old rights as a brother sovereign. France answered by a declaration of war on Austria and was defeated in the first battles. Then Prussia joined Austria and set her armies in motion. The French nation was in extreme danger of an armed invasion. In the midst of the excitement, a mob broke into the king's palace, forced him to put on a red liberty cap, and compelled him to drink to the health of the people. Volunteers from all parts of France came pour-

ing in to defend their country. One little band of them from Marseilles came marching along singing a stirring hymn — the *Marseillaise* — which became the hymn of the revolution and later of the republic.

The Reign of Terror. In this hour of peril, a national convention was elected. Moderate men who favored the king were brushed aside by radical republicans, known as *Jacobins*. In September, 1792, the convention abolished the monarchy and announced the first French Republic. Within a few months, it tried the king, condemned him to death, and executed him. In a short time, too, the queen, Marie Antoinette, was sent to the scaffold. The English king, George III, went into mourning. All England, forgetting the execution of its own king, Charles I, long before, was



From an old print

THE KING OF FRANCE SEIZED BY A MOB

alarmed. In February, 1793, France and England were at war. As the revolution was in grave danger of being crushed by outside enemies and by the factions within France, the convention put all power into the hands of a committee known as the *Committee of Public Safety*.

For more than two years, France was governed by

From an old print

THE TRIAL OF LOUIS XVI

a small minority of men who ruled with an iron hand. This period is called the *Reign of Terror*. Hundreds of royalists were executed with scarcely the semblance of a trial. Moderate men, who hated bloodshed and were not zealous enough for the revolution, were exiled or sent to the scaffold. Uprisings of the peasants against the republic were stamped out. The clergy, who refused to accept the new order, were sternly pun-

ished. Powerful men rose to leadership in swift succession, each more radical than the man before him. Marat, Danton, and Robespierre each, in turn, led in the revolution and then perished on the scaffold or at the hands of an assassin.

Meanwhile, war was going on with all Europe. In spite of this, more extreme reforms were being undertaken and a new constitution was being drafted. The mass of Frenchmen, who had been denied the right to vote by the first constitution of 1791, were given this right — a thing that seemed very dangerous at that time.

Reaction against Terror. Finally, the country became sick of bloodshed and disorder. A new government was established in 1795. It was republican in form. It was arranged that there should be a parliament consisting of two houses and an executive department composed of five men called the *Directory*. For four years (1795–99) France was governed under this plan.

The Reign of Terror was over, but the country was still at war. Victory on the battlefield was taking the place of defeat, however, and the kings of Europe were frightened. With republican armies launched on a career of conquest in Europe, all the monarchs and nobles and clergy trembled for their own safety. They were to have no peace for twenty years.

American Opinion on the French Revolution. During these stirring years in France, a great discussion

of the situation was taking place in the United States. The Americans also were being agitated by politics and were dividing into two parties. The Federalists were being formed under the leadership of Alexander Hamilton and the Republicans under Thomas Jefferson (*First Book*, pp. 154–160).

Hamilton and his followers did not have great faith in popular government. Few of the Federalists believed in giving the vote to men who owned no property, as the French radicals had urged. Indeed, the Federalists looked with real alarm upon the spread of French democratic ideas. They said that the radicals were to blame for all the disorders in France, and they denounced the Jacobins as "anarchists" and "criminals."

The followers of Jefferson, on the other hand, said that, on the whole, the French republicans were trying to do the right thing. They were sorry about the reign of terror, but they laid the blame rather on the king's friends and the nobles who wanted to overthrow the revolution and restore the old order. The Jeffersonians admitted that many terrible things had been done by the revolutionists, but they said that most of them had been necessary in the interest of the people. They pointed to the misdeeds of Louis XVI and asserted that the king and his friends had brought all the trouble on themselves. So Jefferson's followers formed "Democratic" societies and held banquets in honor of the French Republic. They said that the

kings of England, Austria, and Prussia were tyrants waging war on republican France in order to restore the monarchy.

The United States Involved. While the people debated theories of government, the American government had practical problems to face. France, at war with England, called upon President Washington for aid. France claimed that the United States was bound to help her under the terms of the treaty of 1778. Many American citizens at the same time clamored for war against England. President Washington, unmoved by all the uproar, declared that the United States would remain neutral. When the French minister to the United States went about making speeches in this country to secure aid for France, President Washington asked the French government to order him home. Under the rules of war both England and France began to search and seize our ships and goods on the high seas.

Very soon France and the United States were on the verge of war. President Adams, who followed Washington, sent a special mission to Paris seeking peace. It was not received with courtesy, and secret demands were made upon it for (1) apologies for past conduct and (2) money in the form of bribes. President Adams then told Congress about these outrageous demands, naming the Frenchmen who made them simply as "Mr. X, Mr. Y, and Mr. Z."

This aroused the whole country. Even Jefferson's

party turned against France. In fact, war on France actually started at sea, though it did not last long. A peace was soon patched up.

About the same time, the Federalists tried to shut out all further French influence by passing two severe laws, known as the *Alien and Sedition Acts*. The first of these laws authorized the president to expel any alien agitator from this country; the second laid penalties on those who criticized the government of the United States. These laws were bitterly attacked by the party of Jefferson and became the subject of violent dispute (*First Book*, pp. 159–160).

The French Revolution and European Opinion. England had alarmed the world by her revolution a hundred years before. Now it was the turn of France to terrify governments everywhere. In England, it is true, a few leaders rejoiced during the first stages of the French revolution and declared that England needed similar reforms; that her earlier revolutions had not been democratic enough. Most Englishmen, however, were up in arms against everything French and denounced as "Jacobin" anyone who proposed the slightest change in the English government. One of them, Edmund Burke, who had once handsomely championed the cause of the Americans (*First Book*, pp. 116–118), savagely attacked the French and demanded a union of kings to make war on them.

King George's officers seized and threw into prison citizens who declared that the vote should be given to

every Englishman whether he owned any property or not. "The right of universal suffrage, the subjects of this country never enjoyed," said one of the king's judges, "and were they to enjoy it, they would not long enjoy either liberty or a free constitution." Men who expressed approval of French ideas, even privately, were liable to be fined and imprisoned.

NAPOLEON I, EMPEROR OF THE FRENCH

In Austria, Prussia, and Spain, as well as in England, the ruling classes were thoroughly alarmed. They feared that revolutionary ideas about liberty, democracy, and republics would upset every throne and destroy the rights of the nobility and the clergy. French popular leaders talked as if the millennium had come. Kings and nobles, on the other hand, thought the world was crumbling into ruin.

The Napoleonic Wars

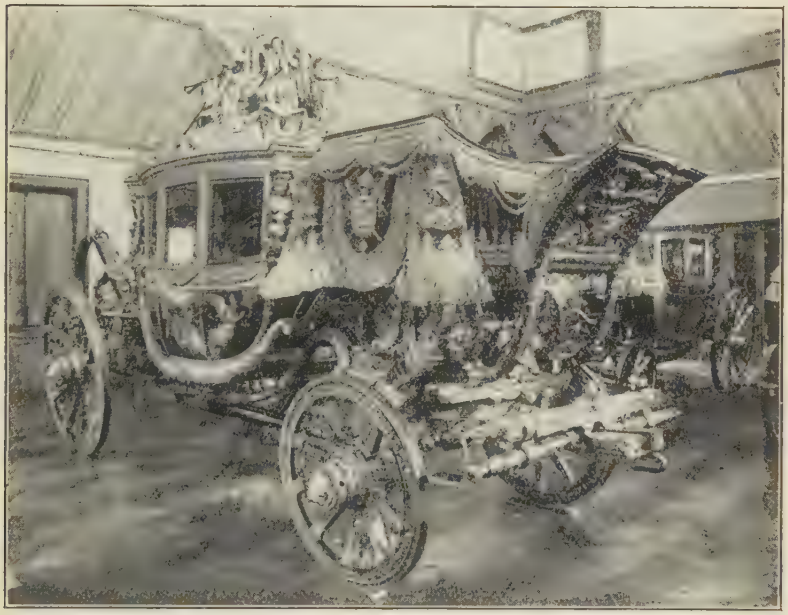
The Remarkable Career of Bonaparte. Among the officers in the French army at the outbreak of the revolution was a young man destined to become the master of France and nearly all Europe. His name was Napoleon Bonaparte. He was only twenty-three years old when Louis XVI was executed in 1793, but in the war that soon followed he proved that he was an able artillery officer. In 1795 he endeared himself to the French government by using his guns on a crowd of citizens bent on overturning it.

The next year, Bonaparte was chosen commander of the French army sent against the Austrians in Italy. In one battle after another, often against great odds, Bonaparte defeated the enemy and made himself master of all northern Italy. He astounded the world by his brilliant exploits.

Having beaten Austria, he decided to strike England by attacking Egypt. In this way he threatened English trade in the Mediterranean. He also hinted that he would go on until he destroyed English rule in India. Bonaparte was readily victorious over the Turks in Egypt; but his fleet was destroyed by the English commander, Nelson, in the famous battle of the Nile in 1798.

Bonaparte as Consul and Emperor. As things were not promising in Egypt, Bonaparte hurried back to France. In 1799, with the aid of soldiers, he overthrew the Directory. Thereupon he made himself

head of the government as *First Consul* and reduced the power of the parliament to a shadow. With an iron hand, like Oliver Cromwell, he put down all opposition — that of royalists and radicals alike. He said that France needed "order," and he established order



Napoleon's Carriage

by the sword. He said that France loved "glory," so by his conquering armies he gave her glory.

At the same time, he steadily increased his own power. In 1802 he was made consul for life instead of a term of years. Two years later, he was made Emperor of the French, and crowned himself with great ceremony

EUROPE ABOUT 1810

in the beautiful cathedral of Notre Dame, with the pope looking on. He created a new court on the model of Louis XVI's and founded a new nobility. He strictly censored books and newspapers. He ordered editors not to print news "disagreeable to France." He required teachers in the schools to praise his name and his deeds and to make pupils do the same. France had a new despotism, more thoroughgoing than the despotism of the Bourbon kings had been.

Napoleon's Conquests. "What the French want," Napoleon declared, "is glory. . . . The Nation must have a head rendered illustrious by glory and not by theories of government." In keeping with this idea, Napoleon was at war, save for a few months, during his entire rule. He found France at war in 1793, and he kept it up until 1815 with only one short breathing spell. By blows swift and terrible he overcame the armies of all nations massed against him.

By 1810, Napoleon was the master of Europe. He was Emperor of the French, King of Italy, and "Protector" of a league of German states. The borders of France had been extended to the Rhine and included what is now Belgium and Holland. His brother had been placed on the throne of Spain, and his brother-in-law on that of Naples. Only on the sea was he baffled. There England's navy reigned supreme. Indeed we may look upon the Napoleonic wars as a part of the old commercial struggle between England and France (p. 268).

Napoleon's Downfall. When, in 1812, Napoleon at last tried to conquer Russia, he made a fatal mistake. He could not fight against winter and famine. So he beat a hasty retreat. All the leading countries then turned against him. He was defeated at Leipzig in 1813. The next year he was sent into exile on the island of Elba.

Once more Napoleon tried his fortune. He escaped from Elba, gathered an army about him, and promised France "peace and liberty." The kings of Europe proclaimed him an outlaw. On June 18, 1815, their armies, with the Duke of Wellington in the lead, overwhelmed Napoleon at the battle of Waterloo. This time Napoleon was sent far away to St. Helena, an island in the South Atlantic Ocean. There he was guarded day and night until his death in 1821. Twenty years later the French brought his body back home and placed it in an imposing tomb at Paris, where it rests to-day.

America and the Napoleonic Wars. The long wars between England and France gave both of them an excuse to prey upon American commerce. French cruisers seized American ships and goods bound to England. The English did the same thing to ships and goods bound for France. Still they were not satisfied. They searched American ships for British-born sailors, and carried away some who were really American citizens. All through Jefferson's eight years as President seizures by the French and the English went

THE PRICE OF EMPIRE: A SCENE ON ONE OF NAPOLEON'S BATTLEFIELDS

From a famous painting

on, trying American patience to the utmost. Finally, in Madison's administration, in 1812, Congress declared war on England, opening a conflict for more than two years (*First Book*, pp. 181–190).

One great advantage came to the United States from the long struggle among the European powers. That was the purchase of the Louisiana territory in 1803. Napoleon had compelled Spain to cede it to him three years before; then, fearing that England might wrest it from him, he quickly sold it to the United States. So much at least America owes to the career of Napoleon Bonaparte.

The Results of the French Revolution. When Napoleon was overthrown, in 1815, the Bourbons were restored to the kingdom of France; but the old order was not brought back again with them. The power of the clergy and the nobility had been badly broken; they never fully recovered their ancient position. The king, moreover, could no longer make laws without the consent of a parliament. The age of Louis XVI had passed forever.

In addition, all Europe was in ferment with new ideas. Everywhere people talked of the "rights of man," even in distant Russia. It was said that all men, rich and poor, noble and common, should be equal before the law; that men had a right to make their own laws and levy their own taxes. Religious toleration was widely accepted in theory and somewhat in practice. Everywhere people talked of new

things. Even the idea of votes for women was advanced. Freedom of speech and press lived on in spite of many difficulties. The notion of free public schools had been put forward during the revolution. It was not put into practice then, but it continued to live in the minds of the people.

Feudalism was tottering to its final fall. Napoleon had abolished the rights of the nobility in Italy and Spain by force of arms and by imperial decrees. Thousands of the great estates owned by landlords were broken up into small farms tilled by their owners. New "peasant democracies" began to take the place of aristocracies.

Though attempts were made everywhere to undo the effects of the French revolution, they were not successful. All western Europe was passing out of the feudal and clerical age. Even in Germany the two or three hundred petty princes whom Napoleon overthrew were never restored. The Holy Roman Empire (p. 166) — long a mere shadow empire — which he destroyed was never called to life again. The rulers of Prussia and Austria tried in vain to stop the spread of French notions among their subjects. Even far-away Russia could not escape the influence of the French example. Though they did their best, kings and czars could not blot out the history of the past twenty-five years. The day was to come when echoes of the *Marseillaise* would be heard in the streets of Berlin, Vienna, and St. Petersburg.

Questions and Exercises

I. 1. Compare the condition of the common people of France with that of the common people of England in the early part of the eighteenth century. Study the powers that the French king had at that time (p. 292) and tell what bodies have these powers in our country to-day. 2. Compare the account of French classes (king, nobility, and common people) given in this chapter with the account in chapter x of the classes in England. In which country were the nobles the more powerful? The clergy?

II. 1. Why is the first revolt of the people against the French king called the "peaceful revolution"? Can you think of any reasons that will explain why the common people of France began their revolution with an attack on the royal prison, the Bastille? What kind of prisoners were probably kept there? 2. How did the first two years of the French revolution differ from the first two years of the American revolution? 3. Why were the kings of surrounding nations anxious to see the French king restored to his old position of power? 4. England had already made long advances toward democracy; why, then, were the English people ready to make war on the new French republic? 5. In what important ways did the French government between the years 1795–99 differ from our government to-day? 6. At the outset of the French revolution many if not most Americans were sympathetic with the French people. Later there was a strong feeling against them. Make a list of the reasons for this change of opinion. 7. What is meant by "neutrality" in war? Why did Washington wish to have the United States remain neutral in the war between the new French republic and England?

III. 1. How did it happen that a young man like Napoleon could come into power so quickly? 2. Compare Napoleon with Cromwell and with Washington. Which of the three do you admire the least, and why? With what military leader of the ancient world would you compare Napoleon? 3. What reasons

can you think of that will explain why the conquest of Russia and of England was too great a task even for Napoleon? 4. The battle of Waterloo is regarded as one of the most important, or "decisive," battles of history. Why? 5. What were the effects of the Napoleonic wars in America? In Europe?

Geographical Studies

1. From the map on p. 312, find out why the kings of Austria and Prussia, as told on p. 302, took such interest in the French revolution. 2. By a study of the map just referred to, find out what modern nations were included in the empire of Napoleon at its greatest extent. 3. Locate Waterloo.

Suggestions for Reading

for pupils

Birkhead, Alice — *The Story of the French Revolution;* Crowell.
Dale — *Landmarks of British History*, xix.
Dutton, Maude B. — *Little Stories of France*, pp. 132–171; American Book.
Finnemore, J. — *Peeps at History, France*, x–xv; Adams and Black.
Macgregor — *The Story of France*, lxix–lxxiii.
Marshall — *A History of France*, lxxvi–lxxxii.
Morris, Charles — *Historical Tales, France*, xxi (p. 233), xxx; Lippincott.
O'Neill — *The Story of the World*, xliii.
Tappan — *Hero Stories of France*, xxxi.
Van Loon — *The Story of Mankind* (*School edition*), xlvi, lii–lv.

for teachers

Ashley, R. L. — *Modern European Civilization*, vi–vii; Macmillan.
Tarbell, Ida M. — *Napoleon;* Macmillan.

Suggestions for Review of Chapters IX–XII

I. 1. Make a list of the most important events that are described in these four chapters. Arrange these first in the order of time, and then try to rearrange them in what you think to be the order of their importance. 2. How many years passed between the discovery of America and the end of the Napoleonic wars? On the blackboard draw a line six feet long. Let the left end of the line mark the fall of the Roman empire and the right end the close of the Napoleonic wars. Place a mark at the proper point indicating the discovery of America. Make other marks indicating what you consider to be the most important dates of these two periods.

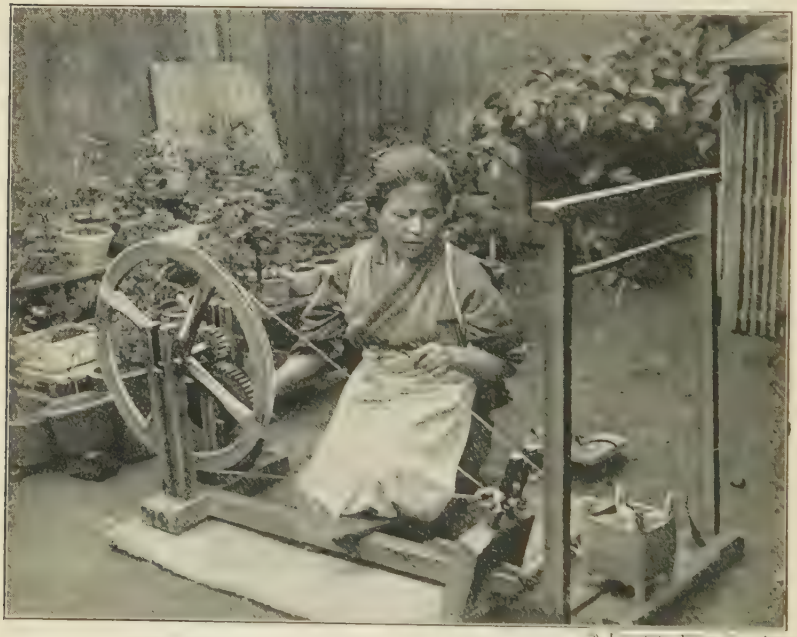
II. 1. What great rights did the common people of Europe gain during the period covered by these four chapters? In what countries did the common people make the greatest progress during this period? In what countries did they make little or no progress? 2. Make a list of the persons mentioned in these five chapters who in your judgment did the most for their fellow men. Have committees appointed to find out all they can about these men and to report to the class the important facts about their lives and the reasons which justify us in learning about their deeds and honoring their memories.

CHAPTER XIII

THE AGE OF STEAM AND MACHINERY

The Slow Progress in Industry in Olden Times. All the revolutions in empires, kingdoms, and republics which filled the pages of history down to the eighteenth century made few changes in the way in which the mass of the people lived and worked. The great nations of antiquity rose and fell; city-states flourished and withered; commercial towns sprang up and decayed; Rome spread out her broad empire and then broke into pieces; kings and princes fought for centuries over fragments of territory; constitutions were framed and parliaments created. All the while the mass of the people in Europe — the peasants with their hoes, the artisans at the forge, the women at the loom — went on with their work as usual. All the while they were using the few crude and simple tools that had been invented in the early days of mankind. Throughout their long history, the English and the French, like the Greeks and the Romans, had made few improvements in the plow, the wagon, or the loom. Wheat was cut with a sickle and threshed with a flail, almost as in the first days of agriculture. Through

the two thousand years and more of their progress, the Greeks and Romans made little advance over the crude methods of the earliest times. Indeed, they both looked with scorn upon all hand labor and



© Keystone View Co., Inc.

SPINNING BY HAND IN JAPAN TO-DAY

thought it beneath the dignity of any educated person to care about making better tools or making the burden of toil lighter for human beings.

All during the middle ages, the age of discovery, the Protestant Reformation, and the English political revolution, the same ways of working were continued.

When King John was forced to grant Magna Carta, the plow used in the fields of England was modeled on the same lines as the plow introduced by the Romans when Britain was a province of their empire. When the Pilgrims set sail for America in 1620, the women of England spun and wove cloth by hand, as their ancestors had in the days of King John. The lumbering stagecoach and the creeping sailboat were the chief means of travel and trade. In order to secure a bare livelihood, to say nothing of comforts and luxuries, the masses had to spend laborious days digging, sowing, reaping, spinning, and weaving. The sons and daughters of peasants became peasants; they lived and died in the village where they were born. The sun rose and set with serene monotony on changeless days of toil.

A Sudden Revolution in Industry. Then suddenly, about the middle of the eighteenth century, there began a series of remarkable inventions which in time turned upside down the old world of peasants and artisans. New ways of working, living, trading, and traveling were discovered. A new age was opened — our modern age of steam and machinery, gigantic factories, smoky industrial cities, roaring furnaces, thundering expresses, ocean steamships, mysterious electric instruments, and swift automobiles and airplanes.

As time went on the inventors worked faster and faster. The man with a hoe, bowed by the weight of centuries, was startled to find a tractor driven up beside him. Women, bending over their shuttle day

and night, could not weave cloth fast enough by hand to compete with the flying shuttle driven by steam; so they were drawn forth by thousands to the factories to tend steel fingers that flew with lightning speed and knew not weariness. The place of the stagecoach was taken by the railway. The lazy sailing vessel was nosed aside by the ocean greyhound that sped over the Atlantic in less than six days. Coal and oil drawn from the earth in huge quantities gave heat and light for multitudes whose ancestors for centuries had shivered in darkness.

The Idea of Progress. Industrial events brought changes in the life of the people as no political events had ever done. Peasants left the soil and went into industrial towns or across the sea in search of employment. Women and girls, for the first time, worked in factories and were paid in money for their labor. Millions learned to read and write. The idea of progress — of endless improvement in the lot of mankind — seized upon the minds of humanity. Those who labored at the plow, the forge, and the loom no longer accepted in silence any fate that befell them; they declared they would be citizens, voters, and architects of their own fortunes. The age of democracy — the age of the people — burst upon the astonished world.

This marvelous epoch of progress was opened by obscure artisans, mechanics, and smiths who, with endless patience and in the face of trials and discouragements, made one ingenious machine after another.

They were benefactors of mankind who have never figured largely on the pages of history. Nevertheless they did more to change and improve the lot of the people than all the generals and statesmen that ever

From an old print

Carrying Freight in England in the Eighteenth Century

lived. So great was the change which they wrought in the life of Western nations that it has rightly been called the *industrial revolution*. In this work of invention, America did a lion's share.

Steam Power

The Uses of Power. If you will stop to think about the things you use in daily life, you will find that power

has been employed to fashion them. Nothing can be made without the use of some kind of power. Take, for example, a loaf of bread. Power is used to break the ground, sow the seed, reap the grain, grind the flour, and knead the dough. So with everything we use. In olden times the power of men, women, children, and beasts, of wind and water, was used to turn wheels

From an old print

An English Water Mill in the Eighteenth Century

and make goods. But animal and human power is limited; the wind is fickle; and waterfalls are found only in certain places. As long as mankind had only these sources of power, the output of goods was necessarily small.

James Watt and the Steam Engine. In 1736 there was born in Scotland a genius who was to place unlimited power at the service of mankind. His name

was James Watt. A story is told that he got the idea of using steam power by watching the steam in his mother's teakettle push the lid up. Unfortunately this pretty tale is a fiction.

Long before Watt was born, the power of steam was known and many men had attempted to harness it. The furnace and boiler had been invented to generate steam. A steam engine had been devised that would push a pump handle up and down; but it was a very awkward thing and would not turn a wheel.

Watt, who was a skilled mechanic at the University of Glasgow, had in his collection of models a small steam engine of the old, crude type. It was while working on this machine that he got the idea of a better engine. He made his first invention in 1765 and took out his first patent four years later.

Watt made two important advances. He cut down the waste of coal in generating steam and he fixed the engine so that it would turn a wheel.

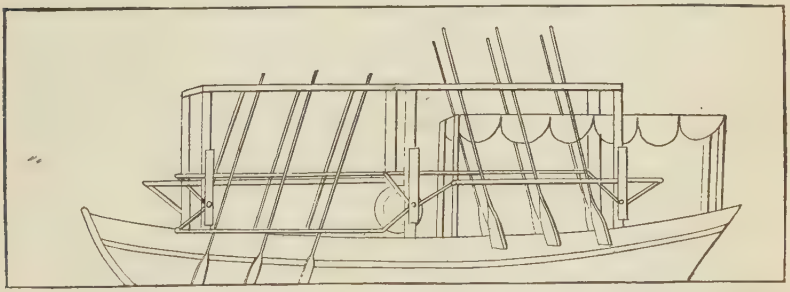
As he was a poor man, he had to form a partnership with Boulton, a man of money, in order to manufacture his engines. For many years the two men built engines at Birmingham, in England. Watt kept on making improvements in the engine until his death in 1819. Thanks to his labors, there was henceforward no limit to the amount of power for the making of goods. It is estimated that the steam engine "has added to human power the equivalent of a thousand million men."

From an old print

THE BOYHOOD OF JAMES WATT

The Steamship. Power is necessary for carrying goods from place to place as well as for making them. On the sea, wind and oars had always been used to drive ships. On land, horses, asses, and oxen were employed to drag carts and wagons. How slow those old methods were! How natural that some one should think of using the steam engine to drive ships and wagons! Indeed, other men in Europe and America were already thinking about it when Watt took out his first patent. It so happened that the honor of making the first successful steamboat was won by an American,

Robert Fulton (*First Book*, pp. 221–224). It was in the year 1807 that he sent his steamboat, the *Clermont*, up the Hudson River and back again. This was a great triumph for Fulton, but it is due to truth to say that a part of the honor belongs to Watt. Fulton used in the *Clermont* a steam engine made by Watt and Boulton at Birmingham. In fact, Fulton had visited England himself and had learned much there about the use of steam. He tried to interest the great Napoleon in



Natural History Museum

Model of an Early Paddleboat Made Years before the *Clermont*

his ideas before he found help in the United States.

The Steam Railway. While Watt and Fulton were busy with their machines, other men were at work trying to apply steam to driving wagons. The very year in which Watt took out his first patent, a French inventor, Cugnot, made a steam wagon which carried four persons along a road at the rate of a little over two miles an hour. An engine built according to his plans in 1770 is still to be seen in the industrial museum in the city of Paris.

A few years later a workman in the shops of Watt and Boulton in Birmingham made a small steam carriage which, we are told, ran a mile or two carrying "a poker, a fire shovel, and a pair of tongs." In 1804, a Cornish engineer, Richard Trevithick, built in Wales a locomotive which drew along a tramway five wagons with a thirteen-ton load at the rate of five miles an hour. Likewise in other parts of Great Britain, other inventors were busy with the idea of steam locomotion.

In 1825, there was built in the north of England the first public steam railway in the world, running from Stockton to Darlington, a distance of about twenty miles. George Stephenson planned and drove the first locomotive over the line. With the completion of the Manchester and Liverpool system in 1830, the age of steam railways was begun. Within twenty-five years, the principal cities of western Europe had rail connections with one another. George Stephenson was praised as one of the first inventors of all times. In truth, however, a great deal of credit for patient experiments belonged also to other men who failed to make a business success of their locomotives.

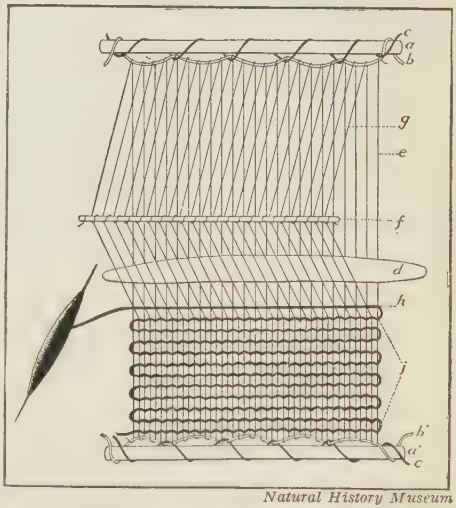
The Invention of Machinery

Old Ways of Spinning. While James Watt was improving the steam engine to take the place of human power, other inventors were making machines to take the place of arms and fingers. The earliest of these

inventions were in the textile industry; that is, for spinning yarn and weaving cloth.

From ancient times woolen threads had been spun by hand. The spinner placed a bunch of wool on a stick known as a *distaff*, drew out a few fibers, twisted them together, and attached them to a stone called the *whorl*. The whorl was then given a sharp stroke and allowed to drop down, turning rapidly around. When a few feet were spun the thread was wound on a stick and the process of drawing and twisting repeated. As you may imagine, it was slow and tedious work. The spinning wheel, which came into use in the later middle ages, was a vast improvement on the distaff; yet it too was slow. The spinner could spin only one thread at a time.

The Old-Fashioned Loom. Weaving was also done by hand. The weaver fastened stout threads, called the *warp*, in parallel rows on a round pole and attached the loose ends to a second pole. The poles were then fastened a few feet apart, thus stretching out three or four feet



Natural History Museum

DIAGRAM SHOWING HOW WEAVING IS DONE

of the warp. The weaver took finer thread, called the *weft*, and wound it on a stick or *shuttle*. All was now ready for weaving. The shuttle was pushed in and out between the threads of warp. Forward and back went the shuttle lacing the weft with the warp and making cloth. The hand loom generally in use in the eighteenth century was little more than a wooden frame for holding the warp in place while the weaver operated the shuttle.

The Spinning Jenny. At the very time when James Watt was making his first improvements in the steam engine, a clever mechanic at Blackburn, England, James Hargreaves, was working on a machine for spinning several threads at once. About 1767, two years before Watt's first patent, Hargreaves built a machine which he called a "jenny" (perhaps after his wife). His machine had eight spindles instead of one and could be operated easily by a child.

The Factory System. A year later an English barber, Richard Arkwright, took out a patent for another spinning machine. He made several of them and drove them all by a water wheel. For this reason he is called "the father of the factory system." By this time scores of mechanics were trying to perfect the spinning jenny. At last there was built a machine which spun several hundred threads at a time and required the attention of merely one or two boys or girls to mend the threads when they broke.

The Power Loom. The invention of the spinning

machine, of course, increased immensely the output of yarn. The weavers then had to "speed up." It was not strange, therefore, that inventors should think of improving the old-fashioned and slow hand loom. Indeed, as early as 1738 an English mechanic, John

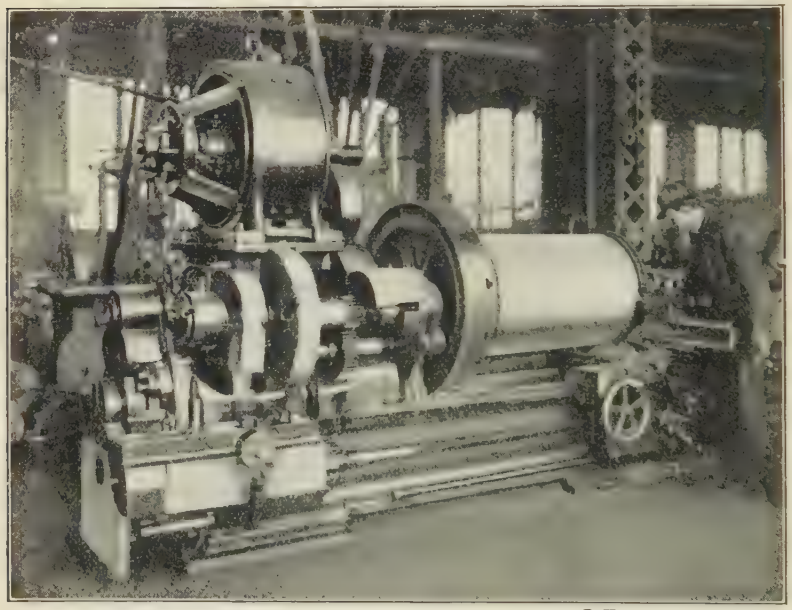
© Keystone View Co., Inc.

GLIMPSE OF A MODERN SPINNING MACHINE IN A FACTORY

Kay, hit upon the idea of driving the shuttle to and fro by means of a lever or handle attached to the loom.

For nearly fifty years no other important improvements were made. Then, just as the American revolution was coming to a close, an English clergyman,

Edmund Cartwright, began to work on a loom that could be driven by power. By 1787, he had his machine in operation. It was a cumbersome affair, at first, but year after year it was improved and refined. At length a loom was perfected that would throw the



© Keystone View Co., Inc.

A Modern Lathe to Turn Heavy Iron Work

shuttle to and fro four hundred times a minute and weave the most complicated patterns.

Iron and Steel. When the age of invention opened, the methods employed in making iron were almost as crude as in Caesar's day. Charcoal was used to melt the ore, and hand bellows to furnish the blast for the

very hot fire required. Small pieces of iron were tempered into steel by a slow hand process. As long as such tedious methods lasted, invention in other fields was limited, for machines are nearly all made of iron and steel. Without them, there could be no railways, steamships, or steam engines, to say nothing of spinning jennies, looms, and a thousand other useful machines.

The situation was fully understood by many inventors, and about 1750 they started a revolution in the iron industry. At that time coal was first applied to smelting iron ore. In a few years the bellows were thrown away and the blast was furnished by compressed air from iron cylinders. Within forty years, the steam engine was harnessed to drive the air-blast machine. In the course of time, hot air was substituted for cold air, and a way was discovered for changing iron into steel in immense quantities as it poured from the furnace.

The Flood of Inventions. As soon as the human mind was turned to invention, there seemed to be no limit to its powers. The Greek philosophers had scorned the practical arts; the modern nations glorified them. Every year the patent offices of the European countries had to make room for new contrivances.

From America, Europe borrowed the telegraph and telephone (*First Book*, pp. 228–231). The idea of a cable under the Atlantic Ocean was also American, but European capitalists helped to realize it in 1866. In many fields Americans and Europeans exchanged ideas.

They learned from and taught each other. Invention became international.

Every branch of industry and agriculture was transformed by machinery and steam. The inventor triumphed over Nature. He harnessed her power to turn

© *Keystone View Co., Inc.*

VIEW OF AN IRON FOUNDRY IN ENGLAND

his wheels. He devised millions of supple fingers to take the place of human ones. He discovered a real fairyland of science. At the touch of his magic wand, cloth, knives, forks, spoons, plates, cups, saucers, shoes, lumber, nails, typewriters, sewing machines, reapers,

automobiles, telephones, telegraph instruments, locomotives, and electric lights flowed in avalanches from his giant factories. So it became possible for the masses to have comforts and even luxuries once denied to kings and princes. Surely the inventor deserves a place in history as well as the warrior and the politician.

The Meaning of the Industrial Revolution

The Era of the Business Men. Before the age of steam and machinery, agriculture was the chief occupation of the people; landlords and clergy were the leading men of affairs. As we have seen, these men held the high offices in the government under the king's authority. They directed the thought and labor of the people. Commerce, it is true, called into being a large class of merchants; but as long as the goods were made only by hand, the opportunities for trade were limited.

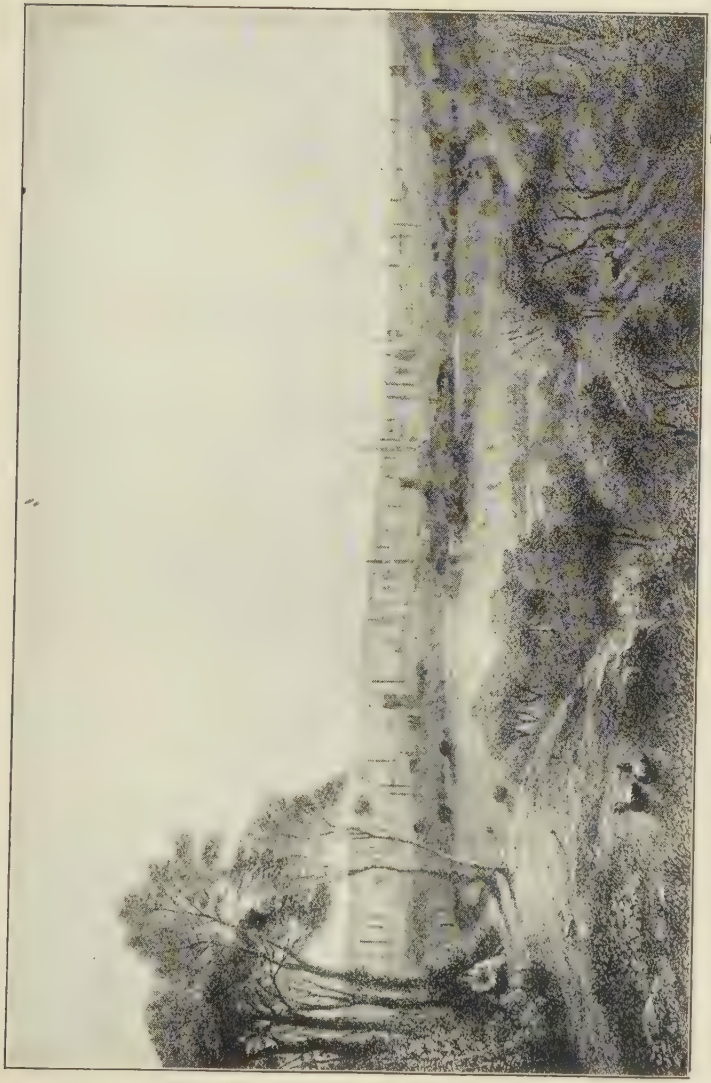
With the age of Watt and Fulton came the modern business men. They raised the money for factories and machines, organized industries, and brought together hosts of workers. They planned railroads and steamship lines. They searched the four corners of the earth for markets in which to sell the goods they manufactured. They advertised and "pushed" their wares, putting new things before the people, creating new wants, and so making fresh business all the time.

Ever alive to chances for greater profits, the business man discarded old methods, "boosted" new ideas,

and encouraged "progress." The medieval merchant had been a man of progress as compared with the landlord; but the business man put all the drive of a steam engine into "making things move." The ox cart, the hand loom, the sickle, and the flail were made obsolete by his railway, power loom, reaper, and threshing machine. Through their energy, their wealth, and their ingenuity the business men became more powerful than the clergy and nobility put together.

The Industrial Workers. The steam engine and machinery also changed vitally the position of working people. In olden times, when tools were simple and cheap and operated mainly by hand power, every enterprising young man could look forward to the day when he would own a set of tools and be his own master. It is true that a clever mechanic sometimes gathered several hand looms under a single roof and hired employees to operate them. Still there was little to be gained by this. Goods could not be made more cheaply. As long as weaving was done by hand, the loom was usually found in the home and all the family took part in making cloth.

With the coming of steam and machinery, hand tools were driven out of business. The slow and weary arms of men and women could not compete with the swift and tireless steam engine. Therefore, in place of the small shop there came the vast factory. Working people — men, women, and children — went out of their homes to tend machines in huge mills. They



From an old print

THE ENGLISH MANUFACTURING CITY, MANCHESTER, WITH ITS HUNDREDS OF CHIMNEY STACKS

no longer owned the tools with which they worked. They were employees of the men who furnished the capital to buy the machinery. They could seldom expect to become employers themselves.

Thus there grew up in Europe a large class of people who did not own land or tools and who depended for a livelihood upon the sale of their labor to factory owners. In order to increase their wages and reduce their hours of work, employees in the leading trades formed trade unions. So the working classes drew together. Many strikes and long contests between employers and employees resulted from the efforts of trade unionists to better their lot.

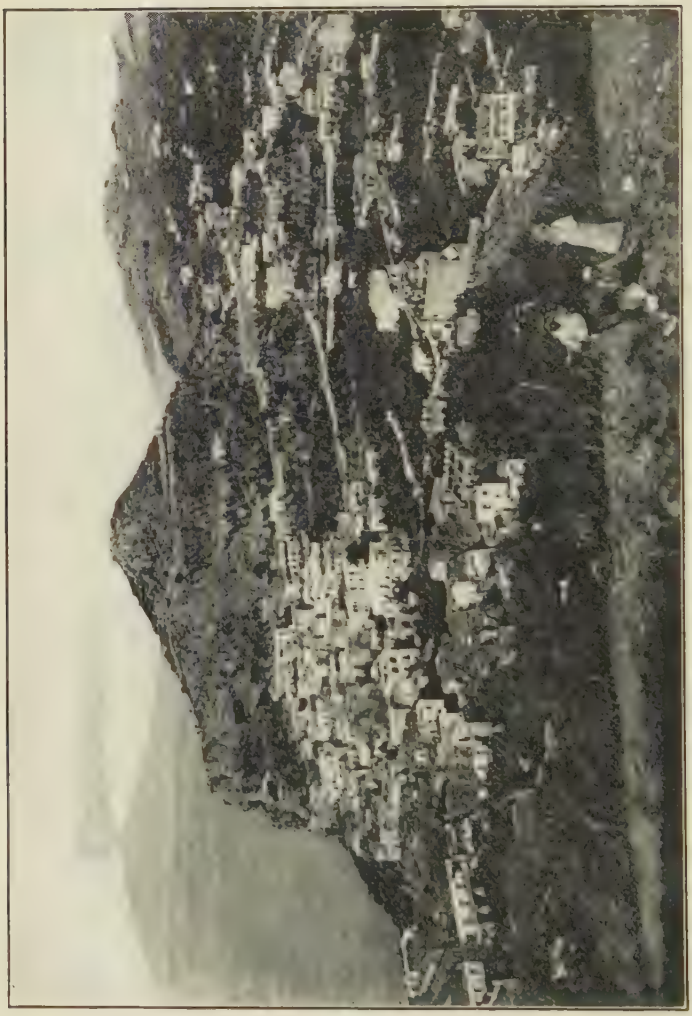
The Growth of Industrial Cities. All through antiquity and the middle ages, the great mass of the people lived in the country and worked on the land. At the time of the French revolution, perhaps nine tenths of the people of Europe were peasants or artisans living in small villages.

The steam engine and machinery made a revolution in their lives. The factory was a great magnet which drew men and women and children into the towns. Important centers of trade and industry became gigantic cities. At the end of the nineteenth century most of the people of England were city dwellers. Ancient Rome at the height of her glory had about five or six hundred thousand inhabitants; modern London has about seven millions. Within a radius of thirty miles of Manchester there were, in 1920, about

fifteen million people, nearly all employed in factories, mines, and shops.

Industrial Panics. These huge industrial cities were helpless without trade. They could grow no food or raw materials, like wheat or cotton, for themselves. If business was poor, factories were shut down and working people were unemployed. The peasants in the country usually had something to eat and wear. They could produce these things for themselves if they could not buy them. The industrial workers in the towns, on the contrary, were at the mercy of the market. If the demand for cloth or shoes fell off, there was a falling off in the demand for labor to make them. About every ten or fifteen years during the nineteenth century, the cities of Europe suffered from a panic and bad business conditions. Thousands were unemployed and driven into poverty. Certainly the lot of many industrial workers was not to be envied by the peasants on the land.

The Contest of Industry and Agriculture. After the invention of the steam engine, industry steadily gained in importance as compared with agriculture — that is, in the number of people employed, the money invested, and the profits made. As England was the original home of the industrial revolution, so England took the lead as an industrial nation. By the end of the nineteenth century, four fifths of the English people were engaged in factories, shops, offices, mines, and warehouses, and lived in cities; only one fifth remained



A Glimpse of Italy near Naples Showing how Italian Peasants Cultivate even the Mountain Tops (Mt. Vesuvius Smoking in the Distance)

in agriculture. Germany stood next with two thirds of her people in industrial and business pursuits and one third on the soil. France was about equally divided between town and country. In Italy, Austria, and parts of Russia, industry was growing steadily, but not as rapidly as in western Europe.

In fact, in northern, eastern, and southern Europe agriculture held its own during the nineteenth century as the chief occupation of the masses. There the tillers of the soil, with a few machines to help them, worked the land with hoes and spades as their forefathers had done in the middle ages.

In many places, especially Ireland, Italy, Poland, Russia, and Hungary, the land was not divided into small farms but was mainly held in great estates by rich landlords. Serfdom had practically disappeared by 1861, but millions of European peasants did not own any land. The landlords would not break up and sell their estates. So the peasants were not able to buy land. They had to work as renters or day laborers, if they found work at all. As their numbers multiplied, it became more and more difficult to find employment. There were few factories in those countries and, as time went on, the working people had to search far and wide for opportunities to earn a livelihood.

Resulting Migration. Amid these changing conditions, the fixed ways of living common in the middle ages were broken up. Peasants whose ancestors

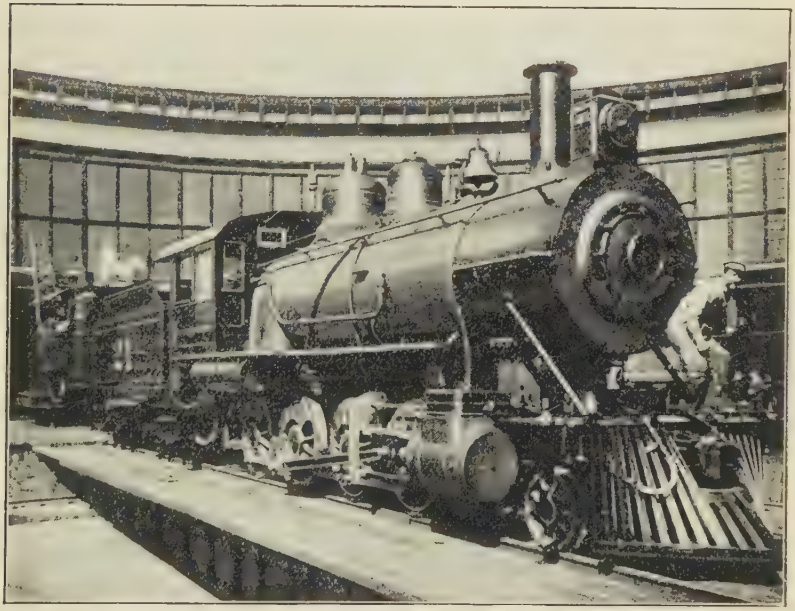
had lived undisturbed in their native villages for a thousand years were drawn into industrial towns. Millions of working men and women began to move to and fro. Artisans in search of employment or seeking to improve their lot went from city to city.

At the same time migration from nation to nation set in on a large scale. Peasants from all parts of Europe went across the sea in throngs to find homes in North America, South America, or Australia. Moreover, there were constant changes in migration itself. As industries multiplied in England and Germany, for example, the growing populations of the rural districts found work in neighboring factories. English and German migration to America, therefore, fell off until by 1890 it had dwindled to a small stream.

By that time, however, the emigration to the United States from the farming regions of Scandinavia, Italy, Austria-Hungary, and eastern Europe generally, as well as from Ireland, had become very large. Of the 1,058,000 Europeans who entered the United States in 1914, one of the years of heaviest immigration, more than one half were from Italy, Austria-Hungary, Ireland, Denmark, Sweden, and Norway. Whoever would understand America to-day, therefore, must look across the ocean to the lands whence came so many million citizens.

The Influence of the Railways. By connecting the chief cities of the same country, the railways built up national trade. They enabled certain districts to

engage in iron or cloth manufacture and to rely upon other sections for food and fuel. The most backward and out-of-the-way places were brought into touch with the most progressive business centers. For example, a Frenchman from the north of France, who



© Keystone View Co., Inc.

An American Locomotive Ready for Shipment to China

had scarcely ever seen a Frenchman from Marseilles, could now make a journey to that city in about fifteen hours. Newspapers could be carried quickly from one section to another; they helped to give the people a larger outlook and to overcome local jealousies. In a

word, railways tended to unite all parts of the same nation and to foster the spirit of nationalism (see below, p. 354).

Then the railways overleaped national boundaries. The railway companies of different nations arranged to run cars from one country to another, and indeed across many countries. Long before the end of the nineteenth century, it was possible to take a through car from Paris to Berlin and St. Petersburg, or from Paris to Rome, or from Paris to Milan, Venice, Athens, or Constantinople. When larger and larger engines were built, the speed was increased until the journey from Paris to Constantinople could be made in three days. It took Caesar's legions more than a month to march from Rome to Paris; the steam locomotive can make the trip easily in twenty-four hours.

Railways thus became important factors in extending trade and preparing for war. The Germans, for example, planned a long line extending from Berlin to Constantinople and Bagdad. This was to bind Turkey and western Asia into a close union with central Europe. In this way, the Germans hoped to draw to themselves much of the trade that had once been carried by British merchant ships. The English were equally busy with plans for a railway line from Cairo, Egypt, to Cape Town far away at the southern tip of Africa. At the same time, Germany, France, and Russia were building railway lines to their frontiers. These were to be used in sending forward troops and supplies

European Railways

in case of war. So the railway, which helped so much to unite nations, also served to divide them and prepare them for war on a vast scale.

The Influence of the Steamship. The steamship brought about quick, safe, and cheap communication between the most distant parts of the earth. Thus millions of Europeans were enabled to use tea, coffee, sugar, and other tropical products for the first time. Great manufacturing districts, such as those around Manchester in England, came to depend upon raw cotton bought in Egypt and the United States and upon the sale of their cloth in all parts of the world.

Equally important was the effect of the steamship on emigration to the United States. In colonial times, a European workman often had to bind himself to labor for a term of at least five years to pay his passage to America (*First Book*, p. 76). Toward the end of the nineteenth century, the steerage fare from Liverpool to New York sometimes fell as low as $25. At the most, not more than a few weeks' labor served to pay the cost of the voyage. Consequently millions of the poorest people of Europe came to America. Moreover, the steamship companies were always bidding against one another to get passengers. They sent advertisements and agents into the highways and byways of Europe; they offered special favors to all who would buy tickets to America. So the stream of migration swelled with the passing years.

Cheap passenger rates also had another striking

effect upon migration. In the old days when the voyage was so costly, those who went to America went to stay. When the cost of their passage fell to $25 or $30, thousands of Europeans went to the United States merely to make money. After they had made it, they returned home and bought land for themselves. Moreover, thousands went back and forth, having no fixed

A Great Trans-Atlantic Steamship

home anywhere. This meant that the United States acquired many residents and workers who were not citizens — many residents who cared little about the fate of America and a great deal about making money out of America in a hurry.

The steamship also introduced new and serious elements into warfare. It brought closer together countries that were once separated by journeys of

weeks or months. A steamship can now cross the Atlantic in less time than it took George Washington to go from Philadelphia to Cambridge, in 1776, to take command of the American army. The very fact of being brought so close to Europe has made warfare at sea more serious than ever. Nations have grown to depend heavily upon trade by sea and upon food brought in ships. When war occurs, the country with the strongest navy can cut off the trade and the food of its enemies. This is what Great Britain did to France during the Napoleonic wars and to Germany during the World War that opened in 1914. So sea power has become one of the mighty factors in shaping the world's history. It was a great factor in the day of the sailing vessel. It is greater still in the day of the steamship.

The Contest for Natural Resources. Besides making all these changes in the life of the peoples of Europe, steam and machinery added fresh sources of dispute among nations. In ancient times and in the middle ages, the masses of the people lived on bread, wine, and olive oil. They had only a few simple garments, and they usually slept on piles of straw. Their wants were supplied from materials at hand. Bread came from the fields and cloth from the backs of sheep. Each community and each nation met nearly all its own needs and did not depend very much on its neighbors.

With the invention of the steam engine and machinery, this local independence came to an end. Few

nations have all the raw materials used in their industries. If a nation does not have iron and coal, at least, it lacks the chief elements of industrial success. It must either get these things by trade or obtain territory in which they are to be found. For this reason, Germany reached out to get possession of French iron mines in Alsace-Lorraine. England likewise reached out to get petroleum in Mesopotamia and coal in China. Modern industry, therefore, with its need of vast supplies of raw materials made great changes in the relations of nations, just as it changed the relations of people within each nation. Nations that had formerly fought for territory to be tilled by their peasants or pastured by their flocks, now began to fight for territory on account of the wealth that lay beneath the soil.

Questions and Exercises

I. Preceding chapters have told of the English revolution, the American revolution, and the French revolution. We have learned that such revolutions are called "political." The present chapter tells about the "industrial revolution." In what important ways did the industrial revolution differ from the political revolutions? In what way did the industrial revolution differ from the earlier "religious" revolution (see chapter ix)?

II. 1. Make a list of the different kinds of power that are now used. Which of these were used by primitive men (chapter ii)? Which were used by the Romans? 2. In what way did the invention of the steam engine "place unlimited power at the service of mankind"? 3. Why is Watt's name so much better known than are the names of the inventors who first used steam

power to operate pumps? 4. Can you think of any reasons that will explain why the use of steam was at first much more successful in moving boats on the water than in moving cars on the land? 5. Compare the work of Watt, Fulton, and Stephenson. Of the three, whom do you regard as rendering the greatest service, and why?

III. 1. What progress had been made in spinning and weaving before the use of steam power? The earliest textile mills were operated by water power. Is water power still used for this purpose? (Find from your geographies where the important centers of textile manufacturing in America are now located.) In what way did the introduction of steam power help the textile industry? 2. How did the increased use of machinery increase the demand for iron and steel? What improvements were made in the production of iron and steel because of this demand? 3. This chapter has dealt in part with three great topics: the application of steam power to transportation by sea and land; the development of the textile industry through improved machinery and the use of power; the development of the iron and steel industry. Think of the various ways in which these three kinds of progress helped one another.

IV. 1. Tell why, after the industrial revolution, the "business man became more powerful than the clergy and nobility combined." 2. In what ways did the workers benefit by the industrial revolution? In what ways were they perhaps as badly off as they were before? How did they try to better their condition? 3. How did the industrial revolution make possible the growth of great cities? Why was it impossible for these huge cities to grow up before the use of steam power in transportation? In manufacturing? 4. How does the life of the workers in the great cities compare to-day with the life of the peasants and artisans during the middle ages? 5. Locate on the map facing p. 436 the principal industrial countries of Europe to-day. Locate the principal agricultural countries. From what countries have most

of the recent immigrants to the United States come? Why? 6. In what important ways in addition to carrying foodstuffs and manufactured goods have railroads and steamships changed modern life?

Suggestions for Reading

Darrow, F. L. — *The Boy's Own Book of Great Inventions;* Macmillan.

Holland, Rupert S. — *Historic Inventions*, iv, v; Jacobs.

Marshall, H. E. — *An Island Story*, xcvi; Stokes.

Quennell — *A History of Everyday Things in England*, II, iii to p. 166.

Van Loon — *The Story of Mankind* (*School edition*), lvii, lviii, lix.

Warren — *Stories from English History*, pp. 383–406.

CHAPTER XIV

NATIONALISM IN THE NINETEENTH CENTURY

The Idea of Nationalism. Almost every one has a love for the place where he was born. All persons are likely to be proud of their own town, their state, their country. People feel more fellowship with those that speak their own language and belong to their own race than they do with those who speak other languages and belong to other races. This love of the homeland and feeling of fellowship is the spirit of *nationalism*. The whole idea is summed up in such slogans as "Italy for the Italians" and "Poland for the Poles." It was defined by President Wilson during the World War in this manner: "No people must be forced to live under a sovereignty under which it does not wish to live. No territory must change hands except for the purpose of securing to those who inhabit it a fair chance of life and liberty."

Slow Growth of Nationalism in Olden Times. The rulers of the ancient world had no respect for nationalism. Egyptian, Babylonian, and Persian conquerors showed no regard for races and nations as such but subdued them all with equal severity. The Romans

brought within their broad empire the swarthy African as well as the fair Briton. They prevented wars of races by uniting them all under one rule. The Catholic Church, in many ways the heir of the old Roman empire, likewise made no distinction among nationalities. "Of one blood are all races of men," ran the language of the Bible; so the Christian ideal was that all men should join in one religious brotherhood under one head, the pope at Rome. The very word *Catholic* means "universal" or "all-embracing." The idea of the Church was peace and the union of nations rather than a sharp division of them along lines of race and language.

The Practice of European Kings. The Church, however, was not strong enough to keep peace and hold all Christendom together. As we have seen, numerous kings and princes rose and flourished in feudal Europe. They paid no more attention to the "rights of nations" than did the imperial despots of antiquity. In their numerous wars they were always trying to bring new subject races under their swords. At peace settlements, they handed peoples and territories around as if they were so much property. This was such a common practice that the peoples bartered and sold by kings and princes seldom made any protest. In fact, one king was so like another that a change of masters made little difference.

Western Europe Contrasted with Central and Eastern Europe. As we have seen, France, England, and Spain had become nations by the close of the middle

ages. Each of them was ruled by one king and had a national language and literature. For hundreds of years, however, central and eastern Europe made little or no advance in nationalism. There many a race was divided and ruled by different kings. There it was a common thing for the same king to have, as his subjects, people of different races and tongues. Germans, Italians, Poles, Czechs, Serbs, Rumanians, and many other races were divided, handed about, and ruled without any respect for their wishes.

The Settlement of 1815. This treatment of races was so common that few princes or governments ever thought of changing it. When the royal diplomats met in 1815, after the overthrow of Napoleon, they showed no respect for the rights of peoples. They found the Germans divided among many princes, and they left them divided. They found the Italians distributed among half a score of rulers, and they left them about as they were. They saw the Poles divided into three groups, ruled by Russia, Prussia, and Austria, and they made no change in that situation. None of these royal agents thought of criticizing the czar for holding down Finns, Swedes, Letts, and Poles by force. None of them dreamed of attacking the emperor of Austria-Hungary for keeping nine distinct races under his scepter. They thought him clever when he took as his motto " Divide and rule " and when he called in one of his subject races to crush an uprising of another.

The Awakening of Nationalism. On the surface of

EUROPE IN 1815

things it appeared in 1815 as if this old custom of dividing and bartering races could go on forever. Soon, however, the spirit of nationalism began to upset the plans and confidence of kings. The idea of nationalism had been deeply planted by the French revolutionists when they boldly announced that the people, not kings, had the right to make laws and levy taxes. It was only a slight step forward to declare that any people or race also had the right to choose its own government and governors.

The idea thus planted had been nourished by Napoleon. He called on Italians, Germans, and Spaniards to cast off their kings and princes. At the same time, he himself acted like a tyrant toward them when they did. Then the Italians and Germans began to plan to get rid of him. It was when all Germany lay prostrate under the heel of Napoleon that German orators and teachers began to appeal to the people to rouse from their slumber, shake off their chains, and assert their rights as a nation.

Other forces, too, helped to create a national feeling. When railways came, they bound together the different sections of the same country. Trade cemented the ties of blood between these sections. Newspapers and books, circulating widely, gave to the same race common ideas and common hopes. The schools and the press overcame local dialects and gave a common tongue to each people. Poets, men of letters, patriot orators, in ballad, song, editorial, and stirring speech, praised

the glories of their respective races and called for unity. In time, therefore, armies that had once fought for the glory of princes were ready to fight for national glory and independence. Then kings and princes began to take note of this national spirit among the people and to use it cleverly for their own ends.

How Germany and Italy Became Nations

The German Confederation. A slight step had been taken toward German unity in 1815. It was then agreed that the thirty-four states, each ruled by a prince, and the four free towns, governing themselves, should be bound together in a union or *confederation*. It was, however, a very loose union, something like that of the American states under the Articles of Confederation (*First Book*, pp. 149–154). Moreover, it was not a union of people, but of sovereign princes and free cities. The parliament or congress set up for this confederacy was only a council of diplomats, chosen by the princes and the cities. It had very little meaning for the whole German people.

There were several reasons for this. The most important was the jealousy of the princes. Each of them wanted to keep his full power over that section of the German people which he himself ruled. The kings of Prussia, Austria, Saxony, Bavaria, and Wurtemburg all cared more for their own little realms than they did for a German nation.

The Movement for National Unity. Nevertheless

three important factors in Germany were working for unity.

1. The king of Prussia was ready to have unity at any time — if he could be master of the whole empire.

2. Merchants and manufacturers wanted unity. That would mean abolishing the taxes on trade between the German states, freedom of trade in Germany, and a duty on imports from foreign countries which would make it harder for foreigners to compete with Germans. In this they had before them the example of the United States.

3. The third force making for unity was the activity of those who longed to see the German people united under a constitution of their own making. They thought they could carry out their design in 1848, when there was a general revolution against kings all over Europe. A congress of German delegates met at Frankfort, debated for many weeks, and drew up a national constitution. They could not, however, put it into effect because the king of Prussia, who despised the rule of the people, opposed it. He was waiting for his chance to bring about unity by the sword and to make himself master. He therefore persecuted those who pleaded for union and democracy. He drove from the land thousands of the friends of liberty, many of whom settled in the United States. Among them was Carl Schurz, who served with honor in the Union army during the American war between the states and as an officer in the federal government in after years.

Bismarck and Prussia. In 1861, the king of Prussia called to his aid one of the most ingenious and powerful statesmen of modern times, Otto von Bismarck. These two men then set out deliberately upon the task of uniting Germany, " by blood and iron," under Prussian control. They enlarged the Prussian army. When the Prussian parliament refused to vote taxes, they collected the taxes anyhow. They waged war on the king of Denmark and wrested Schleswig-Holstein from him in 1864. They waged war on Austria and drove it out of the German union. They broke up the old Confederation of 1815 and formed a new system known as the *North German Confederation.*

The Franco-Prussian War and the German Empire. They picked a quarrel with Napoleon III, who had managed to make himself emperor of the French. Napoleon III was a man as ambitious as his famous uncle, but he had less ability. In 1870 France declared war on Prussia and was badly defeated. As a result, the Germans took away from France the two provinces of Alsace and Lorraine. At the same time, four South German states, still outside the union, joined the German Confederation. The Confederation itself was turned into an empire. The king of Prussia was crowned first German emperor on French soil in the royal palace at Versailles in 1871.

Nearly all Germans, except those in Austria, were at last united — and with them many Danes, Poles, and French, in spite of themselves. From a people once

From a famous painting *Photo © Keystone View Co., Inc.*

THE KING OF PRUSSIA HAILED AS GERMAN EMPEROR IN 1871. BISMARCK (IN A WHITE UNIFORM) STANDS JUST AT THE FOOT OF THE THREE STEPS

divided and the prey of foreigners, the Germans had become a powerful military nation. They now had an imperial ruler of their own and were feared throughout Europe as the French had once been.

Italy in 1815. The Italians, unlike the Germans, were not even united in a loose confederacy by the Vienna settlement of 1815. On the contrary, Italy was made up of many independent states. In the north, Austria owned Lombardy and Venetia outright, and members of the Austrian family ruled over three little duchies besides. Across the center of the peninsula were the independent States of the Church, governed by the pope. In the south was the kingdom of the Two Sicilies under the sway of Spanish Bourbons. The island of Sardinia and Piedmont on the mainland were governed by the king of Sardinia.

Most of the Italian sovereigns were equally interested in keeping the country divided and in putting down all ideas of popular government. Austrian military bands played in St. Mark's square in Venice to amuse the people, but the Venetians were not allowed to discuss politics or independence.

Mazzini and the Spirit of Italian Nationalism. Many Italians of the younger generation refused to be contented with their lot. They remembered that Italy had once been united under Rome. They recalled the glories of the ancient republic and of the Roman empire. They appealed to the people to arise, cast off the yokes of princes, and form an Italian nation.

Among the leaders of this movement was Joseph Mazzini (1805–1872), an eloquent speaker, a moving writer, and a brave man of action. He formed a society, known as *Young Italy*, which aimed at Italian unity under a republican form of government. "Young Italy," he said, "is a brotherhood of Italians . . . who are convinced that Italy is destined to become one nation, convinced also that she possesses sufficient strength within herself to become one." For nearly fifty years he preached the gospel of unity, fearing not prison, exile, or battlefield. In 1848, when all Europe was in revolution and the Germans at Frankfort were trying to make a national constitution, Mazzini and his followers seized the city of Rome and declared a republic. The attempt failed, and Mazzini was driven into exile.

Cavour and Victor Emmanuel. The next year there came to the throne of Sardinia Victor Emmanuel, who desired Italian unity provided it could be brought about under his management. Moreover, he had a clever minister, Count Cavour, who ardently hoped that Sardinia might play in Italy the part played by Prussia in Germany. He did not believe that a republic was possible; but he thought that the king of Sardinia, with the aid of France, might drive out the Austrians, overthrow all the other princes, and become supreme in Italy.

For many years Cavour worked hard to bring this about. In 1859 the time seemed ripe to launch the

scheme by a war against Austria. Supported by Napoleon III, Victor Emmanuel defeated the Austrians at Magenta and Solferino and added Lombardy to his kingdom. Soon uprisings occurred in other parts of Italy in favor of unity. Within a little more than a year, all Italy, except Venetia and a small part of the domains of the pope at Rome, was united. In February, 1861, Victor Emmanuel was proclaimed king of Italy.

Garibaldi and His "Red Shirts." The work of bringing the Two Sicilies into the kingdom was largely done by the patriot Joseph Garibaldi and his band of "Red Shirts," as they were called on account of their uniforms. Garibaldi had been active in Mazzini's Young Italy society and had suffered persecution and exile. For a while he had been a candle maker on Staten Island in the harbor of New York.

From an old print

GARIBALDI

The war on Austria in 1859 gave him a chance to fight for Italian unity. The next year, with the aid of his faithful followers, he overthrew the king of the Two Sicilies. By a vote of the people, southern Italy then joined the North. Garibaldi was hailed as a national hero.

Unity Finally Achieved. When the new kingdom was formed, Venetia was still under Austrian rule and Rome was governed by the pope. Cavour said: "To go to Rome is for Italians not merely a right — it is a stern necessity." Austria, however, was very powerful and the pope was protected by French troops. Yet the opportunity desired by Cavour and Victor Emmanuel came. In 1866 Austria was at war with Prussia. The Italians were then able to obtain the coveted Venetia. Four years later Napoleon III was badly beaten by the Prussians and the French garrison was withdrawn from Rome. Thereupon Victor Emmanuel's troops took possession of the "Eternal City," in spite of the protests of the pope. In 1871 the papal domains were annexed to Italy.

King Victor Emmanuel, amid the cheers of the people, entered Rome and made it the capital of the Kingdom of Italy. The dream of the patriots, Mazzini and Garibaldi, had in part come true. Italy was not a republic as they had hoped; but it was united, and it had a national parliament, one branch of which was elected. Only a few Italians now remained under Austrian rule outside of the union. They, too, were brought into the family at the end of the World War in 1918.

Victor Emmanuel II was everywhere regarded as the founder of united Italy. After his death in 1878 the grateful nation erected in Rome, not far from the old Forum, an imposing monument in his honor that recalled the glories of the Roman empire.

ST. PETER'S IN ROME. (THE PALACE OF THE POPE IS AT THE RIGHT)

Nationalism in Eastern Europe

The Rule of the Turk. While the Germans and Italians were drawing together in national unity, a number of races in southeastern Europe — Bulgarians, Serbs, Rumanians, Greeks, and Montenegrins — were striving with might and main to cast off the rule of an alien monarch, the Turkish sultan. For hundreds of years they had been restless under the sway of a government that was foreign in race and religion. It was in 1453 that the Ottoman Turks, the followers of Mohammed (p. 169), took Constantinople. They drove steadily westward, hoping to bring all Europe under their control. In 1683 they were at the very gates of Vienna. Then the tide turned. They were slowly beaten back by the Austrians, Poles, and Hungarians.

At the opening of the nineteenth century, Turkish rule in the region of southeastern Europe known as the Balkans extended over many subject races. All the territory from the Adriatic Sea northeastward beyond the mouth of the Danube was held by Turkish officers and soldiers. The sultan was absolute in his authority and harsh in his manner of government. He laid heavy taxes upon the conquered provinces and held his subject peoples down by the use of military force. To quarrels over government and taxes were added religious and racial disputes. The masters were Mohammedans and Turks. The subjects were nearly all Christians and of different races from their mas-

ters. Now and then the spirit of nationality, always smoldering, flamed up into civil war in which terrible deeds were done by both parties.

The Rise of Independent Balkan States. The first people to break the Turkish rule were the Serbs, who by desperate efforts won the right of self-government in 1817, under the leadership of Milosh Obrenovitch, a national hero. It was not until sixty years later, however, that the Serbs were able to proclaim their complete independence in the streets of Belgrade, their capital. In doing this they had the aid of Russia. A Serbian prince was chosen king.

The example set by the Serbs in 1817 was soon followed by the Greeks, who also longed to be free from Turkish rule and to revive the ancient glories of their own land. Inspired by stirring appeals from patriot orators, they, too, rose in a desperate revolt. They proclaimed their independence, and called upon the Christian world for help. From all over Europe soldiers flocked to the aid of the Greeks, and supplies were sent from distant lands. Even in the United States, meetings were held to arouse public sentiment in favor of the Greek revolution.

> Fair Greece! Sad relic of departed worth!
> Immortal, though no more; though fallen, great!
> Who now shall lead thy scattered children forth
> And long accustomed bondage uncreate?

So wrote the English poet, Byron, who answered his own question by giving his life to the Greek cause.

In 1832, the powers of Europe recognized the independence of Greece and chose Prince Otto of Bavaria as the king of the new state.

From an old print

GREEK PATRIOTS MOURNING THE DESTRUCTION OF ONE OF THEIR CITIES IN THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE

Nearly half a century passed. Then in 1878, with the military assistance of Russia, Rumania and Montenegro won their independence. At the same time Bulgaria obtained the right of self-government, though it had to pay tribute to the sultan at Constantinople. Even that burden was cast off in 1908 and complete freedom from Mohammedan control was secured. German princes, as a result of action by the European powers, were chosen as kings of Bulgaria and Rumania. A local prince was made head of tiny Montenegro.

Balkan Troubles. Independence by no means brought peace to the Balkans. The Turks still held much territory in Macedonia. Thousands of Serbs

and Rumanians still lived under the Austrian emperor and longed to join their independent countrymen. The Serbs, Rumanians, Bulgars, and Greeks were not satisfied with their boundaries. The races were so mixed that it seemed impossible to fix boundary lines

Nationalities in Austria-Hungary

which pleased them all. The result was constant turmoil among the Balkan states.

Finally the murder of the Austrian archduke by a Serb in July, 1914, was a firebrand that set the whole

world aflame. Then opened the terrible war that raged until 1918, involving countries as far apart as the United States, China, and Brazil. At the close of that war another effort was made to settle the affairs of the Balkans (see below, p. 436).

Nationalism Suppressed in Austria-Hungary. While some of the Balkan races were shaking off the rule of the sultan, their kinsmen in Austria-Hungary were in a constant state of unrest. This empire had been built up through the long centuries by the Hapsburg family, whose members were always busy conquering new lands by arms. At the opening of the nineteenth century Austria-Hungary embraced Germans, Magyars, Hungarians, Rumanians, Italians, Czechs, Slovaks, Poles, Croats, Serbs, and Russians. In Austria proper the Germans were in the lead; in Hungary the Magyars, although for a long time the emperor and his German advisers at Vienna kept a strong hand on all sections and all races.

Against this strict rule the subject peoples early began to protest. In 1848 they revolted. The next year the Hungarians declared their independence and chose the patriot Louis Kossuth as their governor. In a few months the armies of Austria, aided by Russia, came down upon the Hungarians and took away their liberty again. Kossuth, driven into exile, was brought to the United States in an American war vessel. There he was received as one of the world's heroes.

Though conquered, Hungary won a certain degree

of freedom. Later it was permitted to take its place as an equal beside Austria under a common ruler. The Czechs, Slovaks, Rumanians, Serbs, and other peoples under the control of Austria-Hungary, however, were not so fortunate. So they kept up their restless agitation for independence until they got it after the World War (see below, p. 436).

Nationalism in Russia. Following the examples set by the Hohenzollerns and Hapsburgs, the czars of Russia had added to their dominions any territory they could seize or conquer. By this method they extended their empire from the Baltic Sea to the Pacific Ocean. At the same time, they brought under their scepter Finns, Lithuanians, Latvians or Letts, Esthonians, Poles, Jews, Tartars, Armenians, Mongols, and Georgians.

All the subject peoples were ruled, as indeed were the Russians themselves, by the absolute power of the czar. Though serfdom was abolished in 1861, the people were not given any voice in their government. Moreover, the czar did all he could to "Russify" the aliens; that is, compel them to take the Russian language and customs instead of their own. This process was a bitterly hated one; many and long were the protests and struggles against it. Yet the might of the czar, with his spies and his armies, was too much for the stoutest opponents. Not until the World War broke up the Romanoff empire were the various subject nations released from Russian control.

Dangers of Extreme Nationalism. The long struggles of European races for unity and independence were accompanied by many heroic deeds and sacrifices. Thousands of men and women gave up their comfort, their safety, and even their lives that their countries might win the right of self-government. We owe to this spirit of devotion many an inspiring poem and many a noble deed.

There was, nevertheless, another side to the spirit of nationalism. Those who were loudest in claiming their own right to liberty were often the very first to oppress others. Volumes could be filled with examples of such cruelty chosen at random from the pages of European history. Moreover, the spirit of nationalism easily grew into the spirit of arrogance. Pride in race and nation gave way to boasting and contempt for other nations.

So nationalism, inflamed by orators, became one of the most dangerous forces in the world. When kings fought for their own ends they usually had small armies of hired soldiers. When nations began to fight, all the energies of united peoples were enlisted. It remains to be seen, therefore, whether nationalism can be kept within bounds and made safe for humanity or whether it is to fill the world with endless wars.

Nationalism and Immigration to America. The many hard struggles of European peoples which we have just recounted have a very close relation to American history. The United States was a place of refuge

for revolutionary leaders, like Schurz, Kossuth, and Garibaldi, when their plans for national independence and unity went wrong. In addition to the leaders, thousands of people from all the subject races of Europe flocked to America in search of freedom. The American people began to speak of the United States as "the asylum of the oppressed of all nationalities," and encouraged immigrants to seek homes in our country. Once here, the Germans, Irish, Poles, Jews, and other races still kept in touch with their native lands. They formed societies and raised money for the benefit of those who were keeping up the battle for freedom at home. They often urged the government of the United States to give aid to those they had left behind. Thus many strong ties were formed between the New World and the Old.

Questions and Exercises

I. 1. What is meant by the "spirit of nationalism"? 2. Study the statement by President Wilson (p. 354). Find what the word "sovereignty" means. Under the sovereignty of what nation do you live? Under what sovereignty are the people of Canada? The people of the Philippine Islands? The people of India? What was Mr. Wilson's plan for deciding under what sovereignty a people should live? 3. How does this differ from the way in which the ancient and medieval kings treated conquered peoples? 4. Why are a common language and a common literature so important in giving to a people the spirit of nationalism? 5. What is meant by a "dialect"? Persons who speak the same language but use different dialects often find it hard to understand one another. How would the establishment of schools and news-

papers overcome this difficulty and make it possible for larger numbers of people to have a common spirit of nationalism? 6. Some people believe that a single language may sometime be developed to replace the different languages now in use. What hopes do these people probably have in mind in suggesting a universal language? Why would it be more difficult to establish such a language than it has been to overcome the differences in dialects?

II. 1. How does a "confederation" differ from a "union"? In what important ways did the German Confederation formed in 1815 differ from a true nation? 2. How did the Prussian king and Bismarck bring about national unity in Germany? How had the delegates of the people who met at Frankfort in 1848 hoped to build a German nation? In your judgment, which was the better way, and why? 3. How did the Franco-Prussian War come about? What were its important results? 4. What were the important differences between the way in which the German people were made into a nation and the way in which the Italian people became a nation? Compare the work of Mazzini, Victor Emmanuel, and Garibaldi with the work of Bismarck and the king of Prussia.

III. 1. Find out in what ways the Mohammedan religion differs from the Christian religion. 2. In 1815 the people of Italy had a common language and a common religion, but were divided among different sovereignties. How did this condition differ from that of the people of Turkey? 3. Give as many reasons as you can to explain why the formation of free nations in southeastern Europe was more difficult than in western Europe. 4. Compare conditions in Austria-Hungary in 1815 with conditions in Germany, Italy, and Turkey at that time. 5. In what ways did the rulers of Russia attempt to build a great Russian nation? With what results? 6. What has the study of this chapter taught you about the things that make a group of people into a true nation? What are some of the dangers of

extreme nationalism? (For example, can *peoples* as well as *kings* be cruel and tyrannical?) Can you think of any steps that a nation might well take to avoid these dangers?

Geographical Studies

1. Compare the map of Europe in 1815 (p. 357) with the map of Europe to-day (facing p. 436). What countries that are now united were then divided under different sovereignties? What nations then divided are now united? 2. How did the growth of the "rule of the people" as opposed to the rule of kings help to make the changes that you find in comparing the two maps? 3. Make a list of the names of places mentioned in this chapter, as was done for chapter xi on pp. 288–289. Then arrange them in columns as you were there instructed to do. Add any new columns that may be necessary.

Suggestions for Reading

Fellows, George E. — *Recent European History*, iv–vi; Sanborn.
O'Neill — *The Story of the World*, xlv.
Van Loon — *The Story of Mankind (School edition)*, liv–lvi.

CHAPTER XV

THE GROWTH OF DEMOCRACY

Attempts to Set the Clock Back. The French revolution, like the English and American revolutions before it, let loose in the world a flood of ideas about the right of the people to govern themselves, especially the notion that all men are equal. During the Napoleonic wars that followed the revolution, French thinkers stirred Europe with ideas of great reforms. Princes were overthrown in many countries, the property of the Church was seized, and serfs were freed. The common people, who had hitherto had no voice in affairs, began to think and to discuss public matters as never before in the history of the world.

After the final defeat of Napoleon, however, many longed to see the "good old times" again as they were before the revolution. Those who had suffered from the loss of property or feudal privileges sought to get back lost wealth. There were also others who believed that the entire revolution had been a terrible wrong and mistake. These helped to restore the kings and princes and to give the Church its former power.

So it happened that a "reaction" followed the defeat of Napoleon at Waterloo in 1815. In Italy, Spain, and many German states, rulers were put upon their thrones again and given their former absolute power over their subjects. Prussia, Russia, and Austria, which had felt the effects of the revolution least, continued to be ruled by absolute monarchs as in olden times. The very idea of a constitution giving the people any power of self-government was condemned by all the leading kings on the continent. In Spain, for instance, advocates of constitutions were liable to the death penalty.

Certain Gains for Democracy. Though kings and princes were restored to their thrones with much pomp, the clock could really not be turned back. In France, a member of the old royal family was crowned as Louis XVIII, but he could no longer rule despotically. A parliament was set up and a large number of Frenchmen were given the right to vote. Taxes could no longer be levied or laws made without the consent of at least some of the people. Serfdom was gone from France and most of Germany forever. Everywhere in western Europe leaders among the peasants, artisans, and merchants boldly continued to discuss their rights and to question the power of princes.

Democracy in France

The Revolution of 1830. The kings soon found how deeply the revolution had stirred the world. The ruler of France thought he could give to the nobility and the clergy the position that they had once held. He thought also that he could control the press and stop popular criticism of his government. He soon learned a lesson.

The people rose against Charles X, the brother and successor of Louis XVIII, in 1830 and forced him to flee from the realm. Among the leaders of the uprising was Lafayette, who had helped Washington establish the American republic and who had taken part in the first French revolution. Attempts were made once more to abolish the monarchy in France. Although these attempts failed, the crown was taken away from the Bourbon king and given to Louis Philippe, who belonged to another branch of the family.

Louis was called king of the French by "the will of the nation" as well as by "the grace of God." Moreover, he aped the simple manners of republican presidents. He did not make a great display of pomp and ceremony, but went about the streets carrying with him a green umbrella for sun or rain. More men were given the right to vote for parliament. The clergy and nobility were forced to one side, and the government of France passed mainly into the hands of business men.

The Revolution of 1848 — Republic and Empire. Louis chose advisers who opposed all further changes. One of them said that there were not more than one hundred thousand men in France who were capable of voting with intelligence and independence. This angered many people, especially the workingmen of the towns who did not have the right to vote under the constitution of 1830. Their discontent increased until in 1848 it broke out in another revolution. Louis Philippe was forced into exile; a republic was proclaimed; and a national convention was elected to draw up a new constitution. In all this the workingmen took a prominent part, in the hope of improving their condition. Women appeared in greater numbers as advocates of woman suffrage.

As in the first revolution, things went peacefully for a while. Then violence followed. The government would not provide work for thousands of unemployed workingmen and terrible fighting took place once more in the streets of Paris. Peace was at last restored by the sword and the new constitution proclaimed. It made provision for a president for a term of four years, as is the case in the United States.

At the first election, to the astonishment of the world, Louis Napoleon, a nephew of the great warrior, Napoleon I, was chosen president of the French republic. Like his famous uncle, he began to scheme to make himself master of France. Within a few years he actually induced the voters to elect him

"Emperor of the French." So the third French revolution, like the first, ended in an empire.

The Crisis of 1870 and the Third Republic. Napoleon III thought of pleasing the French by giving them "military glory." He therefore joined England in a war on Russia in 1854. He helped the Italians drive the Austrians out of part of Italy. He tried to turn Mexico into an empire as an offset to the power of the United States in the New World. Then, in 1870, he became involved in a war with Prussia. This last adventure proved to be his ruin. His armies were defeated and he was taken prisoner.

Thereupon leaders in Paris proclaimed a republic once more. While the German armies were still on French soil, an election was held for a national assembly. After many months of debate, this assembly completed, in 1875, a new constitution. France was a republic for the third time. All adult males were given the right to vote. The hope of the extremists of 1791 was at last realized. France had a president elected by the parliament for a term of seven years instead of a king ruling for life.

Democracy in England

The Old Parliamentary System. In the early part of the eighteenth century, England had stood out as the home of liberty in the Old World (pp. 245–254). The king could not make laws and levy taxes as he pleased. He could appoint and dismiss his mini-

sters, but the taxing and lawmaking power had passed into the hands of Parliament. The king's officers did not censor the press; editors freely discussed politics and criticized the deeds of the king's ministers. Most of the writers who prepared the way

From an old print

AN ENGLISH ELECTION SCENE IN THE EIGHTEENTH CENTURY: SOLICITING A VOTE

for the French revolution gained their leading ideas from the English system of government.

Still England of that day — the England against which America waged her war for independence — was far from a democracy. The king enjoyed high au-

thority. He could choose his own ministers. He could get Parliament to approve almost anything he wanted. By using money to bribe voters in elections and by promising offices to members of Parliament who voted for his plans, the king could nearly always get his own way.

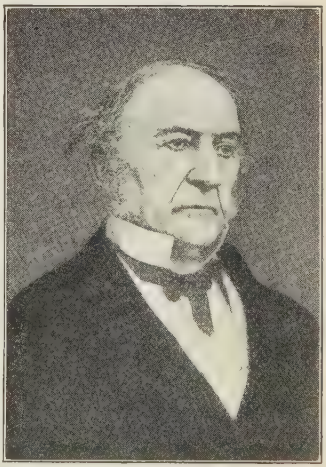
In fact Parliament usually thought as the king did. The House of Lords consisted mainly of nobles, whose number the king could increase by appointing his friends. The members of the House of Commons were elected by popular vote, but they did not speak for the mass of the people. Great cities, like Leeds and Manchester, which had grown up recently, had no members in the Commons. On the other hand, a country village with only a handful of residents had two members in the Commons. In all England there were only about 160,000 voters out of about eight million inhabitants; that is, only about one man in ten had the right to vote for a representative in Parliament.

The Demand for Reform in England. When George III came to the throne in 1760, the demand for a reform of Parliament had already been heard in England. Some leading statesmen asked that the little villages be deprived of their members in the House of Commons. They also proposed that the new cities be given representation.

This spirit of reform was quickened at first by the French revolution. The government that was es-

tablished in France in 1791 was far more democratic than that of England, and societies were formed in England to urge a peaceful revolution there. The reign of terror that soon began in Paris, however, frightened the English. The very idea of any change, even a slight one, was then denounced as dangerous.

The Four Great Reform Bills. It was not until after the overthrow of Napoleon in 1815 that parliamentary reform was again widely debated in England. Then began a long struggle which did not end until our own time. England was made more democratic, however, not by violent revolution, but by gradual reform. There was a great deal of extreme talk but little disorder connected with it. William Ewart Gladstone, long the leader of the Liberal party, which favored reform, and Benjamin Disraeli, head of the Tory party, which favored the old order, finally agreed upon the idea of votes for all men in time to prevent revolution.



From an old print

WILLIAM EWART GLADSTONE

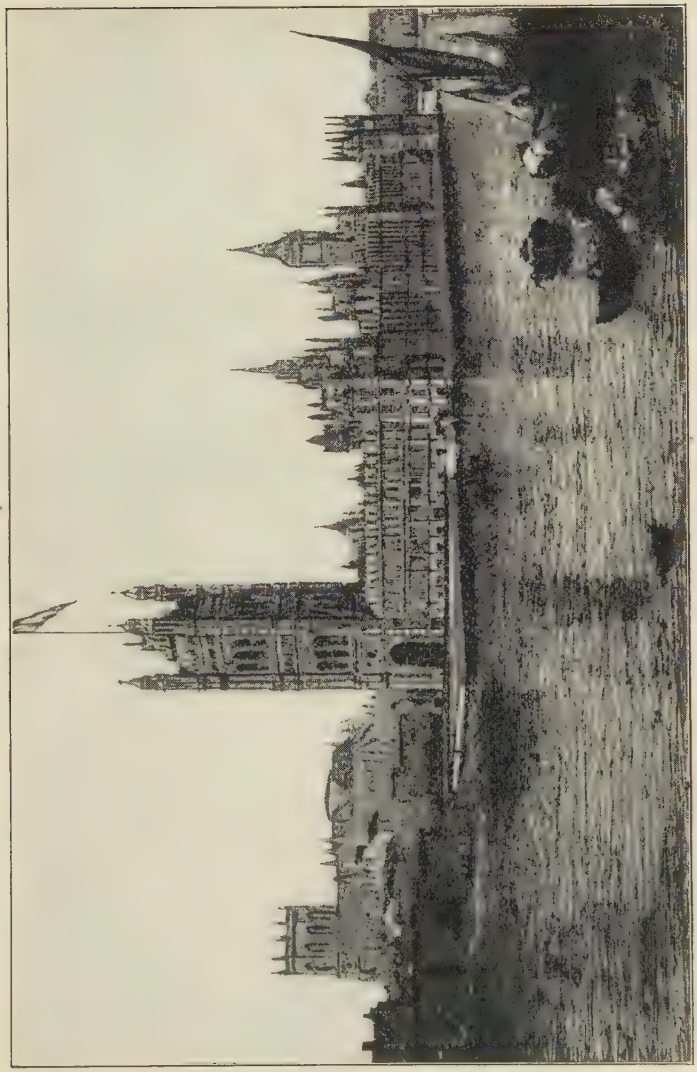
By three great reform bills, passed by Parliament in 1832, 1867, and 1884, the right to vote was gradually extended — each time to a wider circle of men. Before the end of Queen Victoria's long reign, which

extended from 1837 to 1901, practically every man in England who had a settled home could vote.

At the opening of the twentieth century, woman suffrage, or the right of women to vote, became a live issue; and in 1917 Parliament passed the most sweeping reform bill of all. Suffrage for all men was established, and nearly all women thirty years of age or more were given the vote. By this law England became the first of the great nations to grant the vote to women.

The Modern English System. While more people were gaining the right to vote in England, steps were taken to give more power to the voters. The demand was made that the king should give up his right of choosing his own ministers. George III, (*First Book*, p. 103) stoutly resisted it, but before the end of his reign in 1820 he had been forced to yield. From that time forward, the actual government of England was in the hands of a group of ministers, known as the *Cabinet*. They are selected by the party having a majority in the House of Commons.

By long disuse, the king also lost his veto power (p. 179). The House of Lords remained, but in 1911 it was shorn of its power to block bills passed by the lower house. Thus, by a gradual process, the English government became even more democratic than the French plan of 1791 which had alarmed the people of England at that time.



THE ENGLISH PARLIAMENT BUILDINGS IN LONDON

Democracy in Italy

The King. We have seen how the king of Sardinia took the lead in uniting all Italy under his authority. It was in this way that Victor Emmanuel II made himself a national hero. His grandson, Victor Emmanuel III, fell heir to the glory of the house, though not to its popularity. There have been at all times many Italians who favored a republic for their country; yet the king has managed to keep his crown through all the changes of the past decades.

The Italian Parliament. The history of the present Italian form of government runs back to 1848, when Italy, like France, was the scene of a revolution. In that year, the king of Sardinia granted a constitution to his subjects. He created a senate, or upper chamber, composed of men selected by himself; and he established a lower house, or chamber of deputies, elected by the voters. When the king of Sardinia became king of all Italy, this charter of 1848 became the constitution of the kingdom of Italy.

Some changes, however, were made in it from time to time. At first, a large majority of the men were denied the right to vote. In 1895 nearly every man who could read and write and lived regularly at one place was given the ballot. Owing to the backward state of education, however, this law still deprived hundreds of thousands of a share in their government. Finally, in 1918, in the midst of the World War, Italy

gave the vote to all men over twenty-one years of age and also to men under that limit who had served in the war. Thus the democracy of manhood suffrage was established in the Italian kingdom.

Only one branch of the Italian parliament, however, is elected by the voters. The senate was left unchanged by the various reforms. As in the beginning, it is still composed of the princes of the royal family and a number of distinguished men appointed for life by the king. Still, in choosing senators it is the practice of the king to select men who are eminent in literature, science, or public office. On this account the Italian senate differs from the English House of Lords, composed mainly of noblemen, and the American senate, composed of members elected by the voters.

Democracy in Germany

The Prussian Monarchy. Prussia was the leader among the German states. It had more territory and more inhabitants than all the others put together. The Hohenzollern family that ruled Prussia had, as we have seen, built up its kingdom by conquering and annexing neighboring lands. Prussian kings, therefore, relied mainly upon the army to keep them in power. They also had the support of a very rich and haughty nobility that owned large estates. Thus supported, the Hohenzollerns could scorn the very idea that the people should decide for themselves what was good for them. They claimed to hold their

crowns "by the grace of God," as had their ancestors in olden times.

The Prussian System. Still the Prussian kings could not stamp out entirely the idea of democracy. Their subjects, like the French and the Italians, were stirred by the thought of self-government. In 1848, the Prussian people, especially in Berlin, followed the French example in Paris and rose against the monarch. Because he feared something worse, the king of Prussia "graciously granted" a constitution to his subjects. He gave up none of his claims to rule by divine right, but he did create a parliament. One of the branches was composed mainly of the great landlords, who had no more liking for democracy than did the king himself. In the other branch, the people were given a voice. It was, however, only a slight voice. Two thirds of the members in it were elected by a small minority of rich men, while the masses could elect only a third. This was the Prussian system that lasted until the close of the World War (see below, p. 445).

The German Empire. When the German empire was created in 1871 (p. 361), the king of Prussia was chosen emperor and care was taken to keep the German people subject to royal authority. A parliament was established, but the lion's share of power was given to the upper house or *Imperial Council.* This council was made up of agents chosen by the twenty-two German princes and the three free cities. The lower house was elected. All adult males were

CENTRAL EUROPE IN 1871

given the vote; but their representatives in parliament could do very little except talk. The emperor appointed and dismissed ministers at will. In the making of war and peace, the elected branch of the government had no voice. William II, the last of the Hohenzollerns, who was forced to give up his throne in 1918, talked like the despotic Louis XIV. "Looking upon myself as the agent of the Lord," he once said, "I go my way without regard to the opinions and sentiments of the day. . . . The only pillar upon which the realm rested in my grandfather's day was the army. So it is to-day."

Such was the system that made it possible for a very few people to rule the whole German empire. Loud and long were the protests against it, but they were without avail until after the defeat of Germany in the World War (below, p. 434).

Democracy in Southeastern Europe

Austria-Hungary. Like the Hohenzollerns in Prussia, the Hapsburgs, who ruled in Austria-Hungary, had little liking for democracy. They had built up their dominions by the sword; they depended upon the sword to hold their varied collection of peoples together. Still, even they could not stop the spread of new ideas. They, too, were forced to grant favors to their subjects. To each of their two realms they gave a constitution which provided for one house elected by popular vote.

Step by step, however, Francis Joseph, the Hapsburg emperor from 1848 to 1916, fought the rising power of the people, until in 1907 he was forced to give the right to vote to all men in Austria. In Hungary, on the eve of the World War, only tax-payers could vote. In both realms, the branch of the parliament elected by the voters was kept in close rein by a House of Lords and by royal power. In neither realm were the highest officers controlled by the parliament or the people. As in the case of Germany, it took the crisis of the World War and bitter defeat to overturn the authority of the Hapsburg monarchy (see below, p. 450).

The Balkan States. When the peoples of southeastern Europe — the Greeks, Serbs, Bulgarians, and Rumanians — escaped one after the other from the rule of the Turks (p. 370), they made beginnings in democracy. In each case a king was chosen, usually on orders from the chief countries of Europe, especially Germany, Russia, and England. In each case also a parliament was created and a portion of the men given a voice in the management of public affairs.

Rise of Democracy in Russia

The Despotism of the Romanoffs. — Of all the countries of Europe, Russia was the last to feel the force of the French revolution. Like Prussia, it, too, had been built up by its army. Under the power-

ful family of the Romanoffs it became the most widespread despotism in the modern world. The czar ruled absolutely from the Baltic Sea to the Pacific Ocean. On the eve of the World War he had over 180,000,000 subjects, nearly twice the population of the United States.

The Former Russian Emperor, Nicholas II

The great Russian monarchy rested upon foundations that seemed very solid. There was, in the first place, a huge and powerful army which the czar commanded as he liked. In the second place, there was the Russian Church, which taught his subjects obedience. From the highest official to the humblest village priest, the Church supported the monarch. It depended upon him for favors and in turn helped him hold the people in subjection. In the third place, no criticism of the czar was allowed in newspapers, books, or public addresses. Spies and policemen searched high and low for anyone who said that the people ought to rule or that great changes ought to be made in the government. Finally, there was the ignorance of the masses. Most of the people were peasants. They had been freed from serfdom, but they were without education

© Keystone View Co., Inc.

A Russian Peasant Family

and bent to the very ground with poverty, taxes, and wars.

The Revolution of 1905. Each czar tried to prevent democratic ideas from creeping into Russia. Leaders who talked about reforms were whipped, imprisoned, or exiled to distant Siberia. They responded by attempts to assassinate the czar or his officials and by acts of terrorism. The brutality on both sides was shocking. Meanwhile democratic ideas slowly spread among the Russian people. It was impossible to keep the doors and windows of Russia sealed.

When Russia was defeated in a war with Japan in 1905, the country was filled with famine and misery. Then the people rose in a desperate revolt against autocratic rule. Only by using the police and the army was the czar able to keep his throne. Still, as in the case of other monarchs, he had to pay the price by allowing the people a voice in his government. He created a national parliament, called the *Duma*, but he was careful to see that the landlords and his agents controlled it. Peace was bought for a short time. Then, in the midst of the World War, the czar was overthrown and his whole system broken to bits in a revolutionary outburst (see below, p. 446).

Democracy in the Orient

Japan. — When Japan was opened to the Western world in 1854, the Japanese people began to take an

interest in Western customs and ideas of government. Students and travelers from Japan visited America and Europe and took back reports of what they had seen and learned. At that time, Japan was very much like the Europe of the middle ages. The *mikado*, or emperor, ruled as absolutely as any medieval king. The country was divided into great estates owned by feudal lords and tilled by serfs. The masses could not read or write and accepted without question the commands of the emperor. To most Japanese this old order seemed satisfactory; but they could not prevent Western ideas and customs from creeping into Japan.

© *Keystone View Co., Inc.*

THE "FIRST DAY OF SCHOOL" IN JAPAN. (NOTE THE SANDALS, WHICH MUST BE LEFT OUTSIDE)

In 1871 the chief privileges of the nobles were abolished, as those of France had been in 1789. At the same time the serfs were set free. Soon the

demand for a share in the government was heard. The emperor, wiser than some Western monarchs, did not wait for a violent revolution. He chose a commission of "wise men" to study the question of government, and in 1889 gave a constitution to his empire. He kept the right to appoint his own ministers and to command the army and navy; but he created a parliament to aid in making laws and laying taxes. He formed one house out of the nobles and princes of Japan. The lower house, he arranged, should be elected by the voters. Since he was in no mood to try extreme ideas, he limited the right to vote to the well-to-do.

After a few years a cry went up for "more democracy." Leaders demanded the vote for all Japanese men, and even woman suffrage was heard of in the land of the mikado. At the close of the World War, Japan seemed threatened by a revolution. In 1920 the parliament passed a bill giving the right to vote to many more of the emperor's subjects.

But Japan is by no means a democracy in the English or American sense of the word. On the contrary, it is still very much like Prussia under the Hohenzollerns (p. 390). The Japanese constitution, like that of old Prussia, was granted to the people by the emperor and can be taken away by him. The masses are taught that the emperor rules by divine right and the constitution declares that he is "the head of the empire, combining in himself all power of state." The

© *Keystone View Co., Inc.*

A Public Meeting in Japan to Advocate Manhood Suffrage

JAPAN AND CHINA

emperor is surrounded by a small group of men each of whom is the leader of a powerful political party. They are his close advisers. They are supported by the landlords, manufacturers, and business men of Japan, numbering about 125,000 out of seventy million people. These form the ruling class of Japan.

© *Keystone View Co., Inc.*

A Group of Republican Cavalry Officers in China

They hold all the important public offices. They are feared and respected by the masses. Japanese religion and education both teach reverence for the emperor as the greatest virtue.

China. The changes which affected Japan likewise stirred the unwieldy Chinese empire. For thou-

sands of years it had slumbered on under the sway of its emperors. Then it was suddenly aroused by an invasion of European and American traders and missionaries. Chinese students and business men began to travel in Western countries and on their return home set about " modernizing " China.

The mass of the Chinese people knew little more than their ancestors had known four thousand years before. Still the reformers could not wait for slow growth. They overthrew the monarchy in 1912 and established a republic, with a president and a parliament.

Instead of the prosperity that was expected to result from the revolution, there came civil war and years of trouble. Leaders of the army, especially in the north, longed for the return of a strong monarch. Leaders in the south, where the merchants were numerous, clung to the idea of a democracy. Both parties claimed to speak for China, but neither of them was able to establish itself firmly in the entire country. North China, however, won recognition from other countries.

Democracy and Civil Liberty

The Rights of Man. The French revolution, the industrial revolution, and the rise of democracy all worked together for a new kind of liberty. In the middle ages the fate of nearly every man was fixed at birth. The son of a peasant became a peasant and

the son of a nobleman belonged to the aristocracy. In the modern age such old customs have become less rigid. As far as the law is concerned, every man is free to choose his own calling. He may go and come

© Keystone View Co., Inc.

MRS. EMMELINE PANKHURST, ENGLISH WOMAN SUFFRAGE LEADER, SPEAKING IN LONDON

at will within the nation to which he belongs. He may even be free to emigrate to some other part of the world to make his home. He is free, too, to think for himself and to choose the church to which he wishes to

belong. He may join any political party, and express his views on any subject. All these rights are known as *civil liberties*.

The Rights of Women and Children. — Women and children, even more than grown-up men, were affected by these new rights. In the middle ages, a woman had practically no choice except to labor as a housewife or as a peasant in the fields or to enter a convent as a nun. In the modern age, women not only vote; they may choose any one of many fields of industry or business. They may engage in a profession such as medicine, or they may take up teaching, literature, or art. They may earn their own wages and spend them as they please. They may hold public office.

Even little children share in the new order of things. In old Rome the father had the power of life and death over his wife and children. To-day parents must allow their children to attend school. If they are cruel, their children may be taken away from them. Usually boys and girls may choose any life work for which they have talent. Public schools are open to them so that they may get a training for the work they select for themselves. In a way, therefore, we may call the age of democracy "the children's age."

Questions and Exercises

I. 1. What is meant by the word "reaction" as used in the third paragraph of this chapter? Reactions almost always follow severe wars; can you think of any reasons for this? 2. What is

meant by the statement, " . . . the clock could really not be turned back" (p. 379)? In what ways did those who came into power after the downfall of Napoleon attempt to "turn the clock back"? 3. How many years elapsed between the beginning of the first French revolution and the second revolution? Between the second and the third revolutions? 4. Napoleon III is sometimes referred to as "Napoleon the Little"; why? 5. What were some of the differences between the government of France under the "Third Republic" and the government under the "First Republic"? In what ways does the government of France to-day differ from the government of our country?

II. 1. Compare the power of the English king under the old parliamentary system with the power of the French king just before the first French revolution (see pp. 292–295). Why was England at that time "still far from a democracy"? 2. How could it have come about that a large city like Manchester sent no representatives to the House of Commons when many small villages had two members each? (What great movement was taking place which caused the rapid growth of the cities?) 3. How did the progress toward democracy in England differ from the progress toward democracy in France? In America? 4. In what important ways does the government of England to-day differ from the government of our country?

III. 1. What advance toward democracy was made by Italy in adopting the charter of 1848? 2. What further advances were made in 1918? 3. Compare the present government of Italy with that of the other countries mentioned in this chapter.

IV. 1. Can you think of any reasons that will explain why the kings kept their power in Germany longer than they did in England, France, and Italy? 2. How did the imperial council of the German empire differ from the House of Lords in England, the French parliament, and the Italian senate? 3. Why was the "lower house" of the German parliament less powerful than the English House of Commons?

V. What reasons can you give to explain why the development of democracy in southeastern Europe has been much slower than in western Europe? (Recall the difficulties that the growth of free nations have met in these countries.)

VI. 1. How did the rulers of Russia manage to hold their power for so long a time? What effect did the location and size of the Russian empire have on the growth of the idea of democracy? 2. The Russian czars did not favor free schools for the common people. What effect would the lack of education be likely to have on the success of democratic government when it did come?

VII. 1. Compare the growth of democracy in Japan with the growth of democracy in England, France, and Germany. 2. In what ways does the government of Japan more closely resemble the government of Germany before the World War than the government of England and France? 3. Why has democratic progress been slower in China than in Japan? (Compare the two countries as to size and location.)

VIII. 1. Lord Bryce, a famous English scholar and statesman, defined democracy as "the rule of all the people as contrasted with the rule of a special group or class." What do you think of this definition? 2. How has the growth of democracy helped the "common people"? (Compare the way in which the common people lived in the middle ages with the way in which they live to-day.) How have women and children benefited from the growth of democracy?

Suggestions for Reading

Dale — *Landmarks of British History*, xiii.
Macgregor — *The Story of France*, lxxxiv, lxxxvii.
Marshall — *An Island Story*, c.
Tappan — *England's Story*, xxxiv, xxxv.
Warren — *Stories from English History*, pp. 406–417.

CHAPTER XVI

THE IMPERIAL RIVALRY OF EUROPEAN NATIONS

The growth of industry, the rise of democracy, and the spread of national spirit all worked together to make more intense the age-long rivalry among European nations. It was hoped that they would bring peace, and yet the most terrible war of all history has taken place in our own time.

As the mills and factories multiplied in Europe, business men of all nations became more and more active in selling their manufactured goods. They searched out markets for their wares in every quarter of the globe — in Asia, South America, and Africa. The competition among them became keener and keener.

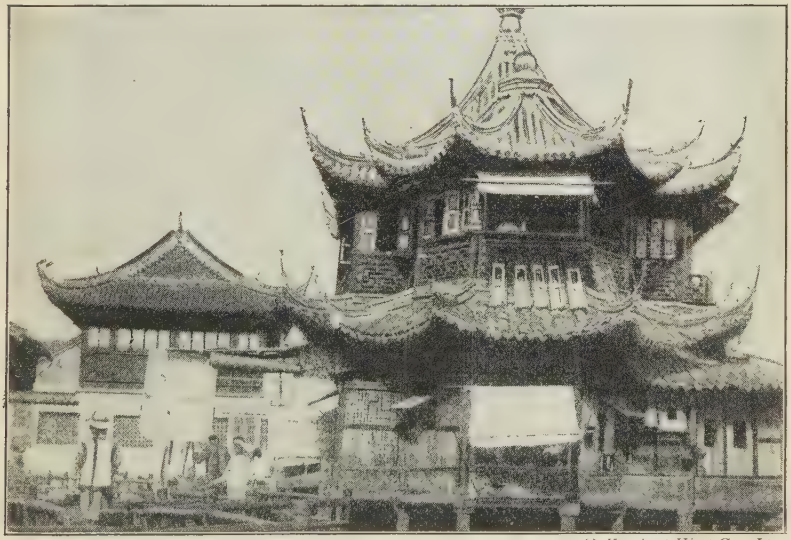
With the rise of democracy, moreover, the masses demanded more than the coarsest food and the barest necessities of life. They called for tea, sugar, coffee, and spices; they insisted on having better houses and better clothing; they came to regard as essential to their happiness goods that had to be brought from the ends of the earth. Thus, in a way, the business men pushing out to conquer new markets and outdo their rivals helped to bring about modern democracies.

Finally, the spirit of nationalism served to increase strife among European countries. In the name of national pride and honor, governments sought to add to their colonial possessions and increase their foreign trade. In the name of nationalism, all European countries except England put tariffs on imports from other lands. In the name of nationalism, armies and navies were enlarged and other preparations were made for war on a vast scale. So nationalism widened out into the feverish contest for trade and territories known as *imperialism*. All the old rivalries of kings and princes, all the old contests of merchants and traders were stirred anew and in 1914 burst into the terrible conflict known as the World War.

Europe in the Orient

The Awakening of the Far East. The chief center of the new European imperialism was in Asia. There opportunities for trade were especially inviting. The Chinese and Japanese were skilled in many industries and arts. They had tea, silks, rice, spices, and other valuable products to sell, and the profits to be made out of the commerce were huge. Many difficulties, however, at first stood in the way of trade. The Chinese did not welcome Europeans. They would give foreigners only a limited right to traffic in certain places. The Japanese were equally proud. Though more willing to trade with the Europeans,

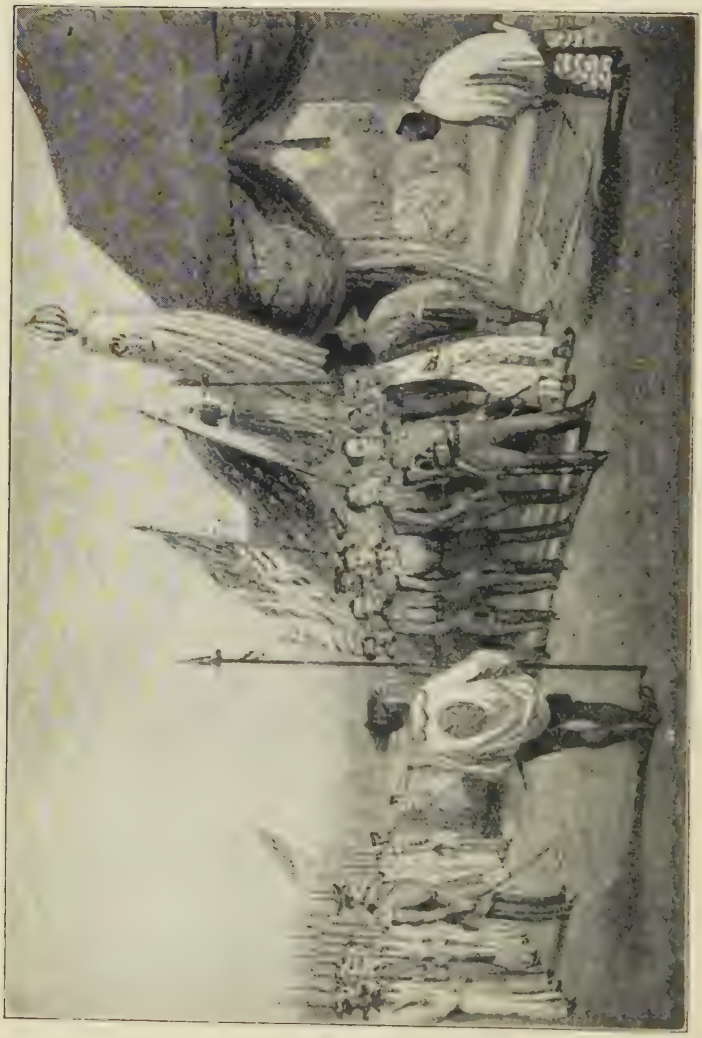
they resented the coming of Christian missionaries in great numbers. Finally they became so hostile that they drove out the aliens altogether and made severe laws against foreign commerce of any kind. For more than two hundred years, both China and Japan were almost sealed to the outside world.



© Keystone View Co., Inc.

A Famous Chinese Tea House in Shanghai

They could not, however, keep their ports absolutely closed to the ever active foreigners. In 1842 England waged war on China and forced her to open certain coast cities to general trade. Eleven years later, the United States government sent a commission, headed by Commodore Perry, to Japan to open



COMMODORE PERRY'S MISSION IN JAPAN

From an old print

relations with the Japanese government. Frightened by the experience of the Chinese, the Japanese regretfully agreed to receive the commission. From that time forward the commercial nations of Europe, as well as the United States, have steadily increased their business with China and Japan.

China and Japan Contrasted. The fates of the two Oriental countries, after they were opened to world trade, proved to be very different. Huge China fell a prey to the foreigners. The French seized vast territories in the southeastern part of the empire. The British established themselves at Hong Kong and Wei-Hai-Wei. The Germans in 1897 laid hold of the Shantung Peninsula. The Russians pressed in from the northwest and helped themselves. For a time it looked as if China might be seized entirely by foreigners.

What a contrast Japan presented! More secure in her island home, she grew into a strong industrial and military power. In 1894 she even attacked China herself and was easily victorious. The Japanese would have taken a large slice of Chinese territory then if France, Germany, and Russia had not prevented it.

Japan nursed her secret longings for ten years. Meanwhile she prepared a huge army and navy and made a treaty of alliance with Great Britain. All ready for the fray, she declared war on Russia in 1904 and overwhelmed the czar's troops and battleships.

Japan then took most of Russia's Chinese territory. A few years later, Japan occupied also the Chinese province of Korea, which she had long coveted.

The "Open Door" Policy. In this mad scramble of the powers to seize Chinese territory, the United States refused to join. It declared that China should

© *Keystone View Co., Inc.*

A Chinese Shop with American Goods for Sale

not be broken into bits and distributed among foreigners. It said that China should be preserved for the Chinese and that all countries should have merely general trading privileges with the Chinese people. This was called the *policy of the open door*, so well known in America and so appreciated by the Chinese

themselves (*First Book*, pp. 380–384). Between her attempts to beat off foreigners bent on her ruin and her efforts to establish a republic, China had appalling problems to solve. Knowing that Japan was determined to dictate to her, if possible, China turned to the United States for advice and support.

European Occupation of Africa

Exploration. By a strange stroke of fortune, Africa was the last of the great continents to be explored and seized by European powers. At the opening of the nineteenth century, it was so little known that it was properly called "the dark continent." The Egyptians, heirs of the ancient civilization of the Nile Valley, still had some dealings with the outside world. There were several trading ports along the Mediterranean coast also. The Dutch, French, and English, moreover, had visited the Atlantic shores to seize slaves for American markets. The Dutch had even planted a colony at the Cape of Good Hope, which had fallen into the hands of the English during the Napoleonic wars. The heart of the continent, however, was wholly unknown until after 1850.

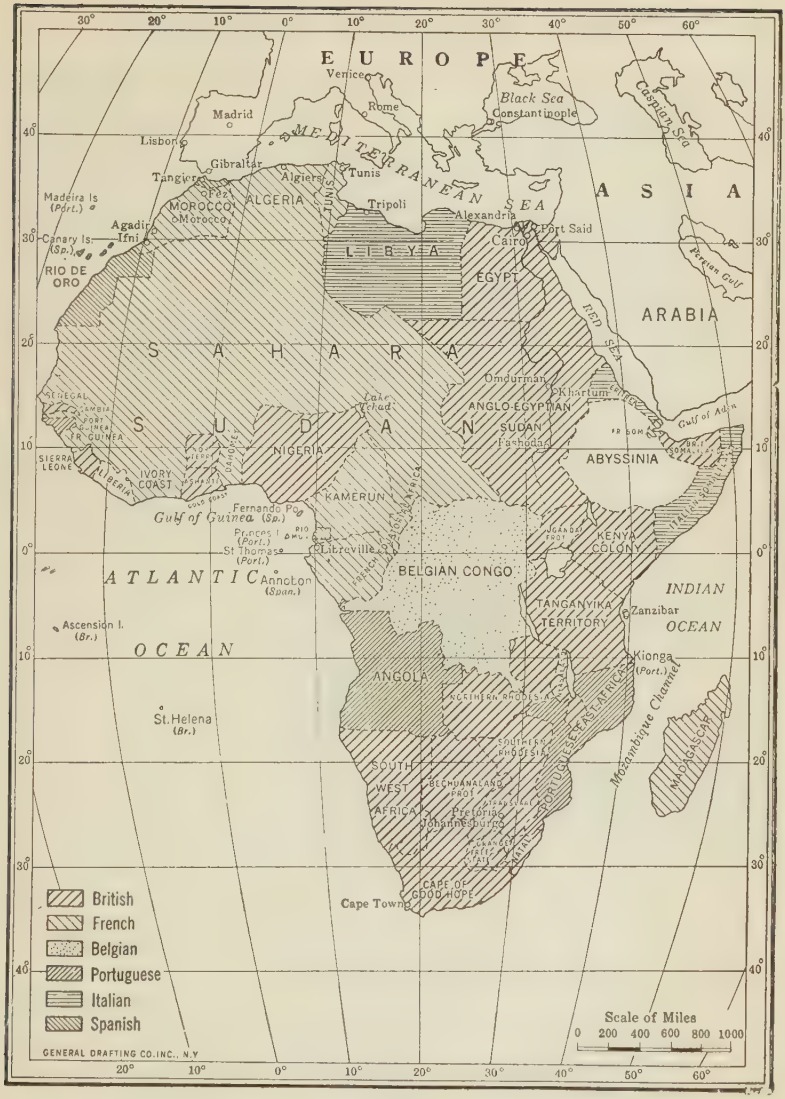
The work of opening Africa was undertaken by intrepid explorers, among whom David Livingstone, the life-long missionary, was perhaps the most famous. For more than twenty-five years he traveled about in the heart of Africa. Once he was lost for a long time. The task of finding him was undertaken by Henry M.

© Keystone View Co., Inc.

NATIVE POTTERY MAKERS IN AFRICA

Stanley, a writer for an American newspaper. After he had gone into the fever-laden jungle and rescued Livingstone, Stanley continued his travels. He made the world familiar with Africa through many a thrilling story of adventure. His wonderful tale, *How I Found Livingstone*, ranks high among the books of travel written by Americans.

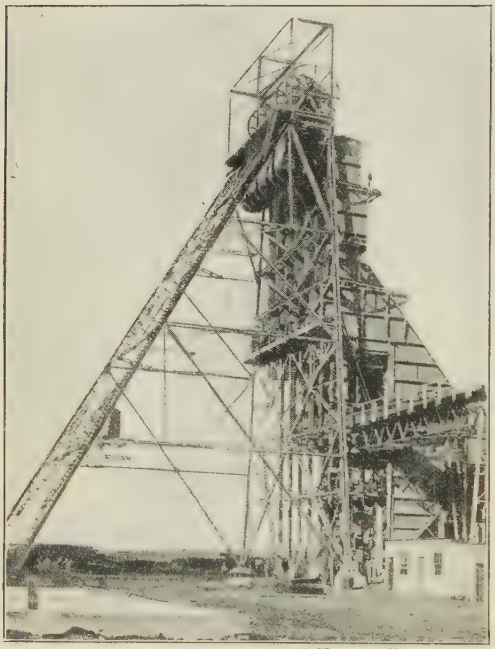
The Partition of Africa. Before the explorers had completed their work, the leading countries of Europe began a general scramble to get African territory. England, France, and Germany were in the lead, with


EUROPE
ASIA
Venice
Rome
Madrid
Lisbon
Gibraltar
Tangier
Algiers
Tunis
Tripoli
Black Sea
Constantinople
Caspian Sea
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
Alexandria
Port Said
Cairo
Madeira Is (Port.)
Canary Is (Sp.)
Agadir
Ifni
Faz
MOROCCO
Morocco
ALGERIA
LIBYA
EGYPT
RIO DE ORO
SAHARA
ARABIA
Persian Gulf
RED SEA
Omdurman
Khartum
ANGLO-EGYPTIAN SUDAN
Lake Tchad
SUDAN
NIGERIA
ABYSSINIA
Gulf of Aden
SENEGAL
GAMBIA
PORT. GUINEA
FR. GUINEA
SIERRA LEONE
LIBERIA
IVORY COAST
GOLD COAST
TOGO
DAHOMEY
Fernando Po (Sp.)
Gulf of Guinea
Princes I. (Port.)
St Thomas (Port.)
RIO MUNI
KAMERUN
Libreville
FRENCH EQUATORIAL AFRICA
BELGIAN CONGO
KENYA COLONY
ATLANTIC OCEAN
Annobon (Span.)
Ascension I. (Br.)
St. Helena (Br.)
ANGOLA
TANGANYIKA TERRITORY
Zanzibar
INDIAN OCEAN
Kionga (Port.)
Mozambique Channel
PORTUGUESE EAST AFRICA
MADAGASCAR
SOUTH WEST AFRICA
BECHUANALAND PROT.
SOUTHERN RHODESIA
Pretoria
Johannesburg
CAPE OF GOOD HOPE
Cape Town
British
French
Belgian
Portuguese
Italian
Spanish
Scale of Miles
0 200 400 600 800 1000
GENERAL DRAFTING CO. INC., N.Y.

AFRICA

Italy not far behind. To the first of these countries fell the largest share.

The English gained control of Egypt in 1882. They likewise pressed steadily inland from their foothold at the Cape of Good Hope (p. 268). The old Dutch settlers, the Boers, fled before them into the interior and established two republics of their own. As they advanced, the English came to blows with these republics; after a short and bloody war, which opened in 1899, they brought the Boers under their flag. At various points on the east and west coasts of Africa, English explorers, traders, and soldiers staked out huge claims for their country and discovered gold and diamond mines.



© Keystone View Co., Inc.

THE HOISTING MACHINE AT AN AFRICAN DIAMOND MINE

The French were not far behind the English. They annexed Algiers in 1843; they added Tunis later;

they seized vast reaches of territory in the Sudan and along the Congo River; and they got the upper hand in Morocco. Under French direction the Suez Canal was built in 1859–69. The Germans, after founding their empire in 1871, began to follow the example of England and France. Between 1884 and 1890 they laid hold of immense areas in Southwest and Southeast Africa. Meanwhile the Italians conquered Libya and a strip of Abyssinia. The Belgians carved out for themselves a large state south of the Congo River. The Portuguese managed to keep a huge African territory occupied during the early days of their explorations.

By the opening of the twentieth century, the dark continent, with its millions of natives, had been explored and divided among European commercial rivals. An immense trade in rubber, ivory, coffee, and other products was built up with Europe and America.

European Interest in Latin America

The Revolt of the Spanish Colonies. Owing to the rivalry of European nations for trade and colonies, it was impossible for Latin America — Mexico, Central America, South America, and the islands of the Caribbean — to escape the European invasion. At the opening of the nineteenth century nearly all of this region belonged to Spain. The most important exception was Brazil, which was Portuguese.

The people of the Spanish territories consisted of Spaniards, many of mixed native and Spanish blood,

THE CARIBBEAN REGION

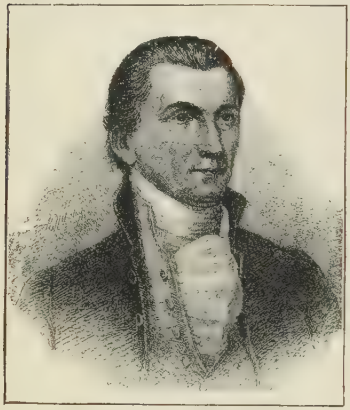
and a large population of pure native stock. The natives were almost wholly illiterate and had no knowledge of government on a large scale. Catholic missionaries had converted the natives to Christianity and Spanish soldiers had ruled them. Spanish, often in the form of a dialect, was their language.

Such was the state of affairs when, in 1808, Napoleon conquered Spain and placed his brother on the Spanish throne. This was followed by the revolt of the Spanish colonies in America. Beginning in 1810, one colony after another declared its independence. Simon Bolivar was the hero-leader in this South American revolution. Within a few years all the mainland colonies had thrown off the rule of the mother country. Napoleon was deposed and the old king of Spain was restored to his throne; but the former colonies clung to their newly won independence.

Then the king of Spain talked about conquering them by force of arms. He asked his brother monarchs in Europe to help him do it. In 1822 a congress of royal agents met at Verona to consider, besides other things, plans for putting down the rebellion in America.

The Monroe Doctrine. The United States was alarmed by this conference at Verona. So also was England, because her merchants had built up a big business with the Spanish-American republics after they threw off the rule of Spain. The kings of Europe did not lend the king of Spain ships and soldiers to conquer his former colonies. Nevertheless the presi-

dent of the United States, James Monroe, feared that they might do so. Since he knew that he had the support of England, he gave to the world in 1823 the message, or *doctrine*, which still bears his name (*First Book*, pp. 192–194). He warned the kings of Europe against making any attempt to restore the rule of Spain or to annex new territories on the American continents. He told them bluntly that such actions would be regarded as unfriendly by the United States. This was a clear hint that any attempt of that kind would be met, if necessary, by force of arms.



James Monroe

Europe's Interest in the Monroe Doctrine. By his message President Monroe said, in effect, that the United States would protect all independent Latin-American states against European governments. This proved in time to be a serious matter for us. It meant that every time any of those states had a dispute with any European country, the United States was concerned in the affair. It meant also that all nations in their dealings with Latin America had to be on their guard against breaking the rules of the Monroe Doctrine.

More than one grave result flowed from this doc-

South America

trine. During the American Civil War, Napoleon III, the emperor of the French, took a hand in Mexican affairs. He attempted to set up one of his princely friends, Maximilian of Austria, as emperor there. When the Civil War was over, our govern-

© Keystone View Co., Inc.

On a South American Sheep Ranch

ment was free to act in the case. It warned Napoleon against violating the Monroe Doctrine. He took the warning seriously and withdrew his soldiers. He knew that our President was ready to send an army to Mexico to enforce the American policy.

In 1895 another question was raised. England and

Venezuela fell into a dispute over the boundary of British Guiana. Venezuela claimed that England was trying to get some of her territory. President Cleveland took up the matter and called attention to the Monroe Doctrine (*First Book*, p. 364). For a time it looked as if there might be war between England and our country; but fortunately it was avoided by peaceful settlement.

About ten years later, Germany had a quarrel with Venezuela over the payment of debts due her citizens and there was talk of war. This time President Roosevelt sent the German emperor a sharp warning, which was finally heeded. So another Latin-American problem was solved without resort to arms.

Sources of Difficulty in Latin America. The chief concern of European countries in Mexico, Central America, and South America was about trade, money matters, and industries. European business men built up a profitable trade in those countries. They established warehouses, stores, and factories. They invested huge sums of money in oil wells, mines, land, and railways. They lent money to all the governments and to many private companies. It was therefore to their interest to see that order was maintained and business kept going.

Now it happened that after the revolt against Spain there were many revolutions and wars in Latin America. Every one of them upset business and made it hard to collect debts. This often led European

© Keystone View Co., Inc.

An English Banking House in Buenos Aires

statesmen to say in effect: "The United States ought to keep order in Latin America. If it will not do this, then it should allow us to protect our business and collect debts by force of arms if necessary." Thus the United States was placed in a difficult position. Latin America was glad to have help against Europe; but it resented the idea that our government should interfere in any other way. The United States, therefore, had (1) to meet the demands of European business men and investors; and (2) at the same time to keep the friendship of the countries to the south of us.

The Caribbean. The interest of Europe in this hemisphere has been by no means confined to the mainland. It has extended to the great chain of islands which stretch almost all the way from the coast of Florida to the coast of Venezuela. Owing to the voyages of Columbus and other explorers, Spain early claimed all of them; but in the course of time one island after another was taken away from her. Near the close of the nineteenth century her dominions consisted of only Cuba, Porto Rico, and a few minor islets. In 1898 came the war with the United States (*First Book*, pp. 372–375). This put an end to Spanish power in the West Indies. Cuba became independent and Porto Rico was ceded to the United States.

The fate of the other islands in the Caribbean has been strange indeed. Haiti went to France, one

part in 1697 and another in 1795. While Napoleon I was emperor of the French, the slaves on the island revolted, and after a terrible struggle set up two little republics, Haiti and Santo Domingo. After a stormy career of more than one hundred years, both of them were brought under the direction of the United States by President Wilson. The Virgin Islands near by were bought from Denmark by the United States in 1917.

In the midst of all these changes, Great Britain continued to hold her score or more of islands scattered all the way from the Bahamas near Florida down to the Windward Islands near the coast of South America. France also managed to retain several of the islands which she had acquired from time to time since the seventeenth century. Thus two of the great powers of Europe held bases for their ships in American waters not far from the Panama Canal (*First Book*, pp. 424–427).

The World War — 1914–18

The Background of the War. We have already seen how the chief countries of Europe engaged in long and terrible wars over trade and territories in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries (chapter xi). We have also noted how the same rivalry flamed up in the desperate Napoleonic wars (pp. 310–314). Although there was no general European war for a hundred years after the overthrow of Napoleon,

the world was filled with local conflicts. England, France, Germany, Italy, and other European powers, as they extended their colonies in Asia and Africa, were almost constantly fighting natives somewhere in their empires.

There were, moreover, many local wars in Europe. In 1854 England and France joined the Turks in a terrible struggle in the Crimea against Russia. Later France and Italy united in a military campaign to drive the Austrians from Italian soil. In 1866 Prussia fought a six weeks' war with Austria and drove her out of the German Confederation (p. 361). Shortly afterward came the Franco-Prussian War, which broke out in 1870 and ended in the defeat of France (p. 361).

The Growth of German Power. Triumphant over France, Germany entered upon a new military and business career. Her industries grew by leaps and bounds as she extended her trade in every part of the globe. She developed the best equipped and most powerful army in the world. Her business men began to compete sharply with British merchants in every market. Germany then began to build a strong navy to rival Great Britain on the sea. She made an alliance with Austria and Italy known as the Triple Alliance. Austria-Hungary and Turkey were brought under German influence. Together they planned a united "Middle Europe" stretching from the banks of the Rhine to Constantinople. The German emperor, William II (p. 392), declared that he had re-

ceived his throne from God and warned his soldiers that his word was law.

The Alliance between France and Russia. The growth of German power alarmed the other countries of Europe, especially England, France, and Russia. Taking the situation into account, France and Russia formed an alliance in 1892. They agreed, in case of an attack by Italy, Germany, or Austria, to join forces and to wage war together to the end, making no separate peace. The Germans looked upon this agreement as a menace and redoubled their military preparations.

The Understanding between England and France. A few more years passed. Then England and France, forgetting their ancient rivalry and grudges, began to draw together. They did not make a formal treaty of alliance. The governments of the two countries simply ordered their military and naval experts to hold "consultations" as to what they would do in case of a war with Germany. These conferences began in 1906. Thus there was created, as the British foreign minister later said, "an obligation of honor" to help France in case of an attack by Germany.

The Treaty between England and Russia. The next year, England and Russia also laid aside their quarrels. They made a treaty settling several disputed points without forming a regular alliance. Later, however, British and Russian naval officers were ordered to discuss a combination of forces in case of a war with Germany.

The German emperor declared at the time that England, Russia, and France were working for war. He added that Germany would take counter measures. This was what a large military party in Germany, eager for war, desired. The flames of war were just on the point of bursting out and setting the whole world on fire.

The Outbreak. The stage of Europe was all set for war when on June 28, 1914, the archduke of Austria and his wife were murdered while on a visit to the Austrian province of Bosnia. The archduke was the heir to the Austrian throne. His assassin was a Serb who resented the rule of the Austrians over people of his race (p. 371) and desired to see all Serbs united under Serbia.

Austria was in great excitement at once. She accused the Serbian government of aiding in plots designed to arouse the Serbs in Austria against their lawful sovereign. Austria then made humiliating demands upon Serbia. Russia, fearing the growth of Austrian power in southeastern Europe, encouraged Serbia to stand firm. Serbia, however, yielded on most of the demands. Still Austria, not satisfied, declared war on her.

Meanwhile the German government had assured Austria-Hungary of its support at all costs. Russia, learning that the Austrians were ready for war, made ready her own troops. While Europe trembled on the brink of war, England urged a settlement of the

quarrel at an international conference or by arbitration. Germany refused to force this peaceful advice upon her ally, Austria-Hungary.

Hearing that the Russian army was ready for war, the German government demanded that the czar send his troops home. The czar refused. Thereupon Germany, on August 1, 1914, declared war on Russia. France, by her ties with Russia, was also brought in. Germany called upon her to remain neutral. Knowing that Russia would thus be beaten and that her own turn would then come, France replied that she would "have regard for her interests." On August 3, Germany declared war on France.

Belgium. Having failed to secure a peaceful settlement of the trouble between Serbia and Austria-Hungary, England's next steps seemed uncertain. At this point the German army was marching on France, not directly, but toward Belgium, which lay between Germany and the northern border of France, Now the chief powers of the world had, long before, solemnly agreed that they would regard Belgium as a neutral country. They had promised not to send armies into her territory. Germany, as well as the other countries, was bound by this pledge. Belgium, however, was an almost defenseless nation; and the border between France and Belgium was lightly fortified. The Germans, therefore, decided that they would march through Belgium. Thus they planned to strike a terrific blow at France in her weakest spot

and quickly capture Paris. They first asked permission of the Belgians, only to meet a proud refusal. Then they prepared to march on Belgium as an enemy.

England and Belgium. Before invading Belgium, however, the Germans tried to find out what position England would take in the matter. The German ambassador in London asked the British foreign minister whether England would remain neutral if Germany did not invade Belgian territory. The British minister refused to bind himself, adding: "I do not think that we could give a promise of neutrality on that condition alone." That was on August 1.

The next day, England informed France that, if German battleships came out into the channel to attack the French coast, the English navy would help protect it. Two days later, the English government told the king of Belgium that it would expect him to resist, by all means in his power, an attempt of the Germans to enter his country. On the same day, England demanded of Germany that she keep out of Belgium. Germany refused and marched into Belgium, making war on her. On August 4, England was at war with Germany.

The World War. So during the first week of August, 1914, the war opened. Austria-Hungary and Germany were lined up against England, France, Russia, Belgium, Serbia, and Montenegro. Soon Japan came to the help of its ally, England. Italy remained neutral until 1915, when it joined the

powers against Germany and Austria. In the course of time, the war widened to include the United States, Rumania, China, Brazil, and other countries in the line-up against Germany and Austria; while Turkey and Bulgaria took the part of Germany and Austria. The fires of war encircled the globe. The conflict, therefore, became known as the *World War.*

© *Keystone View Co., Inc.*

Destruction of French Coal Mines by the German Army

The Course of the War. The German army plunged through Belgium into France and was checked only by the heroic efforts of the French and British at the first battle of the Marne in September, 1914. It then retreated to northern France, dug trenches, and stood fast.

Far in the east, the armies of Russia and Germany swayed forward and back until, in 1917, the Russian czar was overthrown by a revolution at home. Rus-

sia fell into the hands of men of extreme views known as the *Bolsheviki*, who made peace with Austria and Germany, paying a terrible price for it. The Germans and Austrians also overran Serbia and Rumania and helped the Turks to beat off the attacks by the British. The Italians battled in the mountains along their northern border against the combined forces of Austria and Germany.

Never before in the history of mankind had the world beheld such a dreadful spectacle. Millions of armed men, supported by huge cannon, poison gas, airplanes, machine guns, armored cars or "tanks," and a score of other deadly weapons waged war day and night with awful carnage. For nearly three years they kept it up without reaching a decision. Then the sword of the United States was thrown into the scale.

America and the World War. As in the case of the Napoleonic wars a hundred years before (p. 314, and *First Book*, pp. 181–187), American trade on the sea was disturbed by the war in Europe. England's navy at the outset blockaded the coast of Germany and cut off her commerce at sea, including of course her trade with the United States. Germany protested against the British blockade. The United States also objected to certain features of it.

Then Germany startled the world by declaring that her submarines would sink ships, passengers, and crews engaged in trade with her enemies. Against

this policy, President Wilson protested vigorously but without success. German submarines sank American ships and took American lives.

America's answer all the world knows. In April, 1917, the United States entered the war against Germany. More than two million American soldiers crossed the sea to France; American ships joined in the hunt for submarines. American sailors and soldiers fought bravely on the battlefield and on the sea. General John J. Pershing commanded our army in France.

The End of War. Against such a union of forces as were now brought into the field, Germany and Austria-Hungary battled in vain. The French, English, and American forces on the French front, under General Foch, drove against the Germans with overwhelming might. The Italians kept up the fight on their front also.

In the summer of 1918, the Germans began to give way. In October the Austrians sued for peace. In November the Germans became panic-stricken. The German government in the hour of defeat also begged for peace. On November 11 a truce was signed. The long and deadly war was at an end. The German emperor was forced to give up the throne and flee into Holland. Then a revolution transformed his empire into a republic.

The Treaty of Peace. — The final terms of the peace were drawn up at Paris and signed in 1919.

Photo from a painting © *Keystone View Co., Inc.*

PRESIDENT WILSON SPEAKING AT THE PEACE CONFERENCE

President Wilson went there in person to take part in the conference. In fact, Woodrow Wilson, president of the United States, Lloyd George, the British prime minister, Georges Clemenceau, the French premier, and Vittorio Orlando, the Italian prime minister, were the leading figures in the grand congress of victors that decided the fate of Germany, Austria-Hungary, and their allies.

In the general settlement, Germany was disarmed; her battleships were taken from her; she was ordered to pay a huge indemnity for the damage she had wrought; and she was forced to give Alsace-Lorraine back to France.

Austria-Hungary was broken up and the several races under its rule were given independence (below, chapter xvii). Italy secured from Austria a large strip of territory along the Adriatic Sea.

The German colonies in Africa were turned over to England and France. The German islands in the Pacific Ocean north of the equator were placed under the control of Japan. German rights in China were also given to Japan, much to the discontent of the Chinese, to whom they originally belonged.

French, English, Belgian, and American troops entered Germany to hold certain towns and provinces until the terms of the treaty should be fulfilled.

Finally, under the leadership of President Wilson, a plan to unite all the countries of the world in a *League of Nations* was included in the treaty. Its purpose

ARCTIC
ICELAND
FAROE IS.
SHETLAND IS
ORKNEY IS.
OUTER HEBRIDES
ATLANTIC OCEAN
SCOTLAND
NORTH SEA
Trondhjem
NORWAY
SWEDEN
Bergen
Christiania
Stockho
Skager Rack
Gothenburg
Edinburgh
Belfast
IRISH FREE STATE
Liverpool
Manchester
Dublin
Cork
Queenstown
WALES
Birmingham
ENGLAND
Amsterdam
HOLLAND
Copenhagen
DENMARK
Libau
Hamburg
Free City of Danzig
Stettin
Berlin
Hanover
London
ENGLISH CHANNEL
Brussels
BELGIUM
Lille
GERMANY
Warsaw
Lodz
Radom
Brest
Seine
Paris
Prague
Frankfort
Metz
Nantes
Loire
CZECHOSLOVAKIA
Olmutz
Danube
Munich
Vienna
Krems
FRANCE
BAY OF BISCAY
Berne
SWITZ.
AUSTRIA
HUNGARY
Bordeaux
Lyons
Milan
Trieste
Genoa
Venice
Free City of Fiume
YUGO
Marseilles
MONACO
ANDORRA
Valladolid
Zara
SLAVI
Lisbon
PORTUGAL
SPAIN
Madrid
Barcelona
CORSICA
Rome
ITALY
ADRIATIC SEA
Tirana
ALBANIA
SARDINIA
TYRRHENIAN SEA
Naples
Avlona
Cadiz
BALEARIC IS
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
Gibraltar
Palermo
IONIAN SEA
SICILY
Algiers
Tunis
AFRICA
MALTA
8°
0°
8°
16°
40°
32°
24°
16°
8°
0°
8
16
60°
52°
44°
36°

EUROPE AFT

OCEAN
Kola
Archangel
Kem
Dvina
Helsingfors
Petrograd
Vologda
Perm
Kama
Volga
Pskov
Kazan
Ufa
Nishni Novgorod
Moscow
RUSSIA
Samara
Orenburg
SIBERIA
Vilna
Tula
Ural
Kursk
Kharkov
Kiev
Dniester
Dnieper
Don
Volga
Astrakhan
Aral Sea
Rostov
Jassy
Odessa
Sea of Azov
CASPIAN SEA
Hermannstadt
Bucharest
Sevastopol
Danube
BLACK SEA
Tiflis
Kura
Batum
Baku
Sofia
BULGARIA
Sinope
Constantinople
ARMENIA
Erzerum
Tabriz
Angora
TURKEY
Bitlis
Teheran
ZONE OF THE STRAITS
SMYRNA ENCLAVE
Smyrna
AEGEAN SEA
Adana
Adalia
Aleppo
Euphrates
Tigris
PERSIA
SYRIA
Bagdad
MESOPOTAMIA
CRETE
CYPRUS
Scale of Miles
0 100 200 320
GENERAL DRAFTING CO. INC., N.Y.

E WORLD WAR

GERMANS MINING COAL TO HELP PAY FOR THE RUIN WROUGHT IN FRANCE

© Keystone View Co., Inc.

© Keystone View Co., Inc.

First Meeting of the Delegates of the League of Nations (Geneva, Switzerland)

was to prevent wars and settle disputes by peaceful methods.

Although the other countries in the World War, except China, ratified the treaty of 1919 with Germany, the United States rejected it. The Senate refused to approve it even with amendments. In the presidential campaign of 1920, the Republican candidate, Warren G. Harding, strongly denounced the League of Nations. After he became President, he refused to have anything to do with it. In the summer of 1921 Congress by a simple resolution declared the war with Germany and Austria-Hungary at an end. A few months later brief treaties were made with Germany and Austria-Hungary.

Questions and Exercises

I. 1. What is meant by the word *rivalry?* Can you find examples of rivalry among the merchants of your own town? What rivalries are there between your town and neighboring towns? What are some of the good things about rivalry? What are some of the dangers? 2. In what ways did the growth of industry increase the rivalry among modern nations? 3. How did the growth of democracy influence this rivalry? 4. The text states that the spirit of nationalism increased rivalry. Can you think of any way in which the rivalry may also have intensified the spirit of nationalism? 5. Why is the rivalry among nations which is discussed in this chapter called "imperial" rivalry?

II. 1. Why did the European nations wish to trade with China and Japan? 2. A certain amount of trade with these countries had been carried on by European merchants in early times (see

ch. viii). What reasons may China and Japan have had for wishing to stop trade with Europe? 3. How was trade reopened with China? With Japan? 4. What effect did trade with Europe have upon Japan? Why was the effect on China so different? 5. What important differences have there been between the policy of our country toward China and the policies of the European nations?

III. 1. What reasons can you give that will explain why "Africa was the last of the great continents to be explored and seized by the European powers"? 2. What led David Livingstone to explore central Africa? What different motives did the European nations have in beginning their "general scramble to get African territory"? 3. In what ways would European trade with central Africa differ from European trade with China and Japan? 4. For what other purposes besides trade may the European nations have wished to secure African territory? (Think of the growing populations of these nations and limited space in which they had to grow.)

IV. 1. What is meant by *Latin America?* What countries are included under this term? 2. How did the rule of Spain on the American continent differ from the English colonial rule? 3. When the English colonies became independent they established a single nation; when the Spanish colonies threw off the rule of Spain they formed several independent nations. Can you think of any reasons that will explain this difference? 4. Why was the United States alarmed by the conference at Verona? What danger to this country would there have been in the reconquest of the Latin-American colonies by Spain? 5. The Monroe Doctrine states a very important "policy" of the United States. What are some of the differences between a *policy* and a *law?* What other important American policy has already been referred to in this chapter? Perhaps you can think of other policies that our country has adopted. 6. What problems has the Monroe Doctrine given rise to in connection with our relations to European

nations? What difficulties have we had with the Latin-American countries themselves because of this doctrine? 7. What territories are included under the term *Caribbean?* What possessions does the United States now hold in the Caribbean? 8. With the exception of Cuba, Haiti, Jamaica, and Porto Rico, the islands of the Caribbean are small and not very important for purposes of trade. Why, then, would European nations wish to hold these islands as colonial possessions?

V. 1. How many years elapsed between the close of the Napoleonic wars and the opening of the World War? 2. What important conflicts among European nations took place during these years? 3. Review the differences between the government of Germany before the war and the governments of England, France, and Italy (ch. xv). Which of the three kinds of government would be most likely to develop a desire for war and to prepare for a war of conquest? Why? 4. Why did the growth of German power alarm England, France, and Russia? What steps did they take to meet the danger? What effect did their action have upon Germany? 5. What was the immediate cause of the outbreak in 1914? Why did Russia stand by Serbia in her trouble with Austria? 6. What brought France into the conflict? 7. The German invasion of Belgium was an act that had a great deal to do with setting the civilized world against her. Why was this act so strongly denounced even by neutral nations? 8. What effect did the invasion of Belgium have upon England? 9. The battle of the Marne will probably be known for centuries to come as one of the decisive battles of history. Why? 10. What finally led the United States to take part in the war? With what result? 11. Discuss the important settlements decided upon by the Peace Conference. Why did the people of the United States refuse to ratify the peace treaty and to join the League of Nations? 12. What important revolutions took place during the war and immediately after? Can you give any reasons for these revolutions?

Geographical Studies

1. If possible, secure a copy of a textbook in geography that was printed before 1919. Compare the maps of Europe, Africa, the Caribbean region, and South America with the corresponding maps on pp. 415, 418, and 421 and facing p. 436 of this book. What new countries do you find as a result of the World War? Make a summary of the other changes that you observe. Compare this summary with those that you find in your regular textbook in geography if that has been printed since 1919.

Suggestions for Reading

Bénézet — *The Map of Europe*, xiii–xxi.
Bénézet, L. P. — *Young People's History of the World War;* Macmillan.
O'Neill — *The Story of the World*, xlvi, xlvii.

Suggestions for Review of Chapters XIII–XVI

1. These chapters have told the story of three great developments of the modern world: (*a*) democracy; (*b*) industry; (*c*) nationalism. An important event in the growth of democracy was the French revolution. Another was the enactment of the "reform" bills in England. Name as many other important events associated with the modern development of democracy as you can find in your review of these chapters. In the same way, make lists of the important events that mark the growth of industry and of nationalism.

2. The period of nearly a century and a half covered by these chapters has witnessed many political revolutions. Draw a line six feet long on the blackboard to represent the years between 1789 and the present time. Mark at the proper places on this line the years when important political revolutions have taken place.

3. Under the line just mentioned draw another line of the same length representing the same period, and place marks indicating the important wars. How does the position of the marks indicating revolutionary years compare with that of the marks indicating the war years?

4. Make a list of all the persons mentioned in these four chapters. Try to group these persons under the following heads: (*a*) heads of nations (including kings, emperors, and presidents); (*b*) statesmen or political leaders; (*c*) military and naval leaders; (*d*) scientists; (*e*) inventors; (*f*) leaders in social reforms; (*g*) writers; (*h*) explorers. Perhaps you will find some that should be placed in more than one group. Pick out those in each group who, in your judgment, best deserve to be remembered because of the good that they have done for humanity. Vote on the five that you would like best to know more about and have committees appointed to make the class well acquainted with these persons and their work.

CHAPTER XVII

EUROPE IN OUR OWN TIME

The treaty that closed the World War did not bring peace among the nations of Europe. Neither did it give contentment to the people of the various countries engaged in the war. The conflict had been so long and so bitter that the world could not settle down in quiet at once. All the nations of the earth had been deeply stirred by the struggle. A score of kings and princes had been overthrown. In central Europe new republics had been established in place of former monarchies. Millions of men had been killed or wounded. Women had been made widows. Children had been orphaned. Business had been turned mainly to the making of supplies for war. It could not be turned back in a day to a peace basis. Heavy debts had been created. Someone had to pay them; so taxes were increased almost to the limit of endurance. It was clear that it would take years to bring Europe out of the distress into which it had fallen.

The Domestic Affairs of the Nations

The German Revolution of 1918. Among the important results of the war was the collapse of the

German empire — the empire which had been proclaimed with such pomp in 1871. When it was clear that the German army was defeated on the field of battle, a revolutionary government was formed in

© Keystone View Co., Inc.

German Soldiers and Civilians Cheering the Declaration of the Republic in November, 1918

Berlin. The kaiser, as we have seen (p. 434), was forced to flee from the realm. All the kings, princes, and dukes who ruled in the states of the former empire were likewise overthrown. The next year, after a long debate, a new constitution was adopted in Ger-

many. The first article declared that "the German empire is a republic. Political power springs from the people." Provision was made for a president and a parliament, both elected by the German people, women as well as men having the vote. During the same crisis, new constitutions were drafted for the several German states. Each one of them was made a republic and given a popular form of government. Even Prussia became democratic.

The Revolution in Russia. Far more disturbing to the rest of the world than the upheaval in Germany was the collapse of the Russian empire. As we have seen, the czar narrowly escaped losing his throne in the misery that grew out of the war with Japan. During the World War he finally met his fate. In 1917 popular discontent in Russia broke out in riots. An attempt was made to create a parliament on the English model. In a short time the discontent grew into a revolution. The czar was deposed and afterward murdered.

The effort to establish a republic along American lines failed. All power was seized by committees, or *soviets*, of soldiers, sailors, peasants, and workingmen. These committees were controlled by the Bolsheviki (p. 433). In the name of the working class they took possession of the government offices, the railways, factories, private houses, land, and other property. They decreed: (1) that all lands, mills, mines, and forests should belong to the government and (2) that

A Russian Soviet in Session

©Keystone View Co., Inc.

all should work for the government. This scheme is called *communism* because all things are owned and used in common. As we have seen (p. 94), this was an idea sometimes discussed by the Greeks. Plato argued in its favor. Aristotle advanced strong arguments against it. All through the centuries it was discussed, and some attempts were made to put it into practice, but without success.

Under the leadership of two men, Lenine and Trotzky, the Bolsheviki, though a small minority of the Russian nation, managed to control the government. They used the army to put down opposition. They suppressed all criticism. They imprisoned or executed those who rose against them.

Though the Bolsheviki claimed to have nothing but the interest of the people at heart, they were unable to bring prosperity to Russia. The peasants insisted on owning the soil they tilled; so that point in the communist program had to be given up. After the Bolsheviki had driven out the capitalists and managers of factories, they found that they did not know how to run the business concerns themselves. They were unable to supply the people with manufactured goods. Their troubles were made worse because several other countries, including the United States, refused to trade with them because it was uncertain whether foreign property would be protected and just debts paid. To all these difficulties were added wars and famines. Several Russian generals raised armies

and attempted to overthrow the Bolsheviki. In this effort some of the generals had the aid of England, France, and the United States.

In fact, there was widespread alarm among all other nations. They strongly upheld the right of

© Keystone View Co., Inc.

American Relief for Russian Children

private persons to own farms, houses, factories, mines, and other property. The Bolsheviki appealed to the workingmen of the world to unite, to overthrow their governments, and to establish communism on the Russian model. In many parts of Europe workingmen gave heed to this appeal and tried to seize the

factories. In Germany and Hungary, especially, these attempts resulted in much bloodshed. Though they were put down, they left behind many traces of bitterness.

Meanwhile, the Bolsheviki in Russia still held to the government. In many ways, however, they changed their tactics. They let the peasants keep their land. They called back managers to run the factories. They admitted that for one reason or another their plans had not brought prosperity to Russia and prepared to change them. In time England, Germany, and Italy began to trade again with Russia. When a great crop failure in 1921 led to a terrible famine, the people of the United States gave millions of dollars to aid the starving Russians.

New Republics Formed from Russia. In addition to undergoing a revolution, the empire of the czar was broken into many parts. Four new states on the Baltic — Finland, Esthonia, Lithuania, and Latvia — were made independent republics. Far to the south, beyond the Caucasus mountains, Georgia and other provinces were freed from the dominion of the Russian government. Away to the east, a part of Siberia broke off and carried on its own government as if entirely independent.

The Collapse of Austria-Hungary. In the general overturn that followed the World War, the Austro-Hungarian empire also went to pieces. It had been, as we have seen (pp. 356, 371), a strange array of many

peoples held together by the power of the Hapsburgs. In the name of "nationalism" several of the subject races had long clamored for independence. After the United States declared war on Austria-Hungary, President Wilson announced that all the peoples ruled by the Hapsburg emperor should have the right to choose their own destiny "as members of the family of nations." That was the same as saying that Austria-Hungary should be broken up.

That is what happened when the Austrians and Hungarians were beaten. The Rumanians in Hungary were joined with their kinsmen across the border in Rumania. Czechoslovaks were united in a republic under the presidency of a patriotic leader, Thomas Masaryk. To the south, the Italians were transferred from Austria to Italy; while the southern Slavic peoples were merged with Serbia in the great state of Yugoslavia. Hungary, much reduced in territory, was made independent. Austria was brought down to the level of a petty state with about seven million German inhabitants. The peace conference did not permit the Austrians to join the German republic.

The break-up of Austria and Hungary brought about domestic troubles of the gravest kind. Austria, cut off from her former provinces and burdened by debt, sank into poverty. Hungary went through a revolutionary crisis. It first fell into the hands of a communist party like that in Russia, and later

into the hands of a military dictator. It was then disturbed by an attempt of the former ruler, Charles, to recover his throne — an attempt that ended in failure.

All the new little states carved out of the former

© Keystone View Co., Inc.

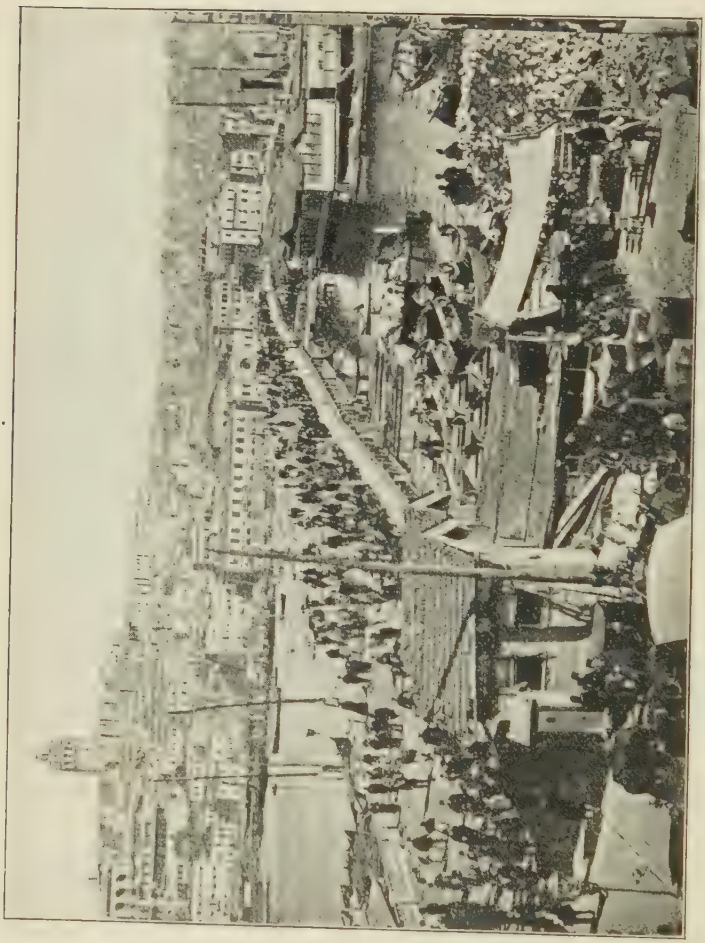
A Glimpse of Modern Hungary

Austro-Hungarian empire quarreled with one another. They suffered from business panics. The great imperial network of railways was broken up. Tariffs were levied on goods passing between separate countries. Separate systems of coinage were established. Industries suffered. It remains to be seen whether the

nationalism that brought self-government can also bring peace and prosperity.

The Rebirth of Poland. In the general crash of 1918, the hopes of Poland rose. The independence of that country had been utterly blotted out since the eighteenth century. In three "partitions" beginning in 1772, Russia, Austria, and Prussia fell upon Poland and divided the country among themselves. The Poles resisted heroically. The brave Kosciusko, who fought for American independence under Washington, led in one of the desperate struggles for liberty in his own country, but was overcome by superior numbers. Again and again the Poles tried to free themselves. Finally their opportunity came in the defeat of two of their historic enemies — Austria and Germany — and in the collapse of the third, Russia. President Wilson included among his "Fourteen Points" (*First Book*, p. 444) the independence of Poland. At the peace conference in Paris, the dream of Kosciusko was realized. The Poles were united and given a place among the nations.

The Balkan Region. All southeastern Europe, the source of so much trouble to the world, was likewise greatly changed by the World War. The Serbs and their kinsmen were united in the kingdom of Yugoslavia, as we have said (p. 451). Rumania was enlarged by additions of territory from Hungary and Russia. The Turks lost nearly all their territory in Europe. They were allowed to keep their capital at



A Glimpse of Constantinople

© Keystone View Co., Inc.

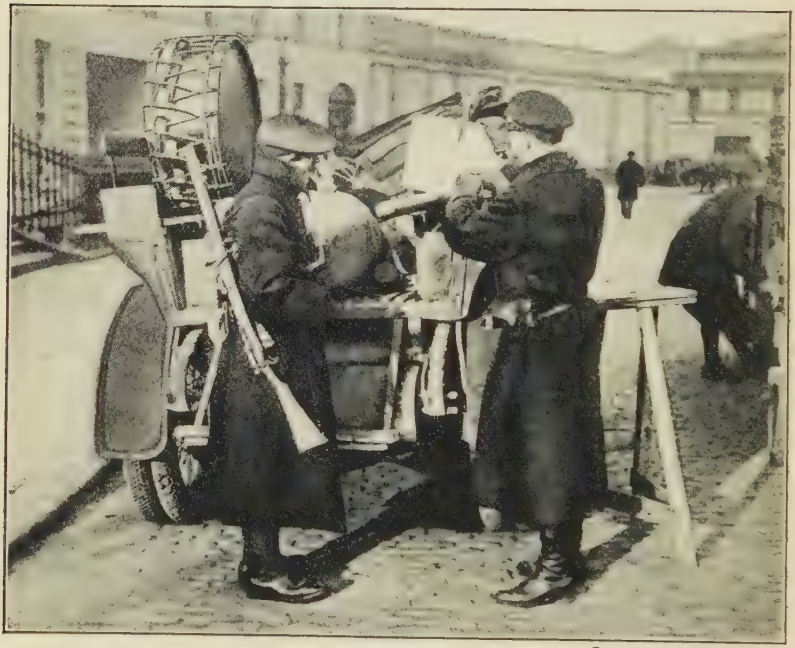
Constantinople, but the Bosporus was put under the control of an international commission. The Greeks recalled their king, who had been driven out during the war, and revised their plan of government.

The Revolt of the Irish. Seeing the Poles, Finns, and other races of Europe receive their independence, the Irish became more determined than ever to throw off the rule of Great Britain. They had been conquered by English armies centuries before, but they had always chafed against their forced union with England. A large party among the Irish people had demanded self-government or "home rule" as early as 1828, and the idea was steadily kept alive.

After several generations of argument and dispute, the English government was about to grant a certain kind of home rule when the World War broke out. While the war was on, a party known as *Sinn Fein* (pronounced "Shin Fane" and meaning "Ourselves") came out boldly for independence. It declared Ireland to be a free republic. It elected a provisional president, Eamonn de Valera. It sent him to America to get support. Americans, so many of whom are of Irish descent, were much moved by monster public meetings. Irish sympathizers even asked Congress to recognize the Irish republic.

Meanwhile Ireland was the scene of dreadful strife. England refused to recognize the republic and sent soldiers to put it down. At the same time a conflict arose in Ireland itself. The northern part of the is-

land had been settled long ago by immigrants from England and Scotland who had never favored home rule or independence. Moreover, there were some of the native Irish who did not approve of independ-



© Keystone View Co., Inc.

English Soldiers Preparing to Leave Ireland

ence. Thus there were really two wars in Ireland — one between English soldiers and the Sinn Fein; the other between the friends and the enemies of independence. The long strife was attended by all the horrors of irregular warfare. Murders and counter-murders filled the island with misery.

Weary at last of the bitter conflict, both parties were ready to consider terms in 1921. Lloyd George (p. 436) invited an Irish delegation to London to discuss the matter. On December 6 they signed an agreement establishing the *Irish Free State*. It was understood that Ireland was to be one of "the group of nations forming the British commonwealth of nations." The British and Irish parliaments soon approved the agreement signed at London, and thus it seemed that an age-long quarrel was to be settled peaceably. However, the Irish people were divided over the question of accepting the agreement.

Debts, Taxes, and Money. Every European country came out of the World War staggering under a burden of debt and taxes. England owed about $3,500,000,000 in 1914 and something like $40,000,000,000 in 1919. Taxes were likewise increased, until in the case of the very rich the government took more than one third of their net income. At the outbreak of the war, the national debt of Italy was reckoned at $2.90 for every man, woman, and child in the kingdom. At the close of the war the debt stood at about $11 each. This was a terrible burden. To pay the interest on this debt, the Italian parliament had to resort to heavy taxes. In fact, taxes were laid on nearly everything. There were, for example, taxes on hotel bills, on articles of luxury, and on clothes, as well as on houses, lands, and incomes. The Germans had, in addition to the cost of their war, the

obligation of paying billions of dollars to the victors to meet the heavy damages done during the war.

In short, every European country was very much like a person who has most of his belongings in a pawn shop and little prospect of ever getting them out again. Furthermore, they had all issued great quantities of paper money. Silver and gold were driven out of circulation except in England and paper bills took their places. The money of Europe, as measured in American dollars, fell in value until the results were absurd. The Russian ruble, once worth fifty cents, dropped steadily until it took several hundred to equal one cent. The German mark, once reckoned at twenty-five cents, fell below a half of a cent. The Italian lira, worth twenty cents before the war, was worth less than four cents in 1921. This, of course, made it extremely difficult for the countries having money of such low value to trade with the United States. They could not afford to buy American goods. This helped to bring on a business depression in our own country.

International Relations

The Armed Peace. The close of the World War diminished none of the ancient grudges of Europe. Indeed it left most of the old ones still intact, and added many new ones. It brought no end to the huge expenditures for war purposes. Germany, it is true, was forcibly disarmed; but France, fearing a revival

of German power, kept an immense standing army. England and Japan continued to enlarge their navies (p. 428). Russia kept a great army ready for any emergency. The new republics created out of Russia and Austria-Hungary quarreled with one another over boundaries and many other matters. The Greeks and Turks immediately began to fight over territory. The Poles and Russians fought for a variety of reasons. The Germans began to write and publish books about "the next war." In short, instead of putting an end to war, the peace signed at Paris seemed to be more like a truce than a final settlement.

Trade Hampered by Rivalries. The new states created by the war began at once to put up tariffs against goods from neighboring states. In the old days, one could travel from the French to the Russian border by passing through only one country. After the war it was necessary to go through three or four. This meant that at every frontier travelers had their baggage searched. Since free trade among the peoples of Europe was hampered by so many barriers, business was bad everywhere. Some countries could not get raw materials and had to close their factories. In other countries mills were shut down because the output could not be sold. In general, Europe sank into a distressing state. There was unemployment and poverty for working people and ruin for capitalists and business men. In short, Europe was "sick" and apparently could not find a way to get well again.

The United States and Demoralized Europe. After the war was over, the United States withdrew nearly all its soldiers from Europe. Only a few thousand were left in Germany awaiting the final settlement. At the same time, the United States refused to join the League of Nations formed at Paris in 1919, and made a separate peace with Germany and Austria in 1921 (p. 439). It looked as if our country were trying to withdraw as rapidly as possible from European affairs.

Complete withdrawal, however, was impossible. In the first place, our former associates in the war, especially England and France, owed us billions of dollars borrowed during the struggle. Years passed by and still they did not arrange to pay interest or principal. How and when they could pay became a serious problem. They did not have the gold with which to pay. If they paid in goods, that would mean "dumping" manufactured articles into America to the injury of American industries.

In addition to this huge war debt, Europe owed private American capitalists immense sums. Nearly all the countries of the Old World had turned to America for money. France had borrowed huge sums here. So had Belgium, Switzerland, Sweden, and Denmark. Even European cities, like Paris, Berne, and several Danish towns, had borrowed from American bankers. Whenever one of the loans fell due, it was customary to float another loan in America

to get money to pay it. Often seven or eight per cent interest was charged on such loans, whereas most Liberty Bonds drew only four and one quarter per cent. To help the business of money lending, branches of American banks were opened in England, France, and other countries. In this way the United States, which had once borrowed money in Europe to develop its lands and factories, now became the banker for Europe.

The United States was also affected by the state of European trade. Before the World War, America sold goods to the annual value of about $1,500,000,000 in Europe. During the war, the exports, mainly war materials and supplies for the armies, multiplied threefold — this in spite of the fact that business with Austria and Germany was stopped altogether. After the war came a great "slump." The demand for war supplies was cut off entirely. The European countries, in debt and impoverished, could not buy heavily in American markets. American trade with Russia disappeared almost entirely. Trade with Germany, once running into the hundreds of millions each year, could not quickly be restored to its former importance.

All these things working together seriously hurt American business. Factories and mills cut down their output, turned off numbers of their employees, and in many instances shut up entirely. Thus in peace, as in war, it was seen that the state of affairs

in Europe was a matter of concern to America. Once again it was made clear that America does not live to herself alone. The price of wheat in the warehouses of Minneapolis, the wages of New England factory workers, and the earnings of Southern cotton planters depend in a large measure upon the business prosperity of the world.

The Orient. Events in the Far East made this dependence still plainer. Japan came out of the conflict richer and more powerful than ever. She had crushed one of her great rivals, Germany, and had seized German property and privileges in China. She was further strengthened by the downfall of Russia, another serious rival. Thus Japan had a free hand in extending her trade on the mainland of Asia. Having learned from the World War the importance of a strong navy, Japan laid out a great program for increasing the number of her battleships. United with Great Britain by an alliance, Japan prepared to become the ruler of the Orient. She announced a sort of Monroe Doctrine to the effect that everything Oriental was mainly her affair. Thus the slumbering nation which the United States had helped to awaken more than fifty years before had become one of the first powers of the world.

The rise of Japanese power brought new problems for the United States. Japan claimed the right to direct affairs in weak and disorderly China, where the citizens of many countries, including Americans, had

trade, factories, railways, and mines. With the increase of her navy and the growth of her population, Japan became very sensitive about the treatment of her citizens in foreign countries. Especially did she resent their exclusion from the United States and from Australia. This was very embarrassing. It disturbed Japan's close ally, Great Britain, because Aus-

© Keystone View Co., Inc.

A Modern Iron Mill in China

tralia is a part of the British empire. It raised alarm in the United States, for the Americans had firmly made up their minds to exclude the Japanese. The eyes of the world, therefore, became fixed on the Pacific Ocean, where three great nations, Japan, England, and the United States, had vital interests and China was trying to defend herself.

The Great International Conference at Washington. In view of this state of affairs, President Harding, in 1921, invited England, France, Italy, Japan, Belgium, The Netherlands, Portugal, and China to send delegates to Washington to discuss ways and means of settling disputes in the Pacific and of cutting down expenditures for armies and navies. They all eagerly accepted the invitation. Their eagerness showed that they, too, were alarmed over the plight of mankind and wished to find some way to a better understanding among the nations. It was a historic moment when, in November, 1921, the ministers of these nations met in Washington to consider the fate of the world. Mr. Hughes, our Secretary of State, startled every one by proposing an immediate reduction in the navies of the leading countries. This promised to cut down the heavy expenses for naval armaments. Many of the troublesome questions connected with China and the islands of the Pacific were discussed at great length with a view to keeping the peace in the Far East.

Before the conference closed in February, 1922, many important steps had been taken. The leading powers agreed to limit the number of their warships for a period of ten years. England, France, Japan, and the United States signed a "four power" treaty promising to respect one another's islands in the Pacific and to hold conferences when serious disputes arose over them. The alliance between England and Japan

was publicly dissolved. The powers agreed to limit the use of submarines and poison gas in warfare. Japan bound herself to give Shantung back to China on certain conditions. The independence of China was guaranteed; equal rights to trade in China were proclaimed. After they were drawn up, these treaties were laid before the various countries concerned for approval.

The conference showed how deeply America was involved in world affairs. Hereafter other countries will write an American background to their history.

Questions and Exercises

I. 1. Our study of previous wars has taught us that a long conflict is likely to be followed by a period of reaction. In what ways was the World War of 1914–18 more serious than any war in the past? Why were the difficulties of a satisfactory settlement much greater than in other wars? 2. What changes took place in the government of Germany as a result of the German revolution of 1918? 3. How did the results of the Russian revolution differ from those of the German revolution? 4. What is meant by "communism"? It is generally agreed that communism in Russia has been a most disastrous failure. Why would communism be likely to fail in any great modern nation? 5. The government of Russia under the Bolsheviki is, in theory, a government by the working classes, farmers, laborers, and factory workers. In your judgment, is this true democracy? Give reasons for your answer. In actual practice, the government by the Bolsheviki, most people believe, has not been even a government by the working people, but really a government by a very small group of men. Why would popular government of any sort be difficult to establish in Russia? (Think of the size of the country and remember that

more than half of the people are unable to read.) 6. How were the Polish people divided in 1772? In what way did the decision of the Peace Conference in 1919 "realize the dream of Kosciusko"? 7. Why should the nations of western Europe object to Turkish control of the Bosporus? What have they done to prevent such control? 8. How did the Irish Free States come into existence? What other countries belong to the "British Commonwealth of Nations"? What important British possessions are still not parts of this commonwealth? 9. What is meant by a "national debt"? From whom did our country borrow money during the World War? In what ways do the national debts of the European countries resemble our national debt? Do they differ in any important respect? What is meant by interest on a debt? How is the interest on our national debt paid? What is the difference between the principal of a debt and the interest? 10. We use paper money in this country, but not the kind of paper money that the European countries have issued. What is the difference? Do you know of any occasion when our government issued paper money similar to that which is now used by the European nations?

II. 1. Why is the period following the Peace Conference referred to as one of "armed peace"? 2. In what ways would the formation of so many new nations make trade among the European countries difficult? 3. How has the poverty of Europe affected our country? 4. What events led to the calling of the Washington Conference on the Limitation of Armaments, and what were the important results of this conference?

CHAPTER XVIII

THE CULTURE OF THE MODERN AGE

What a marvelous sweep there is in the history of mankind from the stone age to the age of electricity! The record opens with the poor and almost helpless cave man cowering before the lightning's flash; it closes with Marconi harnessing electricity to send messages around the world by the wireless telegraph. The primitive herdsman counts his flock by notches on a stick; the modern mathematician measures the 93,000,000 miles between the earth and the sun and reckons the time that it takes light to fly to our planet from the most distant star.

The primitive tribes of ancient days looked upon hatred of their neighbors as the greatest virtue and waged endless wars on one another. Modern nations do not consider all foreigners "barbarians" as did the Greeks; nor do they look upon constant warfare as natural and necessary. They are eager to exchange goods and ideas and to welcome travelers. Though wars continue to plague mankind, there are millions of people all over the earth who are laboring to find a plan for ending that savage way of settling quarrels. The history of mankind is indeed a wonderful story. In spite of many

sad, dark pages, it reveals to us a growth of human powers that fills us with awe. Moreover, it inspires us to act well our part in our day, so that the future may be more splendid than the past.

The Preceding Ages and Modern Times Contrasted. The story is all one, though we have divided it, for convenience, into ancient, medieval, and modern times. The beginnings of most of our ideas may be traced back through the middle ages to the nations of antiquity, as we have seen. Still the modern age presents some very clear contrasts to the ages that preceded it :

1. We know, for one thing, a vast deal more about the world — about the earth at our feet, the hills that tower above us, the stars that shine down upon us, and life around us — than did our remote ancestors. Medieval learning was mainly religious. It had to do with the world to come; and the priests, or clergy, were the only learned class. Modern learning deals chiefly with this world. In the modern age we have thousands of teachers, scholars, and scientists who are not clergymen.

2. In the modern age too — and this is very important — knowledge is far more widely distributed among the people than in the former ages. Schools, museums, newspapers, books, magazines, lectures, motion pictures, and the radio convey to the masses the information that was once limited to a mere handful of students.

3. The modern age is a "progressive" age. In medieval times, there was little change in the way

people lived and worked. The idea of constant improvement in implements, tools, machines, business methods, home comforts, and travel was not the leading idea. To-day, in every field, "improvement" is the most striking watchword.

4. In the modern age, literature, art, science, and opportunity are not for the privileged few only, but for the many. Any one, man or woman, boy or girl, who has talent may choose almost any calling. Even the old ideal that every person who worked at any of the arts should first be trained in ancient models has been scornfully, too scornfully, rejected.

In the modern age a writer or artist may pick his own subjects. He is not dependent, as in ancient Egypt, upon the whim of a king or, as in the middle ages, entirely upon the taste of some rich person. The market, so to speak, is now very wide and varied. There are newspapers, magazines, and publishers eager to discover new genius. There are hundreds of institutions for training. There are scholarships, prizes, and exhibits which permit those with special abilities to pursue the lines of work for which they are fitted.

Modern Knowledge

Its Variety. The range of modern knowledge is very wide. We have only to take up a good encyclopedia and run through its thousands of topics in order to see how many things have been carefully studied. The variety is always increasing. Fresh topics are be-

ing added daily. An encyclopedia grows out of date in a few years, nay, in a few months. Think of the topics that were not included at all fifty years ago, such as airplanes, wireless telegraphy, radio telephones, automobiles, and gas engines, to mention only a few.

Our knowledge is not only more varied; it is more accurate and can be more safely depended on. In many of the medieval histories all kinds of rumor and idle tales were set down as gospel truth by the old chroniclers. To-day great efforts are being made to write histories that present facts rather than rumor. Compare, too, the geography that any present-day school child may have with the poor collection of maps that Columbus owned. Columbus knew very little about lands outside of western Europe, and much that he believed was wrong. For a small sum one may buy a geography to-day that plots out with painstaking accuracy and describes clearly the most distant lands, seas, islands, and rivers. It tells us not only about the shape of the continents, but also about the peoples of various lands, their occupations, the climate, soil, and products. The modern world knows far more than the middle ages and what it knows is more accurate. It even knows more of the middle ages themselves than the wisest men then living knew.

Natural Science. It is in the field of natural science especially that the modern times show the greatest progress. Even in the oldest science, astronomy, wonderful steps have been taken. Men like Galileo, Co-

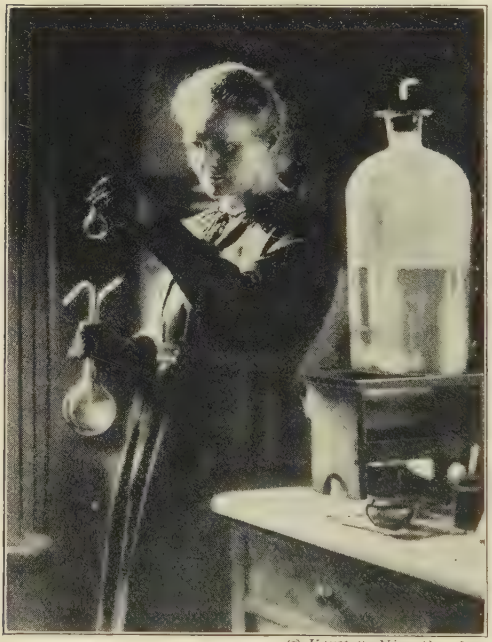
© *Keystone View Co., Inc.*

A Modern Photograph of the Full Moon

pernicus, and Newton revealed to mankind the starry heavens and their laws, the revolution of the planets and the orbits of the comets.

Ever since the seventeenth century startling progress has been made in every field of medicine. William Harvey, in 1628, published his great book showing the working of the human heart and the circulation of the blood through the body. Diseases which were

once thought hopeless can now be cured. The surgeon can perform delicate operations without torturing his patient. Such scourges as smallpox and yellow fever have been almost entirely stamped out. Ways have been found to control diphtheria and typhoid fever. Fewer persons die in infancy and childhood, and many more live to old age.



© Keystone View Co., Inc.

Madame Curie, a Famous French Scientist, in Her Laboratory

In chemistry, the discoveries of the modern age have been brilliant and startling. *Chemists* have broken up simple things, such as a lump of coal or a grain of corn, into an astounding number of elements. Out of coal the chemist can make, among other things, illuminating gas, tar, oils of various kinds, paints, perfumes, dyestuffs, flavoring extracts, indigo, explosives, roofing materials, paving materials, and lampblack. Corn was once used only as grain for cattle and hogs, or when ground into meal as food

for mankind. Out of corn the chemist to-day makes table oil, soap, glycerin, rubber substitute, table starch, laundry starch, syrup, sugar, glue, and oil cake.

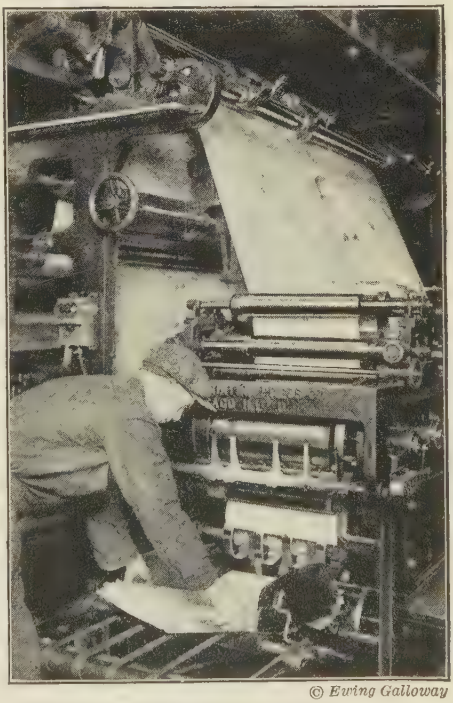
Students of animal life, called *zoölogists*, have studied, classified, and described millions of forms of animal life, ranging from the tiniest creatures that can be seen only under the microscope to the giant beasts of the African jungle. Students of rocks, *geologists*, have studied the layers of the earth's surface and the way in which metals and stones have been scattered about. They have read the story of creation as revealed in plain, mountain, river, and valley. The *botanists* (students of plants) have done the same thing for all plant life. They have discovered tiny plants called *bacteria*, some of which are very harmful and others very useful. They have found ways of improving plants and even of developing new kinds of fruits and vegetables. Chemists and botanists have united in discovering the kinds of plants best suited to certain soils and the kinds of fertilizers that produce the best crops.

Workers in the field of *physics* have revealed the workings of natural forces. They know how to generate and use electricity. They can tell beforehand how much power a rushing river will give if made to turn a water wheel. They can tell how strong a piece of steel must be to bear a certain load, whether it be used in a bridge or in a towering office building. In all the fairy tales there is nothing more wonderful than in the true stories of modern natural science.

Knowledge of the Human Race. Along with the study of the natural world inhabited by mankind there has been undertaken an equally zealous study of mankind itself. One group of workers, called *archeologists*, has dug up the ruins of ancient civilizations and shown us how the Egyptians, Babylonians, Greeks, and Romans lived. Another group has studied the North American Indians, the Eskimos of the North, the pygmies of Africa, and many other backward races, and described their habits, their languages, and their religions. *Historians*, instead of relying on idle tales and rumors, have sought to separate the truth from error and to tell as accurately as possible about the past of humanity.

Economists have studied the ways in which goods are produced and distributed among the various classes of each nation. They keep track of the bales of cotton, the pairs of shoes, the yards of cloth, and the countless other products turned out each year. They receive reports from all parts of the world as to the way in which the farm crops are growing, and make shrewd guesses as to the prices of corn, wheat, and cotton for the coming season. Economists also study the ways of advancing business prosperity, how to improve the conditions of wage earners, and how to get rid of undeserved poverty. The human race — its habits, customs, beliefs, industries, crimes, diseases, and achievements — receives in the modern age more attention than ever before in history.

How Knowledge Is Distributed and Used. Modern knowledge, unlike that of the ancient world or the middle ages, is not limited to a single class — a small group of learned men. It is spread broadcast throughout the length and breadth of the civilized world. Once it was the exceptional person who knew how to read and write. Now, in our country, in western and northern Europe, in Canada, Australia, South Africa, New Zealand, and in Japan, it is the exceptional person who does not. Newspapers, magazines, books, and motion pictures carry daily to the people the results of study in every field. In the middle ages only a very rich man could have a library of any size. Owing to the printing press, any one can now buy for a few dollars an encyclopedia or a small library of informing books.



© *Ewing Galloway*

PRINTING A MODERN NEWSPAPER

Thanks to the public schools, no one needs to have the

gateways of knowledge closed against him. "Is it not strange," wrote a very wise man, "that a little child should be heir to the whole world?" Yet it is true. A little child taught to read and write and set on the way to knowledge at school or in the home is heir to all the wisdom of the ages — to all the past. He is therefore better prepared to understand his own times. In an age of democracy when all adults, men and women alike, take part in their own government, it is fitting that knowledge should be democratic; that is, open to all.

Modern knowledge is also applied knowledge. The ancient ruling classes scorned mechanics and trades. Learned men did not apply their knowledge. They sat about and talked and dreamed and wrote. The clergy of the middle ages did not look down upon honest work, but they did not labor hard at improving plows, inventing better water wheels, or making fields to yield larger crops. In other words, they were not mainly concerned with using their knowledge to lift the burden from mankind. Modern knowledge, on the other hand, is used to solve man's problems. Chemists not only learn the substances of which the world is made; they apply chemistry in all manner of ways from multiplying the bushels of corn that can be grown in a field to killing the disease germs that lurk in a fever-laden swamp. Men and women to-day want to know things not merely for the sake of knowing, but for the sake of conquering disease, pain, drudgery, and poverty — for the sake of making the world a happier place in which to live.

The Idea of Progress and Reform

The Idea. Life in the middle ages, as we have seen, was slow to change. The peasant in the field, the smith at his forge, the housewife at the fireside, went about their duties in almost the same way from generation to generation. In modern times change is continuous. A business man throws aside a machine that cost thousands of dollars because a better one has been invented. The housewife cooks with wood, then with coal, then with gas, then with electricity. The farmer sells his oxen and buys horses, sells his horses and buys a tractor and an automobile. The skilled machinist moves from Scotland, Italy, or Rumania to South America or the United States to better his living conditions.

The idea of progress was not wholly unknown to the ancients. The Roman poet Lucretius took serious note of the fact that mankind had passed through the stone, bronze, and iron ages. Other ancient writers sometimes spoke of the movement of the human race from stage to stage. But it was the nineteenth century which made the idea of growth the very center of all thought. Three great Englishmen, Charles Darwin, Herbert Spencer, and Thomas H. Huxley, did more than any others to apply it. Out of their teachings rose the common belief of scientists that the world we see about us, from the plants in the garden to the ideas in our brains, is the product of slow, gradual growth extending over thousands of years.

Improvement — the Watchword. Coupled with the idea that the world is constantly changing is another idea equally important: namely, that by taking thought and making combined efforts mankind may make improvements in every direction. Humanity is at work to improve schools, highways, houses, prisons, public health, and charitable institutions. Business men, working people, teachers — men and women — have come together, or *organized*, for the purpose of bettering the lot of mankind. Societies or organizations have been established to oppose war, to fight disease and poverty, and to help little children. There is scarcely an ill that besets mankind which is not studied and attacked in the modern age. If a plague sweeps down upon a country, its inhabitants do not view it as an act of God, as they did in former times. They seek to discover the germ that caused it and to destroy it by science.

Modern political parties in Europe are all striving for reform and improvement. There is not a party that has for its motto: "Keep things just as they are." All agree that the life of the people must be made better; that poverty, disease, unemployment, and overcrowding in the great cities must be attacked and removed. "I cannot help hoping and believing that before this generation has passed away we shall have advanced a great step toward that good time when poverty and wretchedness and human degradation . . . will be as remote to the people of this country as the wolves which once infested its forests." These are the words

of Lloyd George, the premier of Great Britain and the foremost political leader in that country. They fairly represent the spirit and purpose of the modern age.

To give mankind true prosperity is the aim of the modern statesman. The ancient world accepted poverty and misery as the fate of all who labored. Thus we see how far mankind has advanced since the days of Egypt, Greece, and Rome. Not even the wisest Greek philosopher included the whole mass of people in his plans for a better world. He thought only of the richer and more favored classes and left out of account those who toiled.

The Churches and Reform. Religion as well as science has entered into the spirit of the new idea of progress. The improvement of the life of mankind is one of the noblest ends of Christian service. A powerful Protestant church in England declared that "the efforts of Christians should be directed not merely to attacking particular evils as they arise, but to discovering and removing the roots from which they spring."

In 1891 the great leader of the Catholic Church, Pope Leo XIII, declared, "There can be no question whatever that some remedy must be found and found quickly for the misery and wretchedness pressing so heavily and so unjustly at this moment upon the vast majority of the working classes." Thus from the Eternal City, where Roman emperors had once ruled with utter disregard for the fate of the masses, came a call to lighten the burdens of mankind.

All over Europe, churches of every denomination have added to their religious and charitable duties that of aiding in many movements for human betterment. They have set before them the goal of a better humanity in this world as well as the salvation of souls for the next world.

Literature and Art

Contrast with Ancient Times. The ancient forms of literature — poetry, drama, and history — have all been continued in the modern age. During the past three hundred years all European countries have made splendid additions to the general store of literature. The English Shakespeare and the German Goethe rank with the best poets that the ancient world produced.

In our time there is a wider distribution of learning among the people. Greek and Roman authors wrote usually for a small class of persons. Modern authors write for the masses and are hardly satisfied unless their books are read by the people of many lands. The classical authors usually wrote with a certain pomp and loftiness. The best modern writers aim at simplicity, directness, and clearness in style. They write for the people, in the tongue of the people.

The most striking additions to literature in the modern age are the novel and the short story. Forerunners of the novel, to be sure, are found in old ballads and fables, but it was the modern age that brought to the front the long story and the short dramatic tale.

In Great Britain, Sir Walter Scott made the feudal age live again in his novels. His *Ivanhoe* and *Quentin Durward* will be read by boys and girls as long as there is any interest in medieval times. Somewhat later Charles Dickens pictured the customs of England in a score of stories which have few rivals. We can still laugh and cry over *Nicholas Nickleby* and *Oliver Twist.* In her *Silas Marner*, George Eliot tells a vivid story of English country life during the early years of the nineteenth century. In such books we can gain an insight into the manners and customs of the past.

In France, Victor Hugo made equally wonderful pictures of the life of his countrymen. His *Les Misérables* has all the thrill of the melodrama. At the same time it describes the common life of France at the opening of the nineteenth century.

The novel, it will thus be seen, has not been confined merely to interesting tales. It has been used for a variety of purposes — to portray the life and spirit of a time, to describe an historical period and the great characters in it, or perhaps to expose a great wrong. For example, Charles Kingsley in his *Alton Locke* aroused all England by showing the bitter suffering that existed among the working classes in the reign of Queen Victoria. Being far more widely read than any other form of literature, the novel holds a high and influential place in the thought of Europe. It holds the same place in American interest. European and American novelists have greatly influenced each other's work.

Art and Architecture. Modern painters do not devote their talents mainly to Biblical scenes or pictures of saints. They take up every imaginable theme: landscapes, animals, portraits of distinguished and undistinguished people, glimpses of cities from palaces to the slums, cottages by the wayside, or ships swinging at anchor. They consider nothing too high or too humble for their brushes and their skill. Sculptors likewise represent simple subjects. All this variety stands in sharp contrast to the limited range of work done by the Greeks and by the painters and sculptors of the middle ages.

In buildings also there is a far wider range for the artist. To the cathedral and the gild hall, he has added towering office buildings, railway stations, city halls, state capitols, and schoolhouses.

The architecture of homes has been greatly improved.

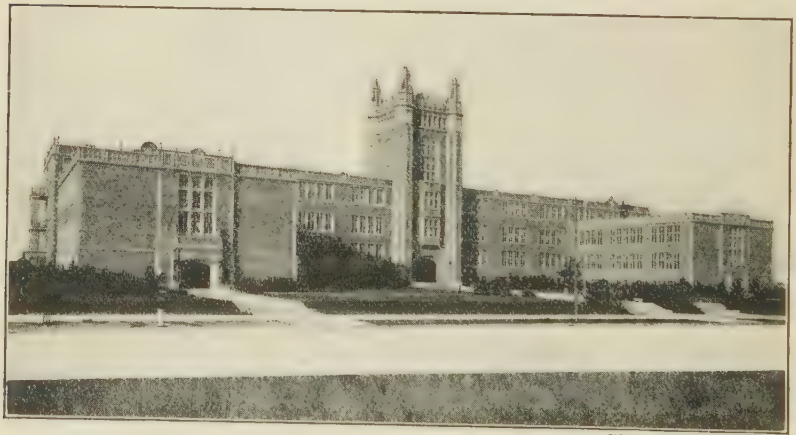


Photo by Geo. F. Clifton

An American School Building (Los Angeles)

The Greek architect who planned an exquisite temple was content to live in a house that would now be regarded as a hovel. To-day the governments of Europe, especially of England and Germany, are calling on

Metropolitan Museum

A Corner of the Metropolitan Museum in New York City — an Exhibit from Ancient Greece

architects to design homes for working people and are seeking to combine beauty with comfort. Even the idea of planning entire cities from the point of view of comfort, health, and good taste has been accepted in Europe, as it has in America.

So we may say that art, as well as literature, is touched by the democratic spirit of the age. Every great European city has its art galleries and museums open to the public where any one can study the best works of all times. Americans are constantly adding European and Oriental treasures to their own galleries.

The Unity of the Modern World

International Law. Among ancient savages there was no limit to the cruelty that might be practiced in wars; prisoners might be killed or enslaved. In times of peace there was little or no commercial intercourse among the various tribes. After settlement upon the land took place, trade among nations became both natural and common, but wars were frequent and tribal hatreds continued to flourish.

Slowly, however, there was growing up through the centuries the belief that certain rules of right and justice ought to govern the relation of nations to one another. In 1625 a celebrated Dutch writer, Hugo Grotius, published a great work on war and peace in which he discussed this subject. His book is regarded as the beginning of modern international law. After the day of Grotius all Western countries recognized that there were certain rules of conduct which they should follow in dealing with one another. These rules were sometimes defined by express agreement among nations. They were laid down in books on international law. They were used by judges who were often called upon to

decide disputes involving the law of nations. Writers on the subject had before them the ideal that all the relations of nations with one another might be fixed clearly in law. Accordingly, they argued, disputes among countries might be settled in courts just as are quarrels and disputes among citizens.

The Union of the Nations. Closely connected with the growth of international law was the desire that the nations should form a union or league among themselves to keep perpetual peace. In 1610 there was published a *Grand Design*, prepared by the Duke of Sully, a minister of the French king. The Duke proposed to create in Europe a "Christian Republic" composed of the fifteen independent nations. Some seventy years later William Penn, founder of the colony of Pennsylvania, issued a tract on that subject. He advocated creating a European parliament with full power to compel all nations to keep the peace. From that time forward the idea appeared in many forms. In 1899 and again in 1907 a peace conference was held at The Hague in Holland on the call of the czar of Russia. All nations sent representatives, but only one agreement of importance was reached. A high court of arbitration was created. Nations might submit their disputes to this court if they saw fit, but they did not bind themselves to do so.

During the World War, when all mankind was sick of bloodshed, President Wilson declared that the war must end in the establishment of a League of Nations to keep peace. As we have already seen, he succeeded in

creating the League, but it was rejected by his own country. Nevertheless nearly all the other nations of the world joined it, and the first session of the World Assembly was held at Geneva in the autumn of 1920.

© Keystone View Co., Inc.

THE PEACE PALACE AT THE HAGUE

The future of the League was, however, very uncertain, especially with the United States on the outside.

Civilization Is International. Whatever may be the fate of the League of Nations or the outcome of conferences such as that called by President Harding (p. 464) or a later conference of European nations at Genoa to consider ways and means to better the condition of Europe, civilization in the modern age is less and less divided by the boundaries between nations. All civilized countries tend to become alike in ways of living. Their people

wear similar clothes; they have street cars, automobiles, and electric lights; they consume similar goods; they exchange professors and students; they have the same industries and problems. More and more they are coming to have the same ideas or standards of what is right and what is wrong.

Nations not only tend to become alike; they are drawn together by a thousand ties. Trade among them, the exchange of ideas, the increase of travel, and the growth of international societies draw them into a sort of world unity. There is not a single important interest of mankind that does not concern all nations. The Roman Catholic Church has churches and missions all over the world. The Protestant denominations hold world congresses. The flow of scientific ideas from nation to nation is constant, and the workers in the several fields hold frequent international conferences. The Red Cross and agencies for the improvement of public health know no national boundaries. Relief work of every kind goes on regardless of political boundaries. Every plan of human betterment, every branch of knowledge, has the world for its field.

America and the Future. In the midst of this striking unity of all the world, there is room for each nation to develop its own powers and do its own work. As the Egyptians, Hebrews, Greeks, and Romans made their gifts to humanity, so America has its mission to fulfill.

To-day we stand at the opening of a new epoch. Our country began as weak and straggling settlements on the

Atlantic coast. For a long time it had to depend on the Old World for nearly everything except the roughest necessities of life. It looked to Europe for the finer manufactured articles and for books, music, art, and science. It sought there the money with which to develop its natural resources and build its factories. To Europe it turned for immigrants to till its wide reaches of vacant lands. For nearly two hundred years our land was a province of the British empire.

Now all that has been changed. Our country has become a great and independent nation. It has spread from the Atlantic to the Pacific. Its vacant lands have been taken up. The continent has been spanned by railways. The wilderness has been cleared and turned into farms. America has become the first manufacturing country of the world. It no longer tries to entice more immigrants to its shores. On the contrary, Congress searches for ways to cut down the number that would come. America has grown up. It is of age.

The new era before us, therefore, presents new tasks. One of them is the task of drawing the millions of foreigners already here into the main stream of American life. A second is to conserve and make better use of our natural resources. A third is to improve our ways of living in town and country. A fourth is to bring forth our best powers in science, art, literature, and government — to encourage and appreciate American talent. This does not mean that we should spurn our inheritance from the past or refuse to learn from

our neighbors. It merely means that we should profit by our splendid heritage from ancient, medieval, and modern times. It means that we should keep for our symbol that wonderful word *Opportunity* — not opportunity for wealth and power alone, but opportunity for great achievements in the realm of the spirit. Temples, palaces, amphitheaters, and even mighty cities, may, as we have seen, crumble into dust, but the things of the human spirit are everlasting.

Questions and Exercises

I. 1. What are some of the important differences between the modern age and ancient and medieval times? Can you add to the list of differences given in the text (pp. 468–9)?

II. 1. Of the subjects that you are studying in school, which would you group with the "natural sciences"? Which with "knowledge of the human race" (sometimes called the "social sciences")? 2. The work of the botanists has been very helpful to farmers. Do you know of any way in which the work of the botanists has helped the physician? How has the chemist aided the physician? How has the chemist helped the farmer? What occupations have probably been helped most by the students of physics? 3. Of what value is it to know about the habits and customs of backward races? 4. What problems do the economists study? In what ways may the results of their study be helpful to mankind? 5. Why has the distribution of knowledge been so important in making the modern age different from the ages that went before? In what way does the public school help in the distribution of knowledge? In what way do newspapers help? Some people believe that the radio telephone will become one of the most important agencies in distributing knowledge.

Can you think of any advantages that the radio telephone may have over newspapers and books for this purpose?

III. 1. In ancient and medieval times the life of each generation was much like the life of the generations that preceded it and followed it. Find out from talking with your fathers and mothers how your life to-day differs from the way in which they lived as children. Most of you have grandparents still living. Find out how their childhood differed from your childhood and from that of your parents. Perhaps they can tell you something of *their* parents and the way in which they lived as children. Thus you will be able to learn something of the changes that have been brought about in three or four generations. 2. What societies or organizations in your neighborhood are working for the improvement of the conditions under which people live and work to-day? 3. Find out what changes or improvements are being sought by the political party of which your father or mother is a member. 4. What are the churches in your town or city working for in the way of town or city improvement? 5. In some schools, the boys and girls form clubs to help in the improvement of the school and the care of the school grounds, or to help keep the streets free from rubbish and the yards and gardens of their homes attractive. In many of the country schools, the boys and girls have "corn clubs" and "poultry clubs" and try in their gardens and poultry yards at home to raise better crops and better chickens. In what ways are the children of your school working for progress and improvement?

IV. 1. What are some of the important differences between the literature of the ancient world and that of the modern world? 2. Why is the novel "more widely read than any other form of literature"? 3. By comparing in your own neighborhood old houses with modern houses make a list of the important improvements that modern methods of planning and building have made possible. Ask your parents and grandparents to describe the schoolhouses of their childhood. Compare these with the modern schoolhouses that you know.

V. 1. With what kind of problems is international law concerned? 2. A person who breaks a state law or a national law can be arrested and, if convicted after trial, he can be punished. What can be done with a nation that breaks an international law? 3. What forces are gradually bringing the nations of the world together? 4. How can our country help to keep the world from another great war?

VI. Some people believe that, in spite of all that has happened during the long centuries of history, mankind is really no better off than he was in ancient times. Do you agree with this? If not, what reasons would you give to prove that mankind after all has made progress and that life *is* better to-day than it was in the past?

PRONOUNCING INDEX OF NAMES

KEY TO PRONUNCIATION

(Webster's International Dictionary)

āle, senāte, câre, ăm, ăccount, ärm, àsk, sofà; ēve, ẽvent, ĕnd, recĕnt, makēr; īce, ĭll; ōld, ôbey, ôrb, ŏdd, cŏnnect; ūse, ŭnite, ûrn, ŭp, circŭs, menü; fo͝od, fo͝ot; out, oil; chair; go; then, thin; nature, verdure; zh = z in azure.

The numbers refer to pages. Where several references are given, the pages on which the principal description is to be found are indicated by heavier type.

Abyssinia (ăb'ĭ-sĭn'ĭ-à), 417
Acadia (à-kā'dĭ-à), 279
Adams, John (ăd'amz), 307
Adriatic Sea (ā'drē-ăt'ĭk), 152, 368, 436
Aeschylus (ĕs'kĭ-lŭs), 89
Aesop (ē'sop), 4
Africa (ăf'rĭ-kà), 11; early map of, 200; first voyages around, 205; European occupation of, 413–417
Alaric (ăl'à-rĭk), 115, 137
Alaska (à-lăs'kà), 17
Alexander the Great (ăl'ĕg-zăn'dẽr), 47, 187–188
Alfred the Great (ăl'frĕd), 145, **172–174**, 180, 232
Algiers (ăl-jērz'), 416
Alien and Sedition Acts (āl'yĕn), 308
Alsace-Lorraine (ăl-säs'-lô-rān'), 351, 361, 436
America (à-mĕr'ĭ-kà), naming of, 206; meaning of English revolutions to, 255–256; and Napoleonic wars, 314, 316; emigration to, 344, 348–349, 374–375; and the future, 487–489. *See also* United States
Anatolia (ăn'à-tō'lĭ-à), 13
Angelo, Michael (ăn'jĕ-lō, mī'kĕl), 141
Angles (ăn'gl'z), 115, 171
Anglo-Saxon Chronicle (ăn'glō-săk'sŭn), 143
Anne, Queen of England (ăn), 255
Aphrodite (ăf'rō-dī'tĭ), 96
Apollo (à-pŏl'ō), 96
Aquinas, St. Thomas (à-kwī'nàs), 132
Arabia (à-rā'bĭ-à), 52
Arabs (ăr'ăbz), 12, 169
Aragon (ăr'à-gŏn), 170
Ares (ā'rēs), 96
Argos (är'gŏs), 48
Aristotle (ăr'ĭs-tŏt''l), 61, 89, 90, 93, 95, 98, 146, 201, 448
Arizona (ăr'ĭ-zō'nà), 208
Arkwright, Richard (ärk'rīt), 332
Arles (ärlz), 66

Armada, Spanish (är-mā′dȧ), 266
Arungzebe (ô′rŭng-zĕb′), 270
Asia (ā′shȧ), 11, 198
Asia Minor (ā′shȧ mī′nẽr), 43
Athena (ȧ-thē′nȧ), 96
Athens (ăth′ĕnz), 48, 49, 50, 58, 64, 65, 85; social classes in, 57, 60–61; temple in, 80; education in, 93
Atlantic Ocean (ăt-lăn′tĭk), 324
Attica (ăt′ĭ-kȧ), 50
Augsburg Confession (ouks′bo͝orĸ), 219
Augustine (ô′gŭs-tĭn), 127
Augustus (ô-gŭs′tŭs), 54, 100
Australia (ôs-trā′lĭ-ȧ), 11, 37, 344, 463
Austria (ôs′trĭ-ȧ), 278, 280, 296, 302, 317, 344, 359, 361, 363, 364, 365, 366, 371
Austria-Hungary (ôs′trĭ-ȧ-hŭn′gȧ-rĭ), 372–373; democracy in, 392–393; in World War, 429–439; collapse of, 450–452
Azores (ȧ-zōrz′), 205

Baal, Temple of (bā′ăl), 79
Babylon (băb′ĭ-lŏn), 43–44, **64–65**, 75, 79
Babylonia (băb′ĭ-lō′nĭ-ȧ), **42–47**, 86
Bacon, Roger (bā′k'n), 201
Bagdad (bȧg-dăd′), 194, 346
Bahama Islands (bȧ-hā′mȧ), 426
Balkan States (bȧl-kän′), 368–372, 393, 453, 455
Baltic Sea (bôl′tĭk), 373, 450
Baptists (băp′tĭsts), 224
Bastille (bȧs-tēl′), 300, 301, 302
Bavaria (bȧ-vā′rĭ-ȧ), 359
Belgium (bĕl′jĭ-ŭm), 20, 430–431
Belgrade (bĕl′grād′), 369
Benedict, St. (bĕn′ĕ-dĭkt), 131
Beowulf (bā′ō-wŭlf), 88
Berlin (bûr′lĭn′), 2, 317
Berlin-Bagdad railway (bûr′lĭn′-bȧg-dăd′), 346
Bible (bī′b'l), 89, 231–234
Bill of Rights, English, 253–254
Birmingham, Eng. (bûr′mĭng-ăm), 327
Bismarck, Otto von (bĭs′märk, ŏt′tō fŏn), 361
Blackburn, Eng. (blăk′bŭrn), 332
Black Sea, 194, 196, 197
Boers (bo͝orz), 416
Bohemia (bō-hē′mĭ-ȧ), 215
Bojador, Cape (bŏj′ȧ-dōr′), 205
Boleyn, Anne (bo͝ol′ĭn, ăn), 220
Bolivar, Simon (bō-lē′vär), 419
Bolivia (bō-lĭv′ĭ-ȧ), 13
Bolsheviki (bŏl′shĕ-vē′kē), 433, **446–450**
Bonaparte, Napoleon (bō′nȧ-pärt, nȧ-pō′lē-ŭn), 284–285. *See* Napoleon I
Bosnia (bŏz′nĭ-ȧ), 429
Bosporus (bŏs′pō-rŭs), 455
Boulogne (bo͝o′lōn′y'), 13
Boulton, Matthew (bōl′tŭn), 327, 329
Bourbons, French (bo͝or′bŭnz), 291, 316, 380; Spanish, 363
Braddock, General (brăd′ŭk), 275
Brazil (brȧ-zĭl′), 264, 266, 418, 432
Bristol, Eng. (brĭs′tŭl), 151, 243
Britain (brĭt''n), 52, 171–172; conversion of, to Christianity, 127–128
Bronze Age (brŏnz), 28–30
Buenos Aires (bwā′nōs ī′rās), 424
Bulgaria (bo͝ol-gā′rĭ-ȧ), 370, 393
Bunyan, John (bŭn′yȧn), 4, 224
Burke, Edmund (bûrk), 308
Bushmen (bo͝osh′mĕn), 37
Byron, Lord (bī′rŭn), 369

Cabot, John (kăb′ŭt), 4–5, 206, 264
Cabot, Sebastian (sē-băs′chăn), 206
Caesar, Julius (sē′zär, jo͞ol′yŭs), 8, 52, **54**, 63, 91, 149; *Commentaries* of, 91, 92
Cairo, Egypt (kī′rō), 346
Calvin, John (kăl′vĭn), 225
Canada (kăn′ȧ-dȧ), 11, 273, 275
Canterbury Tales (kăn′tẽr-bẽr-ĭ), 181–182
Canute (kȧ-nūt′), 174
Capet, Hugh (kā′pĕt, hū), 167
Cape-to-Cairo railway, 346
Cape Town (kāp toun), 346
Carolingians (kă′rō-lĭn′jĭ-ȧnz), 163–167
Caribbean region (kăr′ĭ-bē′ăn), 417, **425–426**
Carthage (kär′thăj), 52, 60, 64
Cartier, Jacques (kär′tyā′, zhäk), 206–207
Cartwright, Edmund (kärt′rīt), 334
Castile (kăs-tēl′), 170
Catacombs (kăt′ȧ-kōmz), 104
Cathay (kȧ-thā′), 197, 198
Cato (kā′tō), 59
Caucasus Mountains (kô′kȧ-sŭs), 450
Cavaliers (kăv′ȧ-lērz′), 255
Cavour, Count (kȧ′vo͞or′), 364–366
Caxton, William (kăks′tŭn), 182
Central America, 11, 417–426
Central Park, 1
Ceylon (sē-lŏn′), 286
Champs de Mars (shäN′ dẽ märs′), 302
Charlemagne (shär′lẽ-mān), 164–167, 170
Charles I of England (chärlz), 244, 245–249
Charles II of England, 250, 252–253
Charles X of France, 380
Charles, ex-Emperor of Austria, 452
Chaucer, Geoffrey (chô′sẽr, jĕf′rĭ), 181–182
China (chī′nȧ), 11–12, 19, 86–87, 151, 188, 197–198, 208, 351, 408–411; growth of democracy in, 401–402; and Japan contrasted, 411–413; policy of United States toward, 412–413; after World War, 462, 463, 465
Cicero (sĭs′ẽr-ō), 6, 8, 61, 90, 92, 149, 154
Clemenceau, Georges (klĕ′mäN′sō′, zhôrj), 436
Cleopatra (klē′ŏ-pä′trȧ), 52
Clermont (klẽr′mŏnt), 329
Cleveland, Grover (klēv′lănd), 423
Clive, Robert (klīv), 272, 280
Clovis (klō′vĭs), 126, 163
Cologne (kŏ-lōn′), 151
Colosseum, Rome (kŏl′ŏ-sē′ŭm), 65, **81**, 91, 103
Columbus, Christopher (kŏ-lŭm′bŭs, krĭs′tŏ-fẽr), 10, 31, 106, 137, 152, 171, 200, **205**, 206, 470
Congo River (kŏn′gō), 417
Congregationalists (kŏn′grē-gā′shŭn-ăl-ĭsts), 223
Constantine (kŏn′stăn-tēn), Arch of, 55
Constantine, Emperor, 104
Constantinople (kŏn-stăn′tĭ-nō′p'l), 116, 141, 147, 192, 194, 196, 368, 454, 455
Copernicus (kŏ-pûr′nĭ-kŭs), 470–471
Corinth (kŏr′ĭnth), 48
Cortez (kôr′tĕz), Ferdinand, 207–208
Coster (kŏs′tẽr), 149
Crimea (krī-mē′ȧ), 427
Cromwell, Oliver (krŏm′wĕl), 242, **247–250**, 311

Crusades (krōō-sādz′), 192
Crusoe, Robinson (krōō′sō), 32
Cuba (kū′bȧ), 17, 266, 425
Cugnot (kū′nyō′), 329
Curie, Madame (kü′rē′), 472
Czechoslovakia (chĕĸ′ō-slō-văk′ĭ-ȧ), 451
Czechs (chĕĸz), 356

Damascus (dȧ-măs′kŭs), 102
Dante (dän′tē), 142, 144
Danton (däN′toN′), 305
Danube River (dăn′ūb), 47, 368
Darwin, Charles (där′wĭn), 477
Davis, Jefferson (dā′vĭs, jĕf′ĕr-sŭn), 19
Declaration of Independence, 256–257
Defoe, Daniel (dē-fō′), 4
Delaware (dĕl′ȧ-wâr), 5
Demeter (dē-mē′tĕr), 96
Demosthenes (dē-mŏs′thē-nēz), 89, 90–91
Denmark (dĕn′märk), 219, 344, 361, 426
De Soto (dē sō′tō), 208
Diaz, Bartholomew (dē′äsh, bär-thŏl′ō-mū), 205
Dickens, Charles (dĭk′ĕnz), 8, 481
Discus Thrower (dĭs′kŭs), 83, 84
Disraeli, Benjamin (dĭz-rā′lĭ, bĕn′jȧ-mĭn), 385
Domesday Book (dōmz′dā′), 180
Douay Bible (dōō′ā′), 233
Drake, Sir Francis (drāk), 265–266
Duma (dōō′mä), 396
Dupleix, Marquis (dü′plĕks′), 270
Duquesne, Fort (dŏō-kān′), 282
Dutch (dŭch), 264; war between English and, 266–268

East India Company (ēst ĭn′dĭ-ȧ), 269, 273
East Indies (ĭn′dĭz), 268
Edward VI of England (ĕd′wẽrd), 221
Egbert, King (ĕg′bẽrt), 172
Egypt (ē′jĭpt), **42–47**, 52, 57, 86, 310, 347, 348, 416
Elba (ĕl′bȧ), 314
Eliot, George (ĕl′ĭ-ŭt), 481
Elizabeth, Queen of England (ē-lĭz′ȧ-bĕth), 222–223
Endicott, John (ĕn′dĭ-kŏt), 242
England (ĭng′glănd), 7, 13, 18, 20; making of nation of, 171–182; the Protestant Reformation in, 220–227; political revolution in, 238–258; commercial leadership of, 264–268; conflict between France and, 268–273; triumph of, in Canada, 273–275; and European balance of power, 276, 278; wars of, in 17th and 18th centuries, 278–286; industrial leadership of, 341; democracy in, 382–386; and World War, 428, 431–439; and Irish Revolt, 455–457
Erasmus (ē-răz′mŭs), 216, 232
Eskimos (ĕs′kĭ-mōs), 12
Esthonia (ĕs-thō′nĭ-ȧ), 450
Ethelbert (ĕth′ĕl-bûrt), 127–128
Euphrates River (ū-frā′tēz), **43**, **64**, 72, 73
Euripides (ū-rĭp′ĭ-dēz), 89
Europe (ū′rŭp), trade of, 12–13; American influence on, 14, 16; at present time, 444–462

Faust, Johann (foust, yō′hän), 149
Federalists, 306
Ferdinand of Spain (fûr′dĭ-nănd), 170, 171
Finland (fĭn′lănd), 450

Florence (flŏr'ĕns), 139, 147, 152, 193
Florida (flŏr'ĭ-dȧ), 208
Foch, General (fōsh), 434
Fontainebleau (fôN'tĕn'blō'), 291
Forum, Roman (fō'rŭm), 65, 92
Fox, George (fŏks), 227
France (frȧns), 18, 19, 20, 27, 284–286; feudalism in, 120–125; rise and growth of, 163–169; Protestant revolt in, 227–228; conflict between England and, in 17th century, 268–275; combinations of nations against, in 17th and 18th centuries, 278–282; Napoleonic wars in, 310–317; democracy in, 380–382; and World War, 428, 430–439
Francis Joseph (frăn'sĭs jō'zĕf), Emperor, 393
Francis of Assisi, St. (ȧs-sē'zē), 131
Franco-Prussian War, 361, 382, 427
Franklin, Benjamin (frănk'lĭn), 1, 284
Franks (frănks), 115
Frederick the Great (frĕd'ĕr-ĭk), 280
French and Indian War, 275
French Revolution, 14, 284, **290–317**
Fulton, Robert (fo͝ol'tŭn), 329

Galen (gā'lĕn), 62–63
Galilœ (găl'ĭ-lē), 106
Galileo (găl'ĭ-lē'ō), 470
Gama, Vasco da (gä'mä, văs'kō dä), 205
Ganges River (găn'jēz), 200, 273
Garibaldi, Joseph (găr'ĭ-bôl'dĭ), 365, 366, 375
Gaul (gôl), 52, 66, 126, 163
Geneva (jĕ-nē'vȧ), 438, 486
Genoa (jĕn'ō-ȧ), 152, 193; conference of European nations at, 482
George I of England (jôrj), 255
George II of England, 255–256
George III of England, 19, 256, 284, 303, 384, 386
Georgia (jôr'jĭ-ȧ), 450
Germans, invasions of Rome by, 115–116
Germany (jûr'mȧ-nĭ), 19, 317, 343, 344, 350, 351; Hanseatic League in, 151; the Protestant Reformation in, 214–220; unification of, 359–363; democracy in, 389–392; in World War, 427–439; revolution of 1918, 444–446
Gettysburg Address (gĕt'ĭz-bûrg), 6, 234
Gibraltar, Strait of (jĭ-brŏl'tĕr), 193, 202; fortress of, 279
Giotto (jôt'tō), 141
Gladstone, W. E. (glăd'stŭn), 385
Glasgow, University of (glȧs'gō), 327
Goethe (gû'tĕ), 480
Good Hope, Cape of, 205, 208, 268, 413, 416; taken by England, 285
Gothic architecture (gŏth'ĭk), 139
Goths (gŏths), 115, 169
Granada (grȧ-nä'dȧ), 171
Grand Design, 485
Grand Monarch, 273
Great Britain (brĭt''n), 455–457. *See* England
Great Lakes, 273
Greece (grēs), **47–50**, 52, 57, 73, 88, 369–371, 393, 455; art of ancient, 82–84; literature of, 89–90; education in, 92–94; religion of, 95–100
Grotius, Hugo (grō'shĭ-ŭs, hū'gō), 484
Guam (gwäm), 17
Guiana (gē-ä'nȧ), 418
Gutenberg, John (gōō'tĕn-bĕrK), 3

Hague, The (hāg), 19, 485, 486
Haiti (hā′tĭ), 17, 425–426
Hamburg (hăm′bûrg), 13, 151
Hamilton, Alexander (hăm′ĭl-tŭn), 7, 306
Hampden, John (hăm′dĕn), 242, 246
Hanseatic League (hăn′sē-ăt′ĭk lēg′), 151
Hapsburg family (häps′bo͝orĸ), 291, 372, 392–393, 451
Harding, Warren G. (här′dĭng), 20, 439, 464, 486
Hargreaves, James (här′grēvz), 332
Harold II of England (hăr′ŭld), 175
Harvey, William (här′vĭ), 471
Hastings, battle of (hās′tĭngz), 175
Hawaiian Islands (hä-wī′yăn ī′lăndz), 17
Henry, Prince ("the Navigator") (hĕn′rĭ), 204–205
Henry VIII of England, 220–221, 230
Herodotus (hē-rŏd′ō-tŭs), 89, 188
Hiawatha (hī′ȧ-wô′thȧ), 88
Hohenzollern family (hō′ĕn-tsōl′ĕrn), 276, 291, 373, 389, 390, 392
Holland (hŏl′ănd), 19, 291
Holy Roman Empire, 166, 317
Homer (hō′mĕr), 88, 89, 90
Hongkong (hŏng′kŏng′), 13, 411
Horace (hŏr′ăs), 90
Horn, Cape (hôrn), 208
Hudson River (hŭd′sŭn), 329
Hudson's Bay, 279
Hughes, Charles S. (hūz), 464
Hugo, Victor (hū′gō), 481
Huguenots (hū′gē-nŏts), 227–228
Hungary (hŭn′gȧ-rĭ), 343, 344, 372–373, 392–393, 450–452
Huss, John (hŭs), 215
Huxley, Thomas H. (hŭks′lĭ), 477

Iliad (ĭl′ĭ-ăd), 89
India (ĭn′dĭ-ȧ), 151, 187–188, 193, 196, 200, 205, 208, 280; in 17th century, 268–270; English conquest of, 270, 272–273
Indian Ocean, 200
Indians, North American, 21, 27, 31
Ireland (īr′lănd), 343, 344, 455–457
Irish Free State (ī′rĭsh), 457
Iron Age (ī′ŭrn), 30–31
Isabella I of Spain (ĭz′ȧ-bĕl′ȧ), 106, 170, 171, 204
Isis (ī′sĭs), 75
Italy (ĭt′ȧ-lĭ), 20, 73, 343, 354; social classes in ancient, 58–64; trading cities in, 151; leading medieval cities of, 151–152; unification of, 363–366; democracy in, 388–389; and World War, 431–439

Jacobins (jăk′ō-bĭnz), 303, 306
James I of England (jāmz), 233, 239, **245**, 249
James II of England, 253
Jamestown, Va. (jāmz′toun), 10, 20
Japan (jȧ-păn′), 11–12, 86–87, 322, 396, 408–411; democracy in, 396–401; China and, contrasted, 411–413; in World War, 431; after World War, 462–463
Java (jä′vȧ), 208, 268
Jefferson, Thomas (jĕf′ĕr-sŭn), 9, 95, 256–257, 306, 314
Jehovah (jē-hō′vȧ), 99
Jerome, St. (jē-rōm′), 115
Jerusalem (jē-rōō′sȧ-lĕm), 64, 79, 101, 102
Jesuits (jĕz′ū-ĭts), 131
Jesus Christ (jē′zŭs krīst), 100–101, 102–103
Jews (jūz), 8, 101

John of England (jŏn), 176, 177, 323
Jupiter (jōō′pĭ-tĕr), 96, 100
Jutes (jūtz), 171

Kalm, Peter (kälm), 14
Karnak, Temple of (kär′năk), 78
Katherine of Aragon (kăth′ĕr-ĭn), 220
Kay, John (kā), 333
Kew Gardens (kū), 34
Khan, Great (kän), 197
King George's War, 280
King James Version of Bible, 233
Kingsbridge, London (kĭngz′brĭj), 20
Kingsley, Charles (kĭngz′lĭ), 481
Knox, John (nŏks), 225
Korea (kō-rē′*a*), 412
Kosciusko (kŏs′ĭ-ŭs′kō), 453
Kossuth, Louis (kŏ′-sōōth′), 372, 375

Lafayette (lä′fā-yĕt′), 1, 14, 290, 380
La Paz (lä päs), 13
Latin America (lăt′ĭn *a*-mĕr′ĭ-k*a*), 417–426
Latvia (lăt′vĭ-*a*), 450
League of Nations (lēg), 436, 438–439, 485, 486; refusal of United States to join, 439, 460, 486
Leeds, Eng. (lēdz), 384
Leipzig (līp′sĭk), 314
Lenine (lē-nēn′), 448
Leo III, Pope (lē′ō), 166
Leo XIII, Pope, 479
Leon (lā-ōn′), 170
Libia (lĭb′ĭ-*a*), 417
Libreville (lēbr′-vēl′), 13
Lincoln, Abraham (lĭng′kŭn), **3–4**, 6, 19, 234
Lincoln, England, 151
Lisbon (lĭz′bŭn), 204
Lithuania (lĭth′ŭ-ā′nĭ-*a*), 450
Liverpool (lĭv′ĕr-pōōl), 13
Livingstone, David (lĭv′ĭng-stŭn), 413–414
Lloyd George, David (loid jôrj), 436, 457, 479
Locke, John (lŏk), 256
Lombardy (lŏm′b*a*r-dĭ), 363, 365
London (lŭn′dŭn), 2, 20, 34, 66, 151, 196, 243, 340
Longfellow, H. W. (lŏng′fĕl-ō), 88, 142
Lorraine (lō-rān′), 361
Los Angeles, Calif. (lōs ăn′jĕl-ĕs), 482
Louisiana (lōō-ē′zē-ăn′*a*), 273, 282, 316
Louis Napoleon (lōō′ē′). *See* Napoleon III
Louis Philippe (lōō′ē′ fē′lēp′), 380–381
Louis XIV of France, 168, 169, 228, 273, **278**
Louis XV of France, 280
Louis XVI of France, 258, **298**, **299**, **302**, **303**, 310, 316
Louis XVIII of France, 379
Loyola, Ignatius (loi-ō′l*a*, ĭg-nā′shĭ-ŭs), 131
Lucretius (lū-krē′shĭ-ŭs), 477
Luther, Martin (lōō′thĕr), 217–219 229, 233

Macedonia (măs′ē-dō′nĭ-*a*), 47, 370
Madeira (m*a*-dē′r*a*), 205
Madison, James (măd′ĭ-sŭn), 7, 316
Magellan, Fernando (m*a*-jĕl′ăn), 206
Magenta (m*a*-jĕn′t*a*), 365
Magna Carta (măg′n*a* kär′t*a*), 176, 177–178, 323
Mainz (mīnts), 150
Manchester, Eng. (măn′chĕs-tĕr), 243, 339, 340, 348, 384

Marat, Jean Paul (mȧ′rȧ′, zhôN pōl), 305
Marconi, William (mär-kō′nē), 467
Marcus Aurelius (mär′kŭs ô-rē′lĭ-ŭs), 98–99
Marie Antoinette (mȧ′rē′ ăN′twȧ′nĕt′), 303
Mark, Apostle (märk), 101
Marne, battles of (märn), 432
Mars (märz), 96
"Marseillaise" (mär′sĕ′yâz′), 303, 317
Marseilles (mär-sālz′), 196, 303, 345
Marshall, John (mär′shȧl), 301
Marsiglio of Padua (mär-sēl′yō), 144
Martineau, Harriet (mär′tĭ-nō), 16
Mary I of England (mā′rĭ), 222
Mary II of England, 253–254
Maryland (mĕr′ĭ-lănd), 227
Masaryk, Thomas (mȧs′ȧ-rĭk), 451
Massachusetts Bay Colony (mȧs′ȧ-chōō′sĕts), 223
Mauro, Fra (mō′rō, frä), 200
Maximilian of Austria (mȧk′sĭ-mĭl′yȧn), 422
Mayflower (mā′flou-ẽr), 5
Mazzini, Joseph (mät-sē′nē), 363–364
Mediterranean Sea (mĕd′ĭ-tẽr-ā′nē-ăn), 8, 43, 49, 61, 187, 193, 194
Memphis (mĕm′fĭs), 64
Mesopotamia (mĕs′ō-pō-tā′mĭ-ȧ), 351
Metropolitan Museum, 75
Mexico (mĕk′sĭ-kō), 11, 207–208, 382, 417–426
Mikado of Japan (mĭ-kä′dō), 397, 401
Milan (mĭ-lăn′), 138, 152
Miletus (mī-lē′tŭs), 48
Minerva (mĭ-nûr′vȧ), 75
Minorca (mĭ-nôr′kȧ), 279
Mississippi River (mĭs′ĭ-sĭp′ĭ), 208
Mogul, Great (mō-gŭl′), 269–270
Mogul empire, 269–270
Mohammed (mō-hăm′ĕd), 169, 368
Mohammedans (mō-hăm′ĕd-ȧnz), 169–170, 191–192
Monroe, James (mŭn-rō′), 420
Monroe Doctrine, 419–423
Montenegro (mŏn′tẽ-nā′grō), 370, 431
Montreal (mŏnt′rē-ôl′), 273
Moors (mo͝orz), 169–170
More, Sir Thomas (mōr), 230
Morocco (mō-rŏk′ō), 417
Moscow (mŏs′kō), 2

Nantes, Edict of (năNts, ā′dĭkt ŏv), 228
Naples (nā′p'lz), 80
Napoleon I (nȧ-pō′lē-ŭn), 20, **284–285**, 309, **310–314**, 358, 378, 379
Napoleon III, 361, 365, 366, **381–382**, 422
Navajo Indians (năv′ȧ-hō), 36
Navarre (nȧ-vär′), 170
Nelson, Admiral (nĕl′sŭn), 310
Nero (nē′rō), 100
Netherlands, The (nĕ͟th′ẽr-lȧndz), 194, 227, 264
New Amsterdam (ăm′stẽr-dăm), 267
Newfoundland (nū′fŭnd-lănd′), 279
New Jersey (jûr′zĭ), 225
New Mexico (mĕk′sĭ-kō), 208
New Netherland (nĕ͟th′ẽr-lȧnd), 5, 267
New Orleans (ôr′lē-ănz), 273
New Rochelle, N. Y. (rō-shĕl′), 228
Newton, Sir Isaac (nū′tŭn, sûr ī′zȧk), 471
New York, colony (yôrk), 5
New York City, 1, 85–86, 267, 483
Nicaragua (nĭk′ȧ-rä′gwȧ), 17
Nicholas II of Russia (nĭk′ō-lȧs), 394, 396, 446

Nile River (nīl), 43, 58, 72, 73, 82, 413
Nile, battle of, 310
Nimes (nēm), 62
Nineveh (nĭn′ē-vĕ), 64, 75, 88
Norman Conquest (nôr′măn), 174–176
North America, 11
North German Confederation, 361
Norway (nôr′wā), 219, 344
Notre Dame, cathedral of (nō′tr' dȧm′), 313

Obrenovitch, Milosh (ō-brĕ′nō-vĭch, mē′lŏsh), 369
Octavianus (ŏk-tā′vĭ-ā′nŭs), 54
Odyssey (ŏd′ĭ-sĭ), 89
Orange, France (ŏr′ĕnj), 66
Orient (ō′rĭ-ĕnt), 11–12; nations of, 42–47; art and artists of, 81–82; literature of, 88–89; growth of democracy in, 396–402; Europe in, 408–413; after World War, 462–463
Orlando, Vittorio (ôr-lăn′dō, vĭt-ō′rĭ-ō), 436
Otto, King of Greece (ŏt′ō), 370
Ottoman Turks (ŏt′ō-măn), 368–370
Oxford, Eng. (ŏks′fẽrd), 146

Pacific Ocean (pȧ-sĭf′ĭk), 17, 463
Paestum (pĕs′tŭm), 50, 80
Palestine (păl′ĕs-tīn), 8, 64, 73, 100, 187, 191
Panama, Isthmus of (păn′ȧ-mä′), 17
Panama Canal, 426
Pankhurst, Emmeline (păŋk′hûrst), 403
Pantheon (păn-thē′ŏn), 80
Paris (păr′ĭs), 19, 20, 66, 314; medieval center of learning, 146; peace conference at, after World War, 435–439, 453, 459
Parliament (pär′lĭ-mĕnt), British, 178–179, 385, 386
Parthenon (pär′thē-nŏn), 49, 97
Paul, Apostle (pôl), 101, 102
Pegolotti (pĕg′ō-lŏt′tĭ), 198
Peking (pē′kĭng′), 194, 197
Penn, William (pĕn), 227, 234, 485
Pennsylvania (pĕn′sĭl-vā′nĭ-ȧ), 220, 225, 227, 273, 275, 280, 282, 485
Pennsylvania, University of, 235
Perry, Commodore (pĕr′ĭ), 409, 410
Pershing, John J. (pûr′shĭng), 14, 434
Persia (pûr′shȧ), 13, 47, 51
Persian Gulf, 194, 196
Peru (pē-rōō′), 208
Peter, Apostle (pē′tẽr), 105
Petition of Right, English, 247
Pharaohs (fā′rōz), 43, 86
Pharisees (făr′ĭ-sēz), 101
Phidias (fĭd′ĭ-ăs), 84
Philadelphia (fĭl′ȧ-dĕl′fĭ-ȧ), 7
Philip of Macedon (fĭl′ĭp), 90
Philippine Islands (fĭl′ĭ-pĭn), 17, 266
Phoenicia (fē-nĭsh′ĭ-ȧ), 61, 64
Picts (pĭkts), 171
Piedmont (pēd′mŏnt), 363
Pilate, Pontius (pī′lȧt, pŏn′shŭs), 101
Pilgrims (pĭl′grĭmz), 323
Pilgrim's Progress, 224
Pisa (pē′sä), 152
Pitt (pĭt), William, 275, 282
Pittsburgh (pĭts′bûrg), 282
Pizarro (pĭ-zär′rō), 208
Plassey (pläs′ē), 280
Plato (plā′tō), 90, 93, 94, 448
Plebeians (plē-bē′yȧnz), 59
Plymouth, Eng. (plĭm′ŭth), 243
Plymouth, Mass., 20, 224
Poland (pō′lȧnd), 343, 354, 453

Polo, Marco (pō′lō, mär′kō), 197–198, 200
Polo brothers, 197, 198
Pondicherry (pŏn′dĭ-shĕr′ĭ), 270
Porto Rico (pōr′tō rē′kō), 17, 425
Portugal (pōr′tū-găl), 171, 204, 262, 264
Presbyterians (prĕz′bĭ-tē′rĭ-ănz), 225
Protestant Reformation, 213–237
Prussia (prŭsh′ȧ), 276, 280, 282, 294, 296, 302, 317, 359, 361, 389–390
Ptolemy, Claudius (tŏl′ē-mĭ), 199
Puritans (pū′rĭ-tănz), 223, 249–250
Pyrenees Mountains (pĭr′ē-nēz), 115, 169

Quakers (kwāk′ẽrz), 225, 227
Quebec (kwē-bĕk′), 280, 281

Red Sea, 194
Reign of Terror, 304–305
Republicans (rē-pŭb′lĭ-kănz), 306
Rhine River (rīn), 278
Rhode Island (rōd ī′lănd), 224
Robespierre (rō′bĕs-pyâr′), 305
Rochelle (rō-shĕl′), 228
Romanesque architecture (rō′măn-ĕsk′), 139
Romanoff family (rō-mä′nŏf), 276, 291, 373, 393–396
Rome (rōm), 2, **51–56**, 57, 58, 64, 65, 85, 366; art of, 84; literature of, 90–91; education in, 92–94; religion of, 95–100; persecution of Christians at, 103–104; acceptance of Christianity at, 104–105; decline of, 112–116
Roosevelt, Theodore (rōz′ē-vĕlt), 6, 423
Rouen (rwäN), 150
Rumania (rōō-mā′nĭ-ȧ), 370, 393, 432, 433, 453
Runnymede (rŭn′ĭ-mēd), 177
Russia (rŭsh′ȧ), 12, 276, 296, 343, 369, 370; Napoleon's campaign against, 314; nationalism in, 373; democracy in, 393–396; revolution of 1917, 446–450
Russo-Japanese War (rŭs′ō-jăp′ȧ-nēz′), 411–412

Sagres (sä′grĕz), 204, 205
Sahara Desert (sȧ-hä′rȧ), 43
St. Helena (sānt hĕ-lē′nȧ), 314
St. Lawrence River (sānt lô′rĕns), 207, 273
St. Mark's, Venice (sânt märks), 140, 363
St. Peter's, Rome (sânt pē′tẽrz), 367
St. Petersburg (sânt pē′tẽrz-bûrg), 317
Saladin (săl′ȧ-dĭn), 193
Samoan Islands (sȧ-mō′ȧn), 17
Santo Domingo (săn′tō dō-mĭn′gō), 17, 426
Sappho (săf′ō), 89
Sardinia (sär-dĭn′ĭ-ȧ), 363, 364
Saxons (săk′sŭnz), 115, 171
Saxony (săk′sŭn-ĭ), 217, 359
Scandinavia (skăn′dĭ-nā′vĭ-ȧ), 291, 344
Schleswig-Holstein (shlās′vĭĸ-hōl′-shtīn), 361
Schurz, Carl (shōŏrts, kärl), 360, 375
Scots (skŏtz), 171
Scott, Sir Walter (skŏt), 481
Semiramis (sē-mĭr′ȧ-mĭs), 79
Seneca (sĕn′ē-kȧ), 91
Senegal River (sĕn′ē-gôl′), 205
Separatists (sĕp′ȧ-rā-tĭsts), 224, 249–250
Sepoy Rebellion (sē′poi), 273
Sepoys, 270, 272–273

Serbia (sûr′bĭ-*ȧ*), 369, 393, 431, 433, 451
Seres (China) (sĕr′ēs), 188
Seven Years' War, 272, 275
Shakespeare, William (shāk′spēr), 8, 9, 234, 480
Shanghai (shăng′hä′ĭ), 409
Shantung Peninsula (shän′to͝ong′), 411, 465
Shelley, Percy Bysshe (shĕl′ĭ, pûr′sĭ bĭsh), 71
Siberia (sī-bē′rĭ-*ȧ*), 396, 450
Sidon (sī′dŭn), 64
Silvanus (sĭl-vā′nŭs), 96
Sinn Fein (shĭn fān), 455, 456
Sistine Chapel, Rome (sĭs′tēn), 141
Smith, John, 14
Socrates (sŏk′rȧ-tēz), 90, 93, 94, 100
Solferino (sŏl′fĕ-rē′nō), 365
Sŏlomon (sŏl′ŏ-mŭn), 79, 187
Sophocles (sŏf′ŏ-klēz), 89, 94
South America, 11, 417–426
Soviets (sō-vĭ-ĕtz′), 446, 447
Spain (spān), 19, 282, 284, 379; rise of, 169–171; leader in commerce, 264
Spanish Succession, War of (spăn′-ĭsh), 279
Sparta (spär′tȧ), 48, 93
Spencer, Herbert (spĕn′sĕr), 477
Stanley, Henry M. (stăn′lĭ), 413–414
Stephenson, George (stē′vĕn-sŭn), 330
Stone Ages, 27–28
Strabo (strā′bō), 201
Sudan (so͞o′dän′), 417
Suez Canal (so͞o-ĕz′), 417
Sully, Duke of (sŭl′ĭ), 485
Sumatra (so͞o-mä′trȧ), 208, 268
Sweden (swē′dĕn), 20, 219, 344
Switzerland (swĭt′zĕr-lȧnd), 20, 291
Tacitus (tăs′ĭ-tŭs), 91, 149
Taj Mahal (täj mȧ-häl′), 269
Terminus (tûr′mĭ-nŭs), 97
Texas (tĕk′sȧs), 208
Thames River (tĕmz), 268
Thebes (thēbz), 44, 48, 64
Thirty Years' War, 228
Tiber River (tī′bĕr), 51
Tigris River (tī′grĭs), 64
Tocqueville, Alexis de (tŏk′vĭl, *ȧ*-lĕk′sĭs dĕ), 16
Toscanelli (tŏs′kȧ-nĕl′ĭ), 200
Trafalgar (trăf′ăl-gär′), 283
Trevithick, Richard (trĕv′ĭ-thĭk), 330
Triple Alliance, 427
Trotzky, Leon (trŏts′kĭ, lē′ŭn), 448
Tunis (tū′nĭs), 416
Turkey (tûr′kĭ), 368–370, 453, 455; and World War, 432
Tyre (tīr), 64

United States, 290, 292, 299–300, 305–308, 314, 316; policy toward China, 412–413; and World War, 433–434; after World War, 460–462; refusal of, to join League of Nations, 439, 460, 486. *See also* America
Ute Indians (ūt), 34
Utica (ū′tĭ-kȧ), 64

Valera, Eamonn de (vȧ-lā′rȧ, ē′ȧ-mŭn), 455
Venetia (vē-nē′shĭ-*ȧ*), 363, 365, 366
Venezuela (vĕn′ĕ-zwē′lȧ), 423
Venice (vĕn′ĭs), 139, 140, 147, **151–152**, 193, 196, 198, 363
Venus (vē′nŭs), 96
Vergil (vĕr′jĭl), 90, 149
Verona (vĕ-rō′nȧ), 419
Versailles (vĕr′sä′y′), 293, 294, 361

Vespucci, Amerigo (vĕs-pōōt'chē, ä'-mä-rē'gō), 206
Vesta (vĕs'tȧ), 96, 98
Vesuvius, Mt. (vē-sū'vĭ-ŭs), 342
Victor Emmanuel II (vĭk'tôr ĕ-măn'-ū-ĕl), 364–366, 388
Victor Emmanuel III, 388
Victoria, Queen of England (vĭk-tō'-rĭ-ȧ), 273, 385–386, 481
Vienna (vē-ĕn'ȧ), 317
Virginia (vĕr-jĭn'ĭ-ȧ), 14, 255
Virginia, University of, 9
Virgin Islands (vĕr'jĭn), 17, 426
Voltaire (vōl'târ'), 297
Vulgate (vŭl'gât), 232

Wales (wālz), 330
Washington, D. C. (wŏsh'ĭng-tŭn), international conference of 1921–22 at, 20, 464, 486; National Museum at, 34, 35
Washington, George, 1, 7, 299, 302, 307
Waterloo (wô'tĕr-lōō'), 285, 314, 379
Watt, James (wŏt), 326–327, 328, 329
Webster, Daniel (wĕb'stĕr), 8
Wei-Hai-Wei (wā'hī'wā'), 411
Wellington, Duke of (wĕl'ĭng-tŭn), 314
West Indies (ĭn'dĭz), 17, 266, 285
William II of Germany (wĭl'yăm), 392, 423, 427–428; downfall of, 434, 445
William III of England (Prince of Orange), 253–254, 268, 278, 279
William the Conqueror, 174–176, 180
Williams, Roger (wĭl'yămz), 224
Wilson, Woodrow (wĭl'sŭn, wo͝od'rō), 19, 354, 426, 434, 435, 436, 451, 453, 485
Winchester, Eng. (wĭn'chĕs-tĕr), 151
Windward Islands (wĭnd'wērd), 426
Winthrop, John (wĭn'thrŭp), 242
Wittenberg (wĭt'ĕn-bûrg), 217
Wolfe, General (wo͝olf), 280
World War (wûrld wôr), 18–19, 354, 366, 371–372, 392, 393, 396, **426–439**
Wurtemburg (wür'tĕm-bûrg), 359
Wyclif, John (wĭk'lĭf), 215, 232

York, Eng. (yôrk), 151
Yorktown (yôrk'toun), 1
Young Italy, 364
Yugoslavia (yū'go-slä'vĭ-ȧ), 451, 453

Zeus (zūs), 96, 100

Louise McCormick
Iris Nephew.